

Making Everything Easier!™

# Drupal<sup>®</sup>

FOR

# DUMMIES<sup>®</sup>

## Learn to:

- Download and install Drupal and the LAMP stack
- Work with ready-to-use modules and templates
- Administer Web sites large and small
- Easily make changes across an entire site

Lynn Beighley

<http://freepdf-books.com>



# Get More and Do More at Dummies.com®



Start with **FREE** Cheat Sheets

Cheat Sheets include

- Checklists
- Charts
- Common Instructions
- And Other Good Stuff!

To access the Cheat Sheet created specifically for this book, go to  
[www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/drupal](http://www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/drupal)

## Get Smart at Dummies.com

Dummies.com makes your life easier with 1,000s of answers on everything from removing wallpaper to using the latest version of Windows.

Check out our

- Videos
- Illustrated Articles
- Step-by-Step Instructions

Plus, each month you can win valuable prizes by entering our Dummies.com sweepstakes.\*

Want a weekly dose of Dummies? Sign up for Newsletters on

- Digital Photography
- Microsoft Windows & Office
- Personal Finance & Investing
- Health & Wellness
- Computing, iPods & Cell Phones
- eBay
- Internet
- Food, Home & Garden

## Find out "HOW" at Dummies.com

\*Sweepstakes not currently available in all countries; visit Dummies.com for official rules.

<http://freepdf-books.com>





**by Lynn Beighley**



Wiley Publishing, Inc.

**Drupal For Dummies®**

Published by

**Wiley Publishing, Inc.**

111 River Street

Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774

[www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com)

Copyright © 2010 by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

**Trademarks:** Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

**LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY:** THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit [www.wiley.com/techsupport](http://www.wiley.com/techsupport).

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2009941353

ISBN: 978-0-470-55611-5

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



## *About the Author*

**Lynn Beighley** has been a computer book author for a very long time, and this is her tenth book. She's written about SQL, PHP, Flash, Photoshop, and Dreamweaver, and finds that they all have connections to Drupal. In fact, like Kevin Bacon, she thinks maybe everything is connected to Drupal. Or perhaps Drupal is connected to everything. Either way, she loves it.

Lynn lives in a sleepy New Jersey town, and doesn't know anyone named Tony. She shares her slightly off-kilter 1920's home with her husband, Drew, and an 80-pound lap dog named Wroxton.



## *Dedication*

To Drew.

## *Author's Acknowledgments*

I'd like to thank Kyle Looper for giving me the opportunity to write a Dummies book on such a great topic, and Pat O'Brien for shepherding me through the process. Thanks also to Debbie Butler for her superb copy editing. I also thank the whole crew at Wiley who helped with this edition.

## **Publisher's Acknowledgments**

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments at <http://dummies.custhelp.com>. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

### ***Acquisitions, Editorial, and Media Development***

**Project Editor:** Pat O'Brien

**Acquisitions Editor:** Kyle Looper

**Copy Editor:** Debbye Butler

**Technical Editor:** Todd Kelsey

**Editorial Manager:** Kevin Kirschner

**Media Development Project Manager:**

Laura Moss-Hollister

**Media Development Assistant Project Manager:**

Jenny Swisher

**Media Development Associate Producers:**

Josh Frank, Marilyn Hummel,

Douglas Kuhn, and Shawn Patrick

**Editorial Assistant:** Amanda Graham

**Sr. Editorial Assistant:** Cherie Case

**Cartoons:** Rich Tennant

([www.the5thwave.com](http://www.the5thwave.com))

### ***Composition Services***

**Project Coordinator:** Patrick Redmond

**Layout and Graphics:** Ashley Chamberlain,  
Joyce Haughey, Melissa K.Jester

**Proofreaders:** Christopher M. Jones,  
Jessica Kramer

**Indexer:** Potomac Indexing, LLC

---

## **Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies**

**Richard Swadley**, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher

**Andy Cummings**, Vice President and Publisher

**Mary Bednarek**, Executive Acquisitions Director

**Mary C. Corder**, Editorial Director

## **Publishing for Consumer Dummies**

**Diane Graves Steele**, Vice President and Publisher

## **Composition Services**

**Debbie Stailey**, Director of Composition Services

# Contents at a Glance

---

<i>Introduction .....</i>	<b>1</b>
<b><i>Part I: Getting Started with Drupal .....</i></b>	<b>7</b>
Chapter 1: The Big Picture.....	9
Chapter 2: Getting and Installing Drupal .....	21
Chapter 3: Essential Administration.....	45
Chapter 4: Tackling User Management .....	57
<b><i>Part II: Your First Drupal Site.....</i></b>	<b>77</b>
Chapter 5: Creating Content: Pages and Stories .....	79
Chapter 6: Managing Your Content .....	97
Chapter 7: Changing Themes .....	117
Chapter 8: Building Blocks and Managing Menus .....	127
Chapter 9: Using Modules: Create a Site with a Blog and Forum .....	151
<b><i>Part III: Bending Drupal at Your Will.....</i></b>	<b>183</b>
Chapter 10: Advanced Administration.....	185
Chapter 11: Customizing Themes .....	207
<b><i>Part IV: Taking Drupal to the Next Level.....</i></b>	<b>227</b>
Chapter 12: Creating a Robust Web Site.....	229
Chapter 13: Developing an Image Gallery.....	251
Chapter 14: Interacting with Other Sites .....	273
Chapter 15: Building a Storefront .....	295
<b><i>Part V: The Part of Tens .....</i></b>	<b>321</b>
Chapter 16: Ten Must-Have Drupal Modules .....	323
Chapter 17: Ten Places to Help You Do More with Drupal .....	339
<b><i>Index .....</i></b>	<b>349</b>



# Table of Contents

---

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
About This Book .....	1
How to Use This Book.....	2
What You Don't Need to Read .....	2
Foolish Assumptions.....	3
How This Book Is Organized .....	3
Part I: Getting Started with Drupal .....	3
Part II: Your First Drupal Site .....	3
Part III: Bending Drupal to Your Will .....	4
Part IV: Taking Drupal to the Next Level .....	4
Part V: The Part of Tens .....	4
Icons Used in This Book .....	4
Where to Go from Here.....	5
 <b>Part I: Getting Started with Drupal.....</b>	 <b>7</b>
 <b>Chapter 1: The Big Picture .....</b>	 <b>9</b>
What Drupal Is .....	10
Free .....	10
Flexible .....	10
Customizable.....	11
Content Management System.....	11
What Drupal Isn't.....	12
What Drupal Can Do for Your Site.....	13
Polls .....	13
Blogs .....	14
Contact forms.....	15
Forums .....	15
Image galleries.....	16
Examples of Drupal sites.....	18
 <b>Chapter 2: Getting and Installing Drupal .....</b>	 <b>21</b>
Deciding Where Your Site Will Live .....	21
Getting on the Web.....	22
Internet service providers .....	24
Obtaining Drupal .....	28
Downloading the package.....	28
Uploading the package.....	29
Extracting Drupal.....	31



Setting Up a Database .....	33
What a database is and why you need one .....	34
Creating a database for Drupal .....	34
Installing Drupal on a Web Host .....	35
Browsing to your Drupal site .....	35
Running the installation .....	36
Installing Drupal on a Local Machine.....	40
What you need .....	40
Getting Apache, MySQL, and PHP.....	41
Finishing a local machine install.....	42
Running the installation.....	43
<b>Chapter 3: Essential Administration .....</b>	<b>45</b>
Setting a Strategy for Your Drupal Site.....	45
Using Your New Site Sections .....	46
Log out and log in .....	47
Editing your account .....	48
Creating your first content .....	49
Administering Options.....	52
Configuring Your Site .....	54
Setting your site information.....	55
<b>Chapter 4: Tackling User Management .....</b>	<b>57</b>
Managing Your Administrator Account.....	57
Editing administrator settings.....	57
Maintaining security .....	61
Allowing Public Registrations .....	61
Sensible registration guidelines.....	63
User e-mail settings .....	65
Assigning user permissions.....	67
Adding, Editing, and Deleting Users.....	69
Adding users.....	69
Editing user information .....	70
Deleting users.....	72
Understanding User Roles.....	73
Creating roles .....	73
Assigning roles to users .....	74
<b>Part II: Your First Drupal Site .....</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>Chapter 5: Creating Content: Pages and Stories.....</b>	<b>79</b>
Understanding Drupal Nodes.....	79
Making basic pages.....	80
Accessing content creation .....	80
Adding a page.....	81

Editing a page .....	84
Deleting a page .....	85
Accessing your page .....	86
Telling a Story .....	87
Editing and deleting stories .....	89
Ordering your content .....	89
Managing story length .....	90
Setting Menu Options for a Page Node .....	93
Giving your node a menu link title .....	94
Choosing a parent item .....	94
Setting the link weight .....	94
<b>Chapter 6: Managing Your Content .....</b>	<b>97</b>
Handling HTML Content .....	98
Choosing an input format .....	99
Using filtered HTML .....	100
Using full HTML .....	101
Controlling Revision Information .....	101
Managing Comment Settings .....	103
Considerations of allowing comments .....	104
Disabling comments .....	105
Allowing Read only comments .....	105
Permitting read/write comments .....	106
Changing Authoring Information .....	106
Modifying Authored by information .....	106
Modifying Authored on date .....	106
Publishing Options .....	109
Publishing .....	109
Promoting to front page .....	110
Making content sticky in lists .....	111
Splitting your content .....	111
Adding Images .....	113
<b>Chapter 7: Changing Themes .....</b>	<b>117</b>
Changing Themes .....	117
Enabling a theme .....	118
Changing enabled themes .....	120
Setting an administration theme .....	122
Configuring Themes .....	123
Global theme settings .....	123
Toggle display settings .....	124
Logo image settings .....	125
Shortcut icon settings .....	125
Reset to defaults .....	126
Specific theme settings .....	126

**Chapter 8: Building Blocks and Managing Menus . . . . . 127**

Understanding Blocks, Regions, and Menus .....	127
Using Regions .....	128
Understanding how themes work with regions .....	129
Exploring the regions .....	131
Configuring regions .....	133
Administering Blocks .....	136
Using the built-in blocks .....	136
Creating custom blocks .....	139
Editing and deleting custom blocks .....	142
Changing block visibility settings .....	142
Editing pre-built blocks .....	143
Managing Menus .....	144
Setting primary and secondary links.....	145
Adding an item to a menu.....	146
Editing and deleting links.....	148
Adding a menu .....	148
Menu settings you shouldn't change .....	149

**Chapter 9: Using Modules: Create a Site with a Blog and Forum . . . 151**

Understanding Modules.....	151
Understanding the required modules .....	152
Looking at the optional modules .....	156
Installing Your Blog .....	159
Enabling your blog.....	159
Creating your first blog entry.....	160
Changing blog entry settings.....	161
Configuring your blog.....	162
Adding more entries .....	166
Editing and deleting blog entries .....	166
Creating multiple blogs .....	167
Installing the Forum Module .....	169
Enabling your Forum module.....	169
Organizing the Forum module .....	170
Configuring your Forum module .....	171
Viewing your forums .....	175
Linking to your Forum module.....	178
Changing forum topics settings .....	178
Managing forum permissions .....	179
Managing the Comments Module .....	180
Moderating comments .....	180

**Part III: Bending Drupal to Your Will..... 183****Chapter 10: Advanced Administration ..... 185**

Adding New Themes and Modules.....	185
Locating themes and modules .....	186
Downloading modules and themes .....	187
Installing modules and themes .....	187
Extracting module or theme files.....	188
Enabling themes and modules .....	189
Disabling Themes and Modules.....	190
Keeping Drupal Up to Date.....	190
Setting up Poormanscron .....	191
Finding available updates .....	192
Protecting your database .....	193
Backing up your database .....	194
Restoring your database.....	196
Updating Themes and Modules .....	197
Run update.php.....	198
Updating your Drupal software.....	200
Configuring Your Site .....	202
Triggering actions.....	202
Setting an administration theme.....	205
Creating clean URLs.....	205
Using error reporting .....	205

**Chapter 11: Customizing Themes..... 207**

Dissecting a Theme .....	207
Theme file types.....	208
Theme code files .....	208
Theme image files .....	210
Creating Your First Theme .....	210
Installing Your Theme.....	212
Changing Your Theme's Code.....	213
Naming colors .....	214
Changing colors .....	214
Understanding the style.css file.....	216
Using graphics.....	221
Changing the logo image.....	222
Editing templates .....	222
Creating a screen shot .....	225

**Part IV: Taking Drupal to the Next Level ..... 227****Chapter 12: Creating a Robust Web Site ..... 229**

Planning Your Drupal Site .....	229
Getting a clear picture of your site.....	229
Knowing your audience .....	231
Choosing your features.....	232
Additional Modules to Install.....	235
More preinstalled modules.....	235
Adding a Contact Form .....	246

**Chapter 13: Developing an Image Gallery ..... 251**

Understanding Image Galleries .....	251
Getting the Image and Image Gallery Modules .....	253
Installing the Image module .....	253
Enabling the Image and Image Gallery modules .....	255
Configuring image galleries .....	256
Adding images to your gallery .....	256
Linking to your gallery .....	258
Controlling gallery options.....	259
Controlling image options .....	260
Additional Image Modules .....	261
Image Attach.....	261
Using the Image Import module.....	264
Finding images in Drupal .....	266
Modifying or deleting images .....	266
Allowing Others to Contribute Images .....	267
Create a photo editor role .....	267
Add permissions to photo editor .....	267
Assign photo editors role to user .....	268
Controlling Image Gallery Access.....	268
Installing the Image Gallery	
Access module.....	269
Using the Image Gallery Access module .....	269
Adding moderators.....	271
Removing moderators .....	272

**Chapter 14: Interacting with Other Sites ..... 273**

Working with Activity Stream .....	273
Installing Activity Stream.....	274
Installing additional modules .....	275
Enabling Activity Stream modules.....	276
Pulling in social media .....	276
Posting your streams in a block.....	280
Posting YouTube Videos .....	281

Using Apture to Link and Embed Content.....	282
Installing Apture.....	283
Enabling the Apture module.....	283
Setting up Apture .....	284
Creating Apture links.....	285
Sharing Content with RSS .....	289
Finding feeds with Google Reader .....	290
Using the Aggregator Module.....	291
Creating a feed for your site.....	293
<b>Chapter 15: Building a Storefront .....</b>	<b>295</b>
Understanding Storefronts .....	295
Getting Started with Ubercart .....	297
Getting Ubercart and additional modules .....	297
Installing Ubercart and additional modules .....	298
Enabling the basic Ubercart installation .....	299
Creating Your First Storefront .....	300
Creating product listings .....	300
Testing the ordering process .....	302
Managing orders .....	304
Configuring Your Storefront.....	306
Adding a shopping cart block .....	306
Using the Configuration settings.....	307
Enhancing Product Listings .....	309
Using images.....	309
Adding a catalog.....	310
Getting Paid .....	313
Setting up a Google Checkout account .....	313
Turning on payment .....	315
Enhancing Your Store .....	316
Using the fulfillment modules.....	317
Taxing your customers .....	318
<b>Part V: The Part of Tens.....</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>Chapter 16: Ten Must-Have Drupal Modules .....</b>	<b>323</b>
CAPTCHA.....	323
FAQ .....	325
FCKeditor – WYSIWYG HTML Editor.....	326
Mollom .....	328
Printer, E-mail, and PDF Versions.....	329
SEO Checklist .....	331
Simple Ad Block .....	332
Site Map .....	333
Spread .....	334
Webform .....	336

<b>Chapter 17: Ten Places to Help You Do More with Drupal.....</b>	<b>339</b>
Getting More Help .....	339
Drupal.org forum .....	339
Twitter .....	340
Facebook .....	340
Learn By The Drop .....	342
GotDrupal.com .....	342
Drupal.org mailing lists .....	343
Getting New Themes .....	344
Drupal.org themes .....	344
Drupal2U.com.....	344
Meeting Other Drupal Users .....	346
Drupal.org user groups .....	346
Meetup.com .....	346
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>349</b>

# Introduction

---

Welcome to the first edition of *Drupal For Dummies*, the book written especially for people who want to have their own Web sites but haven't a clue about how to start or where to begin.

Are you frustrated because the kid next door has five Web sites to your none? Are you tired of trying to find someone to build your site for you for free? Do you hear stories about how much a Web site has picked up your dentist's business? You need Drupal!

Or maybe you already have a Web site, but you have one problem: The guy who built it isn't around to help when things break. And he built it in Javanese HRH or some other gibberish you can't even remember the name of, much less decipher. Makes you want to scream.

Either way, you've found the right book. Help is here, within these humble pages.

This book talks about building a Web site from scratch using Drupal in everyday language. It doesn't assume you know how to create Web pages. You don't need to know code, either; in fact, you can create your site without a single line of computer code. The language is friendly; you don't need a graduate education to get through it. The goal is to show you how to build your own site with the features you want, without coding, without deciphering technical jargon, and without pulling a single hair from your head in frustration.

## About This Book

There are a couple of ways to use this book, depending on your preferences and experience.

If you're a content management, Web site, or Drupal newbie, you can start reading and working with Chapter 1 and keep going until you reach the Index at the end. Everything falls in sequence as you build experience and knowledge. I explain the concepts and give you practical instructions. It has

17 chapters, each one covering a specific aspect of building a Web site with Drupal — such as installing Drupal, building a basic site with a blog and forum, using images and video on your site, or building an online store.

But you don't have to memorize anything in this book. It's a need-to-know book: You can pick it up when you need to know something. Need to know how to put a YouTube video on your Drupal site? Pick up the book. Need to know how to create a contact form for your customers? Pick up the book.

## How to Use This Book

This book works like a reference. Start with the topic you want to find out about. Look for it in the table of contents or in the index to get going. The table of contents is detailed enough that you should be able to find most of the topics you're looking for. If not, turn to the index, where you can find even more detail.

After you find your topic in the table of contents or the index, turn to the area of interest and read as much as you need or want. Then close the book and get on with it.

Of course, this book is loaded with information, so if you want to take a brief excursion into your topic, you're more than welcome. If you want to know the ins and outs of building an online store, read the whole chapter on storefronts. If you just want to know how to post a product on your site, read just the section on adding products. You get the idea.

This book rarely directs you elsewhere for information — just about everything that you need to know about Drupal is right here. If you find the need for additional information on related topics, plenty of other *For Dummies* books can help.

## What You Don't Need to Read

Aside from the topics you can use right away, some of this book is skippable. I carefully placed extra-technical information in self-contained sidebars and clearly marked them so that you can steer clear of them. Don't read this stuff unless you're really into technical explanations and want to know a little of what's going on behind the scenes. Don't worry; my feelings won't be hurt if you don't read every word.

## *Foolish Assumptions*

I'm making only one assumption about who you are: You're someone who wants to build a Web site and has heard that Drupal is a good choice.

Macintosh and Windows users can all use this book.

## *How This Book Is Organized*

Inside this book, you find chapters arranged in five parts. Each chapter breaks down into sections that cover various aspects of the chapter's main subject. The chapters are in a logical sequence, so reading them in order (if you want to read the whole thing) makes sense. But the book is modular enough that you can pick it up and start reading at any point.

Here's the lowdown on what's in each of the five parts.

### *Part I: Getting Started with Drupal*

The chapters in this part present a layperson's introduction to what Drupal is all about, where to get it, and how to install it. This part is a good place to start if you don't have the Drupal software already installed for you. It's also a great place to start if you've looked at Drupal but have no idea what all those infernal links do.

The best thing about this part is that it starts at the very beginning and doesn't assume you know how to download and upload and extract and install software. It also suggests simple solutions on how to get started. In other words, this part is aimed at ordinary people who know almost nothing about how Web sites come to exist.

### *Part II: Your First Drupal Site*

The goal of the chapters in this section is to show you how to build your first Web site quickly and easily. And it takes you beyond simply building a site, into fun stuff such as changing the appearance and building a site with a blog, forum, and user comments.

## Part III: Bending Drupal to Your Will

After you get a basic Web site up and running, the chapters in this part show you how to add on to it and really control it. You find out all about safely allowing others to use your site and controlling what they can and can't do. You also spend time making your site even more your own by customizing colors, logos, and artwork.

## Part IV: Taking Drupal to the Next Level

This part really takes your site to a whole new level. You discover how to pull content and data from other Web sites, how to build a storefront, and how to create an image gallery. And those are just a few of the many new features you can add to your site using Drupal's modular design.

## Part V: The Part of Tens

This wouldn't be a *For Dummies* book without a collection of lists of interesting snippets: Ten modules (or add-ons) for your Drupal site and ten sites you can visit to learn even more about Drupal.

## Icons Used in This Book

Those nifty little pictures in the margin aren't there just to pretty up the place. They have practical functions:



Hold it — technical details lurk just around the corner. Read on only if you have a pocket protector.



Pay special attention to this icon; it lets you know that some particularly useful tidbit is at hand — perhaps a shortcut or a little-used command that pays off big.



Did I tell you about the memory course I took?



Danger, Will Robinson! This icon highlights information that may help you avert disaster.

## *Where to Go from Here*

Yes, you can get there from here. With this book in hand, you're ready to build your own robust and useful Web site with Drupal. Browse through the table of contents and decide where you want to start. Be bold! Be courageous! Be adventurous! Above all, have fun!

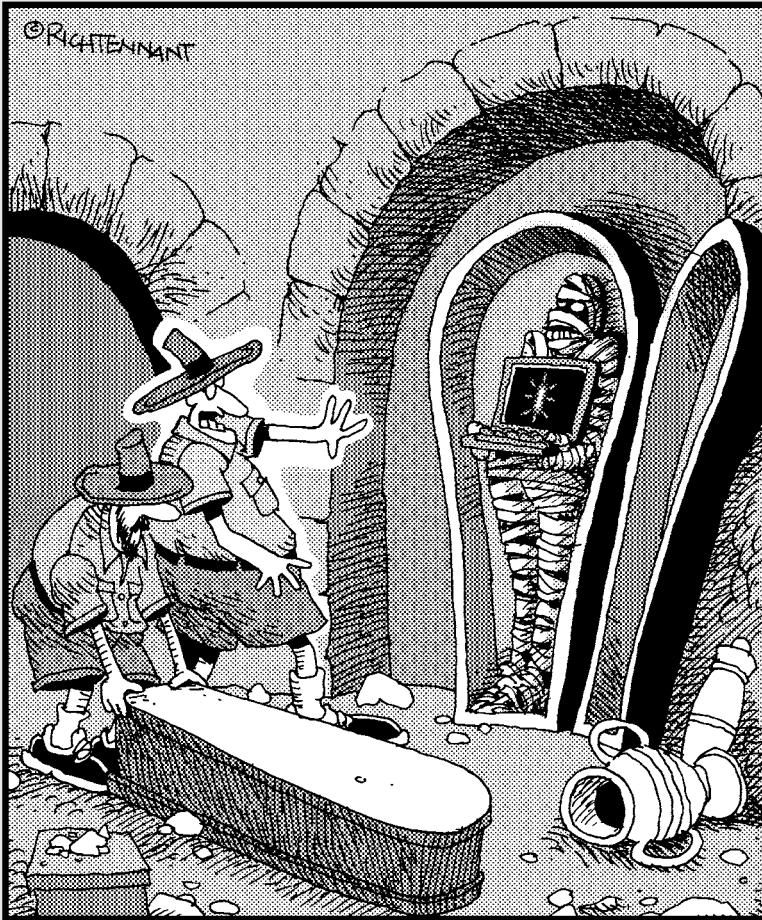


# Part I

# Getting Started with Drupal

The 5<sup>th</sup> Wave

By Rich Tennant



## *In this part . . .*

**I**ou want a Web site. But the kid next door doesn't know enough to build what you need and the Web design company wants to charge you an arm and a leg. Just when you are about to give in and pay too much, you overhear a conversation about Drupal, and how you can build a Web site with it.

But when you try it, you don't find it easy. The documentation is hard to follow, and you can't find anything in the Drupal interface.

If this has happened to you, you'll appreciate the chapters in this part. They provide a gentle introduction to building your first Web site with Drupal.

What if you don't even have Drupal and need to install it? Then the chapters in this part take you to the very beginning. That way, your site will be up and ready to be enhanced by the great stuff in the chapters in Parts II and beyond.

# **Chapter 1**

---

# **The Big Picture**

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Understanding open source software
  - ▶ Comparing Content Management Systems
  - ▶ Developing a Web site with Drupal
  - ▶ Knowing Drupal's potential
- 

**1**

In the past, if you wanted to create a fully featured Web site with forms, a blog, and a message board, you practically had to be a computer programmer. You needed to know how to write HTML and possibly JavaScript and CSS, and to accomplish anything dynamic, yet another language such as PHP or ASP. You probably would have needed to know SQL, the language that allows Web sites to store and retrieve information.

Over the years, Web developers began freely sharing code. If you knew some HTML and a few other things, you could use the work of other people to knit your site together. No longer did you need to write code every time you wanted a contact form or poll or image library on your Web site.

Today, we have entire robust and powerful Web applications, supported by communities of Web developers. Enter Drupal. Drupal is one of a class of applications that do nearly all the work for you. You can build a site with Drupal without ever writing a line of code. Indeed, that is the ultimate goal of Drupal: to free you from the inner workings of the code and instead let you focus on the layout and content of your site. There are other, similar applications you can use that also accomplish this, but Drupal is one of the best open source applications for quick, code-free Web site creation.

Before I get into the installation and use of Drupal, I think it's helpful to start by introducing the features of Drupal. The more you understand about what Drupal is, the better you can plan and use it to your advantage.

## What Drupal Is

The official Drupal Web site, <http://drupal.org>, describes Drupal as “a free software package that allows an individual or a community of users to easily publish, manage and organize a wide variety of content on a website.” This is a great description of this application. It’s free, as long as you follow certain rules that I mention later in this chapter. Drupal allows for a wide variety of content, making it extremely flexible and customizable. The fact that more than one individual can publish and manage content makes it a Content Management System, or CMS. I explain each of these important characteristics of Drupal in more detail.

### Free

Drupal is distributed as *open source* software. This means that you can get a copy of the program and install it on your Web server, modify the appearance of the pages and layout to suit your needs, and add your content to it without paying for the program. It seems too good to be true!



Software designated as open source essentially means it’s “free,” but it does have certain legal obligations associated with it. If you were a programmer and made changes to the code itself and then provided the new code to other people, there would be certain rules you would have to follow under Drupal’s license. You can learn more about it here: <http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/gpl.html>.

If you really like Drupal or the great Drupal site you build helps your company make lots of money, you can contribute to the efforts of the many great programmers who have created this software by visiting <http://drupal.org/contribute>.

### Flexible

Drupal sites are completely flexible. This means you can do things like:

- ✓ **Modify the layout of your pages:** With the use of blocks, you can move your navigation links to the side, top, or anywhere else on your pages you wish. You can put all your content in one column or choose multiple-column layouts.
- ✓ **Remove or replace the default Drupal logo:** By default, your Drupal site will have the official Drupal logo. You can easily remove it or replace it with your own logo.

- ✓ **Add and remove pages:** Drupal wouldn't be of much use to you if you were stuck with a specific set of pages. Drupal gives you complete flexibility to create as many pages as your site will need, as well as freedom to choose where page links will appear.
- ✓ **Hide content and pages from certain users:** You can, if you choose, allow only logged-in users or even a subset of users to see certain pages on your site. You can even hide content *within* a page from certain users.
- ✓ **Allow users to choose their own layout:** You can let individual users choose their own layouts. When they log in, they will see the layout they chose.

## Customizable

One of the best things about Drupal is the ease with which you can customize your site features. Drupal comes with lots of great features you can turn on with the click of a button. If you want a forum or a poll or a blog, for example, it comes with the Drupal application and you can easily include or exclude it in your site. Your site can contain precisely what you want it to, and you can turn off features you don't want.

Beyond the features, or modules, included with the program, many Web developers have created and made freely available to you *thousands* more modules you can download and install! I recommend you take a minute to check out the third-party modules here: <http://drupal.org/project/modules>. Some great add-ons are in there. If you aren't already excited about the potential Drupal offers, you will be. For example, free modules allow you to integrate Facebook and Twitter information into your site, turn your site into an online store, or create photo galleries. I tell you about some especially useful and interesting third-party modules later in this book.

## Content Management System

At its heart, Drupal is all about *managing content*. Drupal belongs to a class of applications known as *Web Content Management Systems* (CMS). These applications are designed to separate the content on a Web site from the presentation of that content. In other words, you can manage the text and graphics on your site through the Drupal interface as easily as you can create a Microsoft Word document.

After you set your site up, you don't have to worry about looking at HTML code and putting your desired text into some sort of Web format. You can simply type in a text box on a form and press a button. Your new content will

show up on your site. Behind the scenes, Drupal handles the conversion of your text into a format viewable on the Web. Drupal will also, in the case of a blog style page, save any old content previously published and provide a link to it for your users.

But the real power of CMS applications is that you can give specific users the permission to easily post, edit, and/or delete content on your site, without having permission to change the layout or features of your site. You can even allow certain users to create content, but not allow it to be published on the site until you've had a chance to approve it. All of this control allows your site content to be maintained, while your site structure remains safe from possible harm.

## *What Drupal Isn't*

Drupal is a great application for creating a robust CMS Web site. But it's not perfect. You may encounter a few difficulties as you work with it:



- ✓ **Drupal isn't so easy to install:** Probably the most difficult part of building a Drupal Web site is installing Drupal in the first place. You have to understand its requirements, make a few decisions, and gather required information to get it installed correctly.

Chapter 2 covers the ins and outs of installation.

- ✓ **Your site isn't automatically ready to go after you finish installing Drupal:** You will be modifying the configuration of the site, changing the layout, and adding your own content. You will also need to spend time deciding on the best site structure for your Web site.

I show you how to customize your site in great detail in Part II.

- ✓ **You have limited ability to change the appearance or function of modules:** Any modules you use will have some configurable options, but there may be things you want to change that aren't configurable. This is the case with any of the open source CMS applications you will encounter and isn't simply a limitation of Drupal. The developers of modules generally do their best to anticipate what you might want to configure, but they can't read your mind. Fortunately, because of the beauty of open source, you have the code and your specific needs can be addressed.

I don't discuss programming in this book, but after you get your site running, you may want to learn more about the code side of Drupal. In Chapter 17, I recommend some sites where you can get programming help as you delve into the messy business of modifying the code.



- ✓ **Drupal's interface can be a bit confusing:** Drupal administration menus are not intuitive — which is why you bought this book, right? I show you where everything is and explain Drupal's language for things throughout this book.

## What Drupal Can Do for Your Site

From Web polls to blogs and shopping carts, your site can be full of great features without any need for you to get into the actual Web programming side of things. As you look through the features, think about creative ways you can use them for the sites you are building.



You won't have to build all of these at once; you can always add new features to and remove features from your site any time.

### Polls

A poll is a question posed to visitors on your site that users can answer. Polls are great for getting your community of users involved in discussions. Drupal has a simple interface that allows you to create custom polls, such as the one shown in Figure 1-1.

**Should dogs be allowed around the pool?**

Submitted by Lynn Beighley on Thu, 05/28/2009 - 15:01

<input type="radio"/> Definitely not! <input type="radio"/> Sure, why not? <input type="radio"/> I don't care.	<input type="button" value="Vote"/>
--	-------------------------------------

» [Add new comment](#)

**Figure 1-1:**  
A poll.

After a registered user has voted, he will see a tally of the current voting results (see Figure 1-2) and have the option of cancelling his vote. He can then vote again if he wishes. His vote counts only once.



**Figure 1-2:**  
Poll results  
with Cancel  
your vote  
button.

## Blogs

One of the primary reasons Web Content Management Systems are extremely popular is the ease with which you can create blogs. Drupal provides full-featured blogging, complete with

- ✓ Automatically archived past entries
- ✓ A simple-to-use interface for creating new blog entries
- ✓ An optional comment system for site visitors to contribute their thoughts (see Figure 1-3)

Blogs aren't used just to document someone's daily activities. Companies leverage blogs to keep the content on their sites fresh. Instead of having to create new HTML Web pages every time they publish a press release, for example, they can blog the information.

Not only is it incredibly easy to create blog entries, but you also develop a history of all your blog postings over time. And all this information, and any other content posted on your site in any other location, including forums, static pages, and comments, can be made searchable — an incredibly useful feature! (Notice the search box in the upper-right-hand corner of Figure 1-3.) It's also a built-in module you activate.

The screenshot shows a Drupal-based website for the Seaplace Condominium Association. At the top, there's a blue header bar with the association's logo and name. On the right side of the header is a search bar. The main content area displays three blog entries:

- Association Meeting** (Submitted by Lynn Beighley on Thu, 05/28/2009 - 21:42)

We have a meeting scheduled for  
April 11th  
10:30 AM  
Town Hall

If you can't make it, be sure to send in your Proxy form.  
» [1 comment](#) | [1 new comment](#)
- The Awnings are Up** (Submitted by Lynn Beighley on Thu, 05/28/2009 - 21:41)

We've installed the awnings for the summer season. Please take a few moments and make certain that they are in good repair. Thanks!  
» [Add new comment](#)
- Seaplace Web Site** (Submitted by Lynn Beighley on Sun, 05/10/2009 - 11:52)

We're putting together a site for the Condo Association. It's still a work in progress and in testing mode, so bear with us. We will send out an announcement, along with usernames and passwords for you when it's ready to go. In the meantime, if you have any photos you'd like to post, please send them in. Thanks!  
» [Add new comment](#)

**Figure 1-3:**  
Blog entries  
with  
comments  
enabled.

## Contact forms

It isn't the most exciting feature of a Web site, but it is an important one: Your site visitors need a way to get in touch with you. In the past, if you didn't have programming skill, you might have used an HTML *mailto* link on a Web page that never reliably worked. Drupal takes care of the contact form for you and creates a Web form:

- ✓ The form sends the content to your e-mail address, or wherever else you tell Drupal to send it, when the form is submitted (see Figure 1-4).
- ✓ You can configure the form to automatically send a custom confirmation message to the e-mail address of the person who submits the form.

You can't change the fields in this form, but you can modify the text and add information, such as a contact address, a map and directions, and a phone number.



The screenshot shows a contact form for the Seaplace Condominium Association. At the top, there's a logo of a blue and white stylized 'S' with the text "Seaplace Condominium Association" and "Life's a breeze at Seaplace". On the left, a sidebar for user Lynn Beighley includes links for "My account", "Create content", "Administrator", and "Log out". The main content area has a "Home" link and a "Contact" section. It says, "You can leave a message using the contact form below." Below this are four input fields: "Your name:" with "Lynn Beighley" typed in, "Your e-mail address:" with a blank field, "Subject:" with a blank field, and "Message:" with a large text area. At the bottom of the form are two buttons: a checkbox for "Send yourself a copy." and a "Send e-mail" button.

**Figure 1-4:**  
A contact  
form.

## Forums

A blog is generally used to share large amounts of information with your users, with the information flowing one way, from you to your site visitors. A forum is most often used to allow your site visitors to chat amongst themselves. If it's important to you to build community interaction and encourage communication among the users of your site, you should consider adding a forum.

A forum consists of a set of *discussions*, as shown in Figure 1-5:

**Figure 1-5:**  
A forum  
containing  
a set of dis-  
cussions.

Forum	Topics	Posts	Last post
<b>Seaplace Discussions</b>			
✉ Beach Haven Discussion of Beach Haven laws, events, etc.	0	0	n/a
✉ Fishing How's the fishing been? Tips, stories...	1	1	7 sec ago by Lynn Beighley
✉ Seaplace forum	2	2	4 min 19 sec ago by Lynn Beighley

- ✓ Inside each discussion is a set of topics (see Figure 1-6).
  - ✓ Inside each topic, your users post their comments and replies to each other's comments.
- After you drill down into a discussion, you see all posts for that discussion. You also see a small icon indicating postings you have not read since you last visited the forum.

**Figure 1-6:**  
Topics  
within a dis-  
cussion.

Topic	Replies	Created	Last reply
✉ Upcoming events	0	10 min 23 sec ago by Lynn Beighley	n/a
✉ Awnings	0	2 weeks 4 days ago by Lynn Beighley	n/a

Like many of Drupal's features, the forum configuration settings give you a great deal of control over the permissions you give your users. You can either

- ✓ Maintain complete control over discussion topics.
- ✓ Allow your users to create topics.

You can even delegate specific people to be forum moderators and help you share the workload.

## Image galleries

While sites like Flickr allow you to share your photographs or video, there are reasons why you may not want to upload them there:



- There's always the possibility that you don't want your work publicly viewable.
- After your media is on a Web site not your own, the site might keep a copy of it, even if you try to delete it.

On Flickr, your work once uploaded may be subject to a *Creative Commons License* (<http://www.flickr.comcreativecommons/>). This means that anyone can distribute or display your work.

If you want to maintain some control over your photographs, images, and video clips, or if they are in some way part of your overall Web site theme — for example, photos from a company outing — you may want to restrict access to them. With Drupal, you can allow them to be viewable only to registered users of your site.

Although Drupal doesn't come with an image gallery module, there are several great third-party free modules available. I like one named, appropriately enough, Gallery2 (see Figure 1-7).

The gallery integrates with your Web site, allowing you to control whether site visitors have to be logged in to view images. It also allows your users to upload their own images if you choose to allow that.

**Drupal 6 Gallery2 demo site**

Sub album

Date: 03/01/08	Size: 5 items	
		
<a href="#">Add Photo To Cart</a>	<a href="#">Add Photo To Cart</a>	<a href="#">Add Photo To Cart</a>
<b>DSCN1687</b>	<b>DSCN1746</b>	<b>DSCN1757</b>
Date: 09/25/04	Date: 09/28/04	Date: 09/29/04
Views: 1		

Search this site:

Navigation

- Gallery
  - Central America
  - Europe
  - New Zealand
    - Sub album
  - Other
  - User Albums

User login

Username:  \*

Password:  \*

**Figure 1-7:**  
Gallery2  
module for  
Drupal.

## Examples of Drupal sites

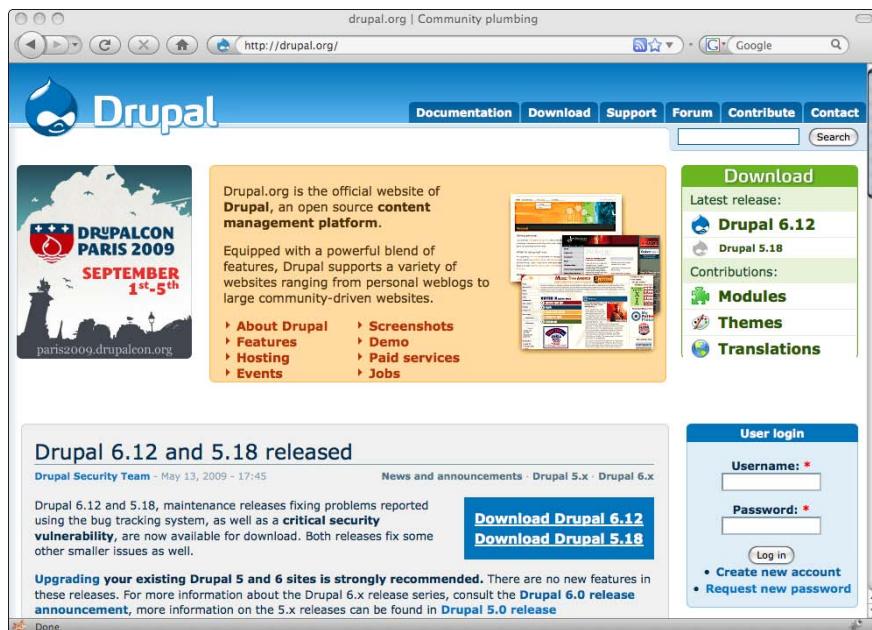
Are you excited about your Web site? You should be. Following are a few really nice sites built using Drupal. Take a look and you'll see why I recommend them.

### **Drupal.org**

It would very odd if Drupal's own site wasn't built with Drupal. Drupal.org (see Figure 1-8) is, and you can see many of the features I mention in use there, from blogs to forums and a search box, along with quite a few more.

### **Zappos.com**

Zappos is a major online retailer that has leveraged Drupal to create a robust online store. Although it customizes the Drupal code base, much of the core Drupal code is used.

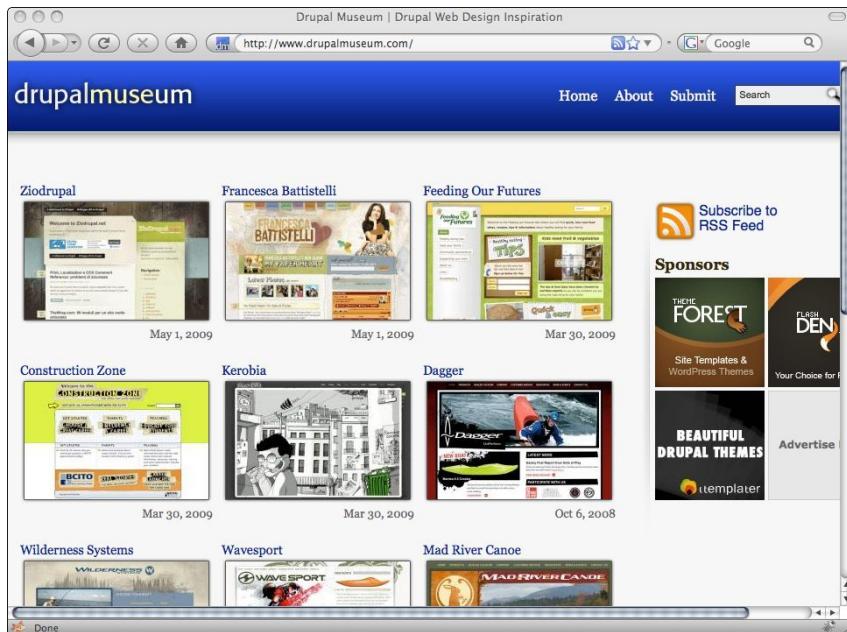


**Figure 1-8:**  
The home of  
Drupal.

### ***Drupalmuseum.com and Drupsites.net***

These two Drupal sites exist to showcase other Drupal sites:

- ✓ Drupalmuseum.com (see Figure 1-9)
- ✓ Drupsites.net



**Figure 1-9:**  
Drupal  
museum.  
.com  
features  
attractive  
Drupal sites.

Most of the featured sites have substantially customized their appearance, but the code behind them is all Drupal.



## Chapter 2

# Getting and Installing Drupal

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Downloading Drupal
- ▶ Putting Drupal on a Web server
- ▶ Gathering database information
- ▶ Configuring Drupal

**B**efore you can use Drupal, you have to install it. Manual installation can be the trickiest part of the Drupal experience. Once you've got it up and running, getting your site going will seem rather easy. Just push on through this part, keeping in mind that it does get simpler.

You have several options. If you want to go the easy route, you can sign up for an account with an Internet service provider (ISP) that will do the dirty work of installing it for you. I highly recommend this, and in this chapter, I offer you the names of a few ISPs I've had accounts with. However, in case you are more ambitious and want to install it yourself, I cover that here as well.

To begin the installation, you need to decide where you want your Drupal site to be installed and understand why you might not necessarily install it on that computer sitting in front of you. This chapter shows you the ins and outs.

## *Deciding Where Your Site Will Live*

The purpose of a Web site is to share information with the people who browse to that site. The first decision you need to make is *where* (on what Web server) your Drupal installation will run because that governs if and how people can view it.



The term *Web server* can mean either

- ✓ Web server software, like Apache or Internet Information Server (IIS). These programs send Web pages over the Internet to Web browsers when users request them.
- ✓ The computer where the Web server software runs.



In this book, Web server refers to the computer, not the software.

## Getting on the Web

As you may guess, a useful Drupal installation requires a computer with an Internet connection, unless you want to build a tiny network of your own. But it also requires other resources.

### *Internet connection*

Drupal needs to be installed on a Web server for the rest of the world to see it. Usually, this means that you have an account with an ISP such as GreenGeeks ([www.greengeeks.com](http://www.greengeeks.com)) or GoDaddy ([www.godaddy.com](http://www.godaddy.com)).



If you download the Drupal software and install it on the computer sitting on your desk, you would probably be the only person who could browse to the site. Unless your computer has been specifically configured for the Internet as a Web server, it can't send your Drupal pages out to the Web.

### *Other software*

Drupal requires other programs on the Web Server before you install it:



- ✓ **Operating system:** Drupal can run on common computer operating systems:

- UNIX/Linux  
Older UNIX/Linux releases may not be able to run Drupal
- Mac OS X
- Windows versions with IIS 5 (or newer)

- ✓ **Web server software:** Drupal runs on either of these packages:

- **Apache Web server ([www.apache.org](http://www.apache.org))**

With Drupal 6, I recommend using Apache 2.0 (or newer). Drupal 6 can run on versions as old as Apache 1.3.



Apache is the only Web server software option for UNIX, Linux, or Mac.

- **Internet Information Services ([www.microsoft.com/iis](http://www.microsoft.com/iis))**

With Drupal 6, I recommend using IIS 7 (or newer). Drupal 6 can run on versions as old as IIS 5.

IIS only runs on Windows.

- ✓ **MySQL database ([www.mysql.com](http://www.mysql.com))**

With Drupal 6, I recommend using MySQL 5.0 (or newer). Drupal 6 can run on versions as old as MySQL 4.1.

- ✓ **PHP scripting language ([www.php.net](http://www.php.net))**

With Drupal 6, I recommend using PHP 5.2 (or newer). Drupal 6 can run on versions as old as PHP 4.35.

## ISPs that make Drupal easy to install

Here are a few ISPs I use and recommend. Most allow you to install Drupal with just a few clicks using Fantastico:

- ✓ **GreenGeeks ([www.greengeeks.com](http://www.greengeeks.com)):** Offers great customer support and is committed to offering quality service with an eye toward environmental friendliness.
- GreenGeeks hosts my own site, [drupalfordummies.com](http://drupalfordummies.com).
- ✓ **Site5 ([www.site5.com](http://www.site5.com)):** Focus is on guaranteed performance and talented tech support. Winner of dozens of industry awards, including Best Shared Webhost.
- ✓ **Cirtex ([www.cirtexhosting.com](http://www.cirtexhosting.com)):** If you plan on uploading videos on your site and allowing users to stream videos online, then CirtexHosting is a good choice.

CirtexHosting specializes in ffmpeg video hosting, which allows Drupal to convert videos into flash videos online for your visitors to stream. Learn more about ffmpeg at [www.drupal.org/project/ffmpeg](http://www.drupal.org/project/ffmpeg).

- ✓ **GoDaddy ([www.godaddy.com](http://www.godaddy.com)):** This is a very popular hosting service. GoDaddy doesn't use Fantastico, but its own installation script is very similar and very easy to use to get Drupal running.
- ✓ **Nexcess ([www.nexcess.net](http://www.nexcess.net)):** You'll have to install Drupal manually if you use this ISP. They pride themselves on being simple, affordable, and reliable.



You don't have to worry about these requirements if you put your Drupal site on an ISP that offers easy Drupal installation. I mention some great choices of Drupal-friendly ISPs in the next section. Ask your ISP which versions it runs.

## *Internet service providers*



Internet service providers offer you access to a Web server where you can install Drupal and make your site visible on the Web. Some companies install Drupal for you or provide you with one-click install, saving you a bit of effort.

If you decide to skip installing Drupal yourself, consider getting an account with one of these.

The following sidebar recommends a few ISPs I have worked with. Most of these use a program called Fantastico, which I walk through in this section.

### *Installing on an ISP with Fantastico*

Many ISPs offer a super easy install for Drupal using a program called Fantastico. If your ISP uses Fantastico, this section shows you how it works.



The Drupal community doesn't recommend installing Drupal with Fantastico. It can make upgrading difficult and can potentially cause problems with your databases that store all your site data. I suggest you use Fantastico to create your first site quickly to help you learn how to use Drupal. Then I strongly recommend you follow the instructions later in this chapter to manually install Drupal on your ISP account when you are ready to build the site you want to present to your customers or site visitors.



Any of the ISPs that use Fantastico will have the correct versions of PHP, MySQL, and Apache installed. This means that you can do a manual install of Drupal and not use Fantastico.

To install Drupal with Fantastico, if your ISP supports it, follow these steps:

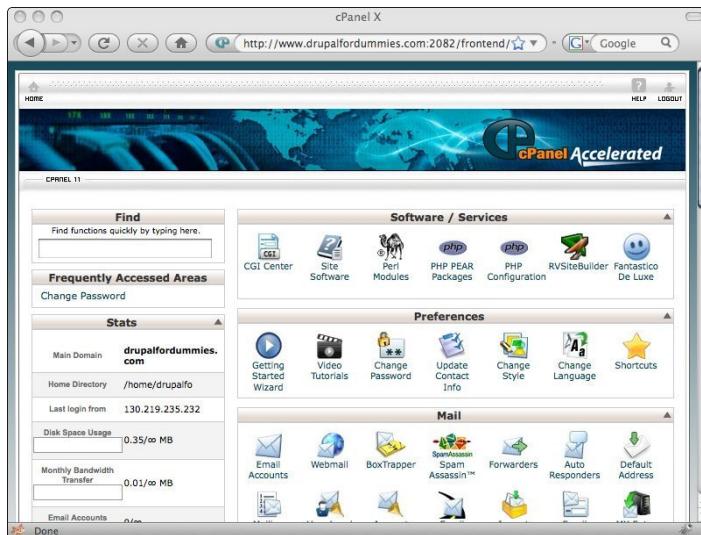
- 1. Locate the e-mail from your ISP that has your username, password, and login information. Browse to the site and log in.**

You will see a page of options for your new site (see Figure 2-1).

- 2. Locate the Fantastico or Fantastico De Luxe icon and click on it.**

You will probably have to scroll down the page to find it. (In Figure 2-1, it's the blue smiley face on the right of the page.) The Fantastico program now opens, as shown in Figure 2-2.

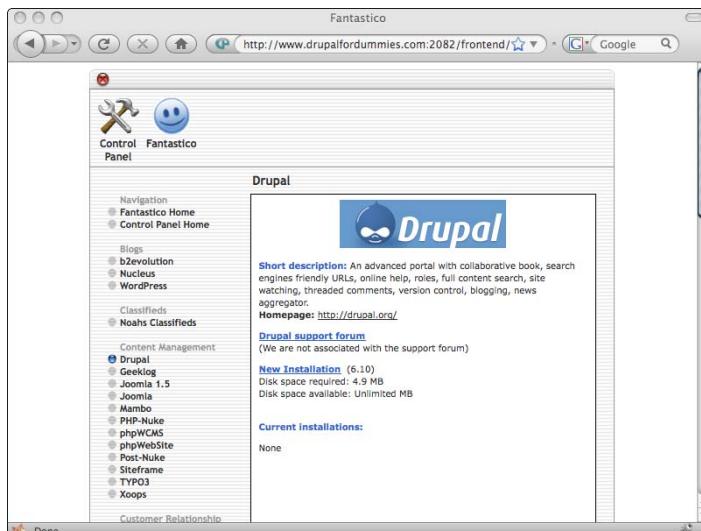
- 3. Click on the Drupal link on the left side of the screen, located under the "Content Management" section.**



**Figure 2-1:**  
Web site  
control  
panel with  
Fantastico  
icon.

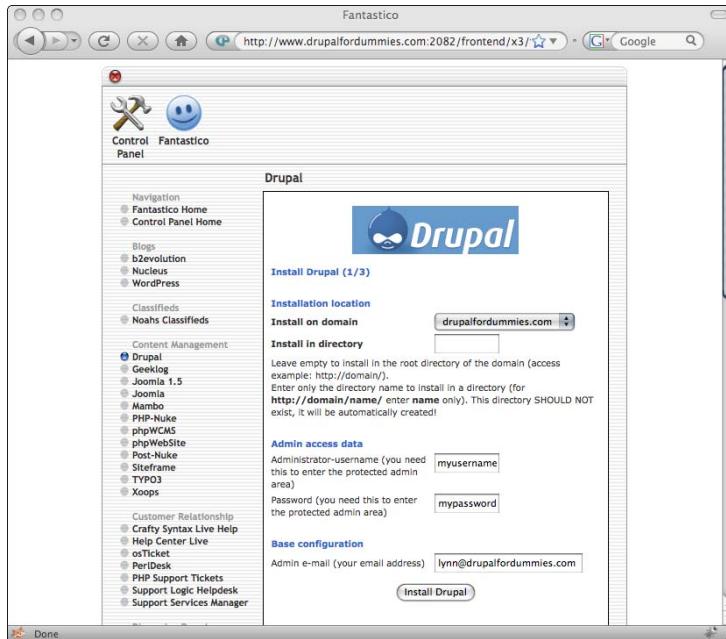
#### 4. Click on the New Installation link in the center of the page.

Your screen now displays a form (see Figure 2-3). This is where you enter a username and password for your new Drupal site and where you decide where on your site Drupal will run.



**Figure 2-2:**  
Fantastico  
application  
with Drupal  
link on left  
selected.

**Figure 2-3:**  
The first  
of three  
Fantastic  
screens for  
installing  
Drupal.



## 5. Enter a directory where you want Drupal to appear on your Web site in the top blank.

This appears a bit confusing, but don't let it throw you. Suppose you have requested the domain `myshinynewdrupalsite.com` from your ISP. If you want your Drupal site to be the first thing people see when they browse to `www.myshinynewdrupalsite.com`, leave the blank empty. If, however, you plan on having multiple sites, or just want to play with this first Drupal site, you can put it in a directory on your site, such as `test`. Then when people go to `www.myshinynewdrupalsite.com/test`, they see your site.

## 6. Enter a username and password of your choice in the Admin Access section.

These will be a username and password, chosen by you, that allow you to administer and customize your site.

Choose a good password; otherwise, you risk someone hacking your site.

## 7. Enter your e-mail address and click the Install Drupal button.

Figure 2-4 shows you the next screen. This gives you a bit more information about the databases Drupal will create. This is just for your information. (I talk more about databases and Drupal a bit later.)





## Testing on your local machine

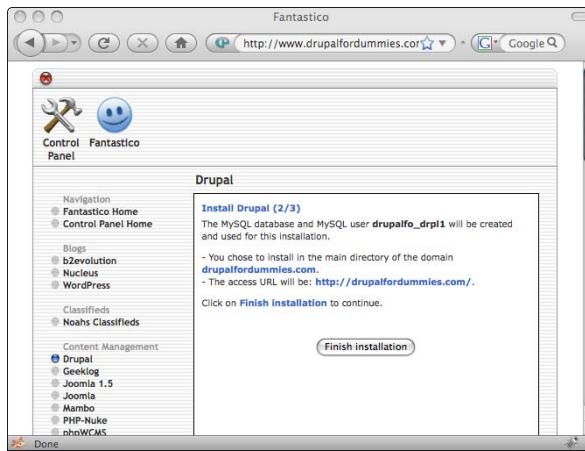
You can install Drupal on a computer in your office or in your home. You can't share your site with anyone on the Web, but you can build a site and gain experience. This also allows you to experiment without worrying about

- ✓ Your site being hacked
- ✓ Embarrassing mistakes

You can't use Fantastico to install on your local machine. You have to do a manual install. Follow the instructions in this chapter, beginning with the section "Installing Drupal on a local machine."

### 8. Click the Finish Installation button.

Your site is installing. It may take a moment, so don't bother reloading. You will see a confirmation screen when it finishes, and you will be e-mailed a confirmation that your site has been installed.



**Figure 2-4:**  
The second  
of three  
Fantastico  
screens for  
installing  
Drupal.

### 9. In a browser, click the link shown on the screen to your site.

The link reads something like, "The full URL to the admin area (Bookmark this!): <http://drupalfordummies.com/>." Of course, the link will be to whichever domain you set up (for example, <http://myshinynewdrupalsite.com/test>).

You're finished. When you click the link, you will see the main page of your new Drupal site (see Figure 2-5). If you want to log in, use the username and password you specified on the first of the Fantastico screens.

**Figure 2-5:**  
Your new  
Drupal Web  
site after  
installation.



## Obtaining Drupal

If you aren't using an ISP with Fantastico, you have to get a copy of the latest version of Drupal, copy it to your ISP, and extract it yourself:

### Downloading the package

Getting a copy of the Drupal software is free and easy. Follow these steps:

**1. Browse to [www.drupal.org](http://www.drupal.org).**

A link to download the most current stable release is on the right side of the page just under the Search box.

As I write this, the most current version of Drupal, and the version this text is based on, is 6.12. In general, this book applies to the 6.12 version or later.

**2. Click the link Download the latest version.**

You will be taken to a News and Announcements page with a link to actually begin the download.

The file will be named something like drupal-6.12.tar.gz.

**3. Save this file to a directory you will remember.**

## Uploading the package

When you download Drupal, it comes as a single, compressed `tar.gz` file, but it actually consists of many files and folders. All these files need to be located in a Web directory on your ISP. Here's how you can upload the single `tar.gz` file to your Web directory on most ISPs. (In the next section, I show you how to uncompress it.)



**TIP** Don't extract the `tar.gz` until you upload it. I recommend that you extract the files in the final Web directory where you want them. Otherwise, you may find it difficult to upload all the files and keep them in their appropriate locations in the Drupal directory.



The screen shots I show use a program called Fileman, but your ISP may have a different program that handles file management. In general, these file manager programs do similar things. If you are familiar using an FTP program, feel free to use that instead.

To upload the `tar.gz` file from your computer, follow these steps:

1. **Locate the e-mail from your ISP that has your username, password, and login information. Browse to the ISP's site and log in.**

You will see some sort of control panel with options for your new Web site. It may look like Figure 2-1, or it may look more like Figure 2-6.

The screenshot shows the SiteWorx control panel interface. On the left, there's a sidebar with links like SiteWorx Home, Hosting Features, E-mail, Domains, MySQL, Cron Jobs, FTP Accounts, Administration, Statistics, File Manager, Preferences, and Logout. The main area shows 'Managing Website: dfd.nexcess.net'. Under 'My Info [Edit]', it lists Master Domain: dfd.nexcess.net, Current User: Lynn Belghley (lynn@drupalfordummies.com). Below that is the 'Account Features' table:

Feature	Total	Used	Used %
Bandwidth (Monthly)	15 GB	0 GB	0.00%
Disk Space	5000 MB	5.88 MB	0.12%
E-mail Boxes	50	1	2.00%
MySQL Databases	25	0	0.00%
FTP Accounts	1	1	100.00%
Secondary Domains	4	0	0.00%
Subdomains	25	0	0.00%
Pointer Domains	Unlimited	0	0.00%

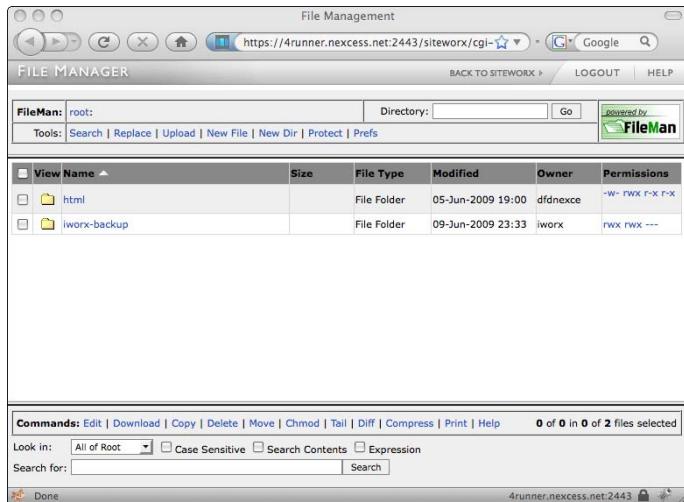
On the right, there's a 'Site Usage Snapshot' graph titled 'Real-time Bandwidth Usage' showing bytes/sec over time. The graph has two series: Downstream (green) and Upstream (blue). The legend indicates: Cur: 0.00 Avg: 0.00 Max: 0.00 for both. The graph shows a small peak around 0.8 bytes/sec downstream and 0.2 bytes/sec upstream. Below the graph, it says 'Powered by InterWorx'.

**Figure 2-6:**  
An ISP control panel for your site.

## 2. Find and click the link to a file manager.

You need a file manager so that you can select the Drupal `tar.gz` file and put it in the correct directory on your ISP's site. After you click the file manager, you will see a screen similar to Figure 2-7. This shows your files on your ISP's Web server.

**Figure 2-7:**  
An example  
of a file  
manager  
application  
on an ISP.



## 3. You should see a single folder or directory named “html,” “www,” or “htdocs.” Click on its name to open it.

There may be several directories, but the one for your Web site should be easy to spot. This is where all your Web pages belong and where you need to install Drupal.



ISPs don't all name the Web folders the same way. If you aren't sure which directory is your Web directory, contact your ISP.

## 4. Locate and click the upload link on your file manager.

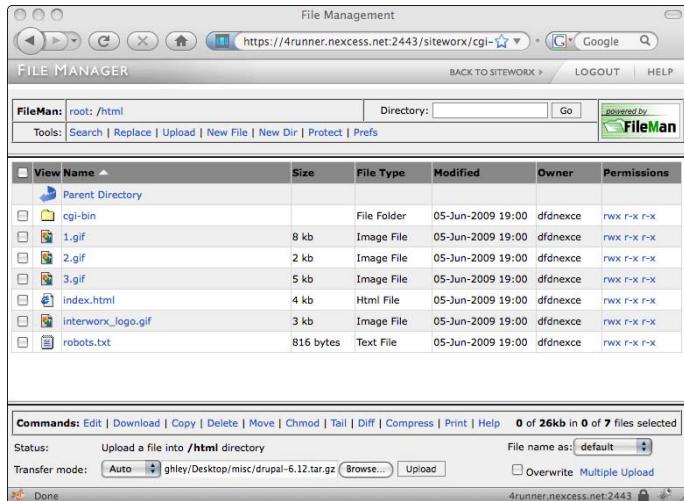
You should see an upload form with a Browse button, as shown at the bottom of Figure 2-8.

## 5. Click Browse and find the Drupal `tar.gz` file you downloaded from [drupal.org](http://drupal.org). Click Upload.

Your file is now on your site. The following section shows to extract it.



If you accidentally click on one of the directories or folders and end up inside that folder in your file manager, look for the Parent Directory link near the top of the file listing and click on it to navigate out of the folder you are in to the parent folder one level above.



**Figure 2-8:**  
An upload  
form on  
a file  
manager.

## Extracting Drupal

The file extension `.tar.gz` indicates that the files are compressed into a single file. You may be familiar with `.zip` files on Windows. `.tar.gz` is similar to `.zip`. It's also a file compression type often used on Linux and other UNIX systems. Fortunately, most file managers can extract your Drupal file for you. Here's an example of how it works. Your version may differ, so contact your ISP for help if you can't find the same functions on your file manager.

1. Find the Drupal `.tar.gz` file you just uploaded to your Web directory and select it, as shown in Figure 2-9. Select the file name to open the file.

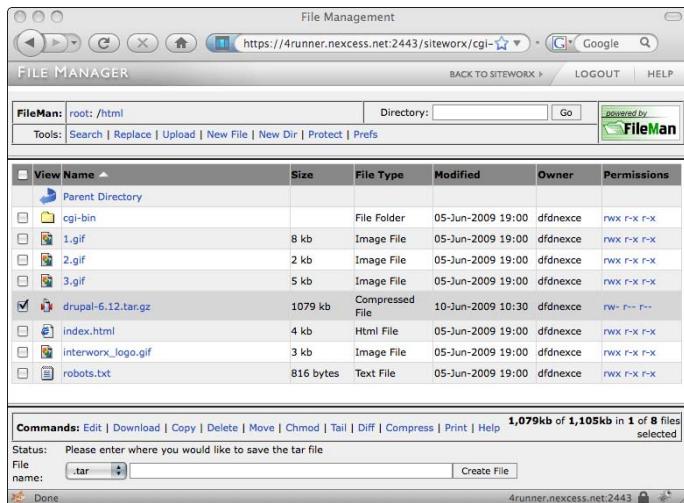
You will see a list of files stored inside your `.tar.gz` file (see Figure 2-10). They will all be selected.

2. You should see an option to uncompress your files, as shown at the bottom of Figure 2-10. Leave the selection box set to uncompress All and click the Go button.

This will uncompress your single `.tar.gz` file into a folder with the same name (for example, `drupal-6.12`). This will take you back to the main directory. You will see both the compressed file (for example, `drupal-6.12.tar.gz`) and the uncompressed files in a new directory (for example, a folder named `drupal-6.12`).

As things stand now, visitors coming to your Web site (for example, if your site is `www.myshinynewwebsite.com`) will only get to the Drupal site if they type something like `myshinynewwebsite.com/drupal-6.12`. This is not a great URL. You should move your Drupal files to your main site or a different folder.

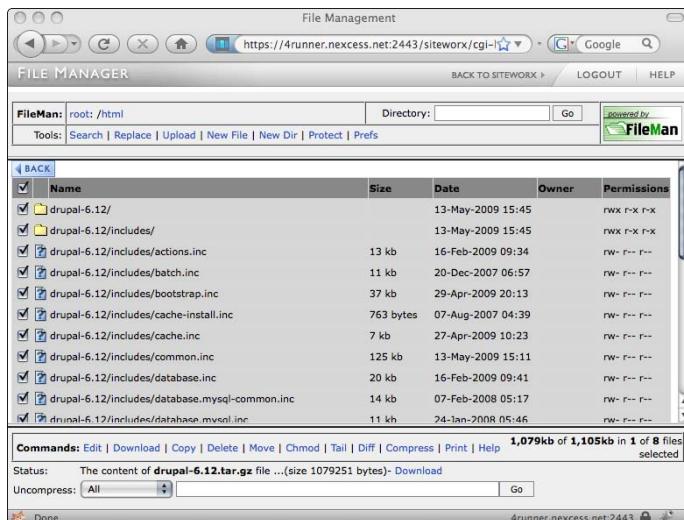
**Figure 2-9:**  
Select the  
Drupal  
tar.gz  
file in the  
file manager  
program.



### 3. Select the new folder (for example **drupal-6.12**), and click on the Move command in your file manager.

You should see a form (refer to the bottom of Figure 2-10) that asks you to type in a directory name. This will become the new name of the folder in which your Drupal files are stored. For example, if you type in **test**, and choose Move, the contents of your **drupal-6.12** directory will be moved to a directory named **test**. Visitors to your site will need type your domain name and this directory to get to the Drupal site (say **myshinynewdrupsite.com/test**).

**Figure 2-10:**  
File  
manager  
showing the  
selected  
contents of  
the Drupal  
tar.gz  
file.





If you want your Drupal site to be visible when people browse to your main site (for example, [www.myshinynewdrupalsite.com](http://www.myshinynewdrupalsite.com)), the process can be a little trickier. You first need to select the Drupal directory to see all the files and folders in it (see Figure 2-11). Everything in the folder needs to be selected, which you can tell by looking at the check boxes on the left. If it isn't, you need to select all the files. There's usually a Select all option somewhere in the file manager. Click the very top check box on the left, which will select all the files. With everything selected, type `/html` in the Move box, where "html" is the name of your Web directory. (Remember, yours may be named www or htdocs or something else.) This will move all the files in the Drupal directory immediately under your main Web directory.



Use this option with caution; it's painful to delete all those files if you change your mind later.

The screenshot shows a 'File Management' window with the URL <https://4runner.nexcess.net:2443/siteworx/cgi-bin/>. The title bar says 'FILE MANAGER'. The file list table has columns: View Name, Size, File Type, Modified, Owner, and Permissions. The 'View Name' column includes icons for Parent Directory, File Folder, Image File, Compressed File, Html File, and Text File. The 'Permissions' column shows values like 'rwx r-x r-x'. A checkbox in the 'View Name' column is checked for the 'drupal-6.12' folder. Below the table, the 'Commands' section includes links for Edit, Download, Copy, Delete, Move, Chmod, Tail, Diff, Compress, Print, and Help. It also shows '0 of 1,105kb in 1 of 9 files selected'. The status bar at the bottom says 'Status: Please enter where you would like to move the files' and 'Directory: drupal'.

**Figure 2-11:**  
File manager with the Drupal directory selected and the Move command chosen.

## Setting Up a Database

Before I walk you through the Drupal setup script, there's one more major bit of work that needs to be done. You need to set up a database. It's not difficult, but like the last few steps, your own ISP may have different software showing than what I demonstrate below, making things very confusing.



You should be able to find the same commands somewhere in your particular interface, even if your setup doesn't match the screen shots in this chapter.

## *What a database is and why you need one*

A *database* is a set of files stored in a special format that contain data. You come in contact with databases all the time. For example, every time you look up something on Google, a computer program compares what you typed in the Search box to information stored in a database. The program that communicates with a database is called a *database server*.

Drupal uses a database to keep track of all kinds of data. Chapter 1 explains that Drupal can create a forum for your users, for example. All the messages your users type are stored in the Drupal database. And the people you allow to log in to your site have their usernames and passwords stored in your Drupal database.

To allow Drupal to save all this information, Drupal needs its own database that it can write information into and read information from. Fortunately, most ISPs provide an application that lets you talk to the database your Drupal program needs. I show you how to create a database that Drupal can use for its data below.

## *Creating a database for Drupal*



Although databases are sometimes located on the same computer as your Web site, sometimes they aren't. Your ISP may need to tell you where and how to create a database and what username and password you need to use to connect to it. The steps below assume that your MySQL program is located on the same machine as your Drupal files. This is the most common setup and is the case with all the ISPs I have mentioned.

Drupal needs its own database, and you have to create one if you aren't using Fantastico. You may also have to create a database username and password. This varies tremendously from one ISP to another, but here are the general steps to follow:

- 1. Locate the e-mail from your ISP that has your username, password, and login information. Browse to the ISP's site and log in.**  
You will see some sort of control panel with options for your new Web site. It may look like Figure 2-1, or it may look more like Figure 2-6.
- 2. This step is a little vague. Find and click on a link that refers to MySQL as part of the name.**

You're looking for a way to create a database. ISPs vary in how they allow you to do this. For example, look at Figure 2-6 and notice the *MySQL* link on the left. Clicking on that causes a link to Databases to appear. And then clicking on the Databases link gives you a form on the right where you type in the name of a new database.

3. **Type in the name of your new database. Call it *drupal* and click the Add button.**



Applications that allow you to create databases are fairly common, but if you don't find one, you may have to contact the technical support department of your ISP. Other programs that allow you to create databases may be called things like *MySQL Databases* or *MySQL Database Wizard*. The whole point is to find an application that lets you create a database.

4. **Also, you may have to add a database username and password if your ISP didn't send any. Locate an application in your control panel that lets you add users to MySQL.**

I wish this step was easier to explain, but every ISP is different. Some may have a simple link called *Users* that opens a form where you enter a username and password. Some ISPs send you a username and password just for MySQL. And some use the same username and password you were assigned to access your site's control panel. If you can't find them, consult your ISP's help documentation and technical support.

## Installing Drupal on a Web Host

Now that you've uploaded and extracted Drupal, and created a database named *drupal* for it to use to store its data, you are ready to begin the setup.

### Browsing to your Drupal site

By now, you are probably eager to see your Drupal site. It's out there on the Web, waiting for you to go through the installation. To reach it, browse to your domain and the directory where you installed it. For example, if your Web site is [www.myshinynewdrupalsite.com](http://www.myshinynewdrupalsite.com), and you installed it in a directory called *test*, browse to [myshinynewdrupalsite.com/test](http://www.myshinynewdrupalsite.com/test). You should see the Welcome screen, as shown in Figure 2-12.

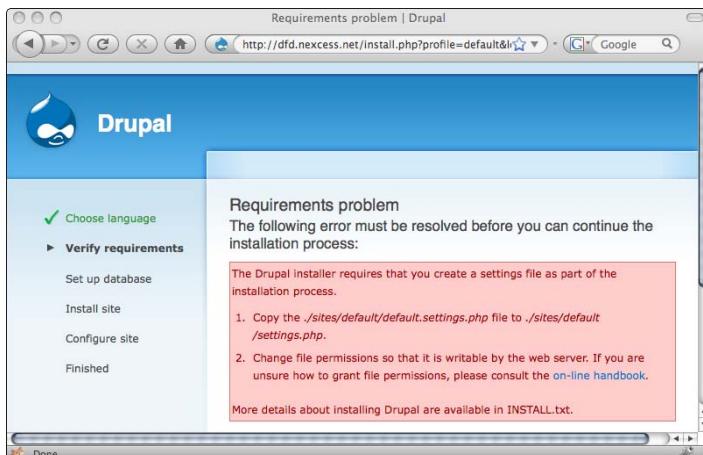
**Figure 2-12:**  
The first  
Drupal  
setup  
screen.



## Running the installation

Drupal will now take you through a series of forms. Click on the Install Drupal in English link. You will see the message shown in Figure 2-13, indicating that there is a Requirements problem. You can't proceed without creating a configuration file.

**Figure 2-13:**  
Message  
indicating  
that you  
need to  
create a  
configura-  
tion file.



## Creating the configuration file

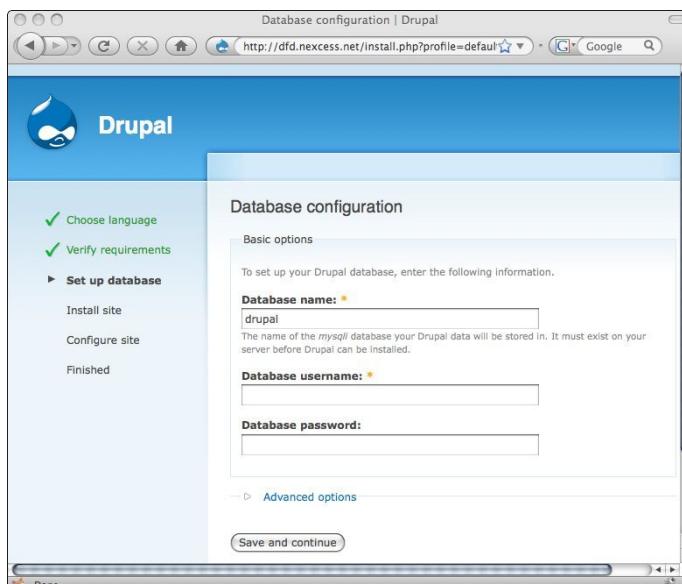
To create the configuration file, open the file manager on your ISP's site, and copy and rename a file in the Drupal directory in the directory `sites/default/`. Follow these steps:

1. Locate the e-mail from your ISP that has your username, password, and login information. Browse to the ISP's site and log in.
2. Find and click the link to a file manager.
3. Select the Web directory and then the directory containing all the Drupal files.
4. Locate the `sites` directory and select it. Choose the `default` directory.
5. Select the only file in this directory, named `default.settings.php`. Locate and select the Copy function in your file manager.
6. If your file manager asks you to enter a directory for the new file, type in `./settings.php` and click Copy.

Your file manager may simply make a copy of the file, and you may have a function that allows you to rename the file to `settings.php`.

### Verify requirements

Browse back to your Drupal site and reload the page. The error message should be gone, and you should see the form shown in Figure 2-14.



**Figure 2-14:**  
The Setup database screen of the Drupal configuration.

### Setup database

Enter the name of the database you created earlier, `drupal`, in the Database name field. For the database username and password, enter the username

and password I discuss in Step 4 in the section “Creating a database for Drupal.” Click the *Save and continue* button and cross your fingers. If everything goes well, your Drupal site is installed and you move on to configuring it (see Figure 2-15).



There’s a very good chance you will have a problem creating a database, adding a database username and password, or giving that username permission to communicate with the database you created. These are not trivial tasks and are probably the hardest part of the Drupal experience. It would take much of this book to explain the way databases, users, and database permissions work and to describe the most common setups for MySQL on popular ISPs. I *strongly* encourage you to read through the process as I describe and contact your ISP for help with these steps if you encounter any problems. You can also visit [www.drupalfordummies.com](http://www.drupalfordummies.com) and post questions on the forum, where other readers of this book can help you figure out how to solve your database problems.

### Configure site



There are quite a few bits of information you need to provide on the Configure site form shown in Figure 2-15.

All of this information can be modified later.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure site' step of the Drupal installation process. On the left, a sidebar lists completed steps: 'Choose language', 'Verify requirements', 'Set up database', and 'Install site'. Below this is a 'Configure site' link, which is currently selected. The main area is titled 'Configure site' and contains a note: 'All necessary changes to /sites/default and /sites/default/settings.php have been made. They have been set to read-only for security.' Below this, there are two sections: 'Site information' and 'Administrator account'. In 'Site information', the 'Site name:' field is filled with 'localhost'. In 'Administrator account', the 'Username:' field is filled with a placeholder. A note in this section states: 'The administrator account has complete access to the site; it will automatically be granted all permissions and can perform any administrative activity. This will be the only account that can perform certain activities, so keep its credentials safe.' At the bottom of the page, there is a 'Done' button.

**Figure 2-15:**  
Configure  
site setup  
screen.

Here's the list of text boxes and options you fill out:



- ✓ **Site name:** This field is pre-filled with the domain name of your Drupal site. It's actually going to show up at the top of all the pages on your site instead of the current large white heading, "Drupal."

Change this to a title that makes sense for your current site. If you don't know what you want to call your site, you can set this later.



- ✓ **Site e-mail address:** Drupal can automatically send e-mails when certain things happen, such as a new user signing up. This e-mail address appears as the sender (the From address) on these e-mails.
- ✓ **Administrator username:** This is the username (yes, yet another username) that you use to connect to your Drupal administrative functions. You need this username to do anything to your site, from changing the appearance to adding new pages. Enter a username of your choice. Make this a name you will remember.
- ✓ **Administrator e-mail address:** Enter an e-mail address where you want to receive e-mails from the Drupal system.

Make it a difficult-to-guess password, but one that you will remember.

- ✓ **Administrator confirm password:** Type the password again to confirm.
- ✓ **Default time zone:** Anything you do with Drupal that has a time associated with it will use this time zone. For example, if you post to a blog on the site, the time posted will use this time zone.
- ✓ **Clean URLs:** Without this enabled, the URLs to the pages on your site will look similar to this: `http://www.drupalfordummies.com/?q=node/55`. If you are can use Clean URLs, your URLs will be a little shorter and leave out the `?q=` (for example, `http://www.drupalfordummies.com/node/55`).

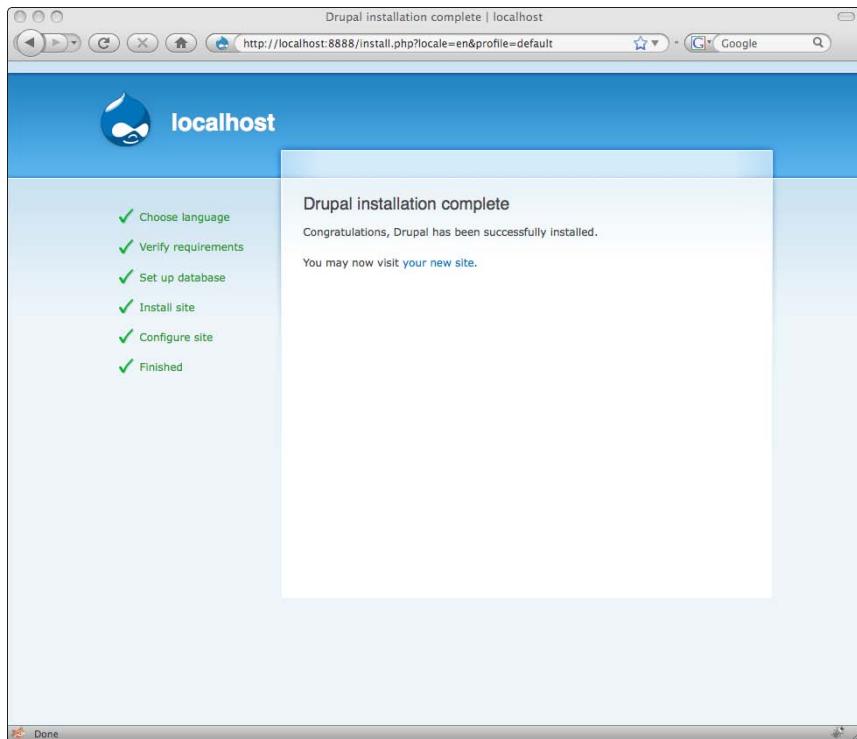
Use the Clean URLs option if you can, but it really doesn't make much difference.



- ✓ **Check for updates automatically:** This is a nice feature to enable. Drupal is an evolving application, and updates are released frequently. If you enable this, you will see a message when you log in as administrator anytime a new update is available. I cover updating your Drupal application in a later chapter.

After you fill out and submit the configuration form, you see a final screen letting you know configuration is complete (see Figure 2-16).

Congratulations!



**Figure 2-16:**  
The final  
screen of  
the Drupal  
setup.



If you don't want to run Drupal on your own computer, you can skip from here to Chapter 3.

## *Installing Drupal on a Local Machine*

Running Drupal on your personal computer can be helpful if you want to learn how to use Drupal without the expense of signing up with an ISP.

While installing Drupal on your local machine is similar to the manual installation I describe, you have the added steps of installing the correct Apache, MySQL, and PHP versions. If you are using IIS on a Windows machine, consult your documentation for information on using PHP applications, such as Drupal.

## *What you need*

Drupal needs Apache, MySQL, and PHP. You have to install these first, and installing each one involves downloading the software, extracting it in the

correct location, making any file configuration changes, and testing it. You should install MySQL ([mysql.com](http://mysql.com)) first, then Apache ([apache.org](http://apache.org)), then PHP ([php.net](http://php.net)).

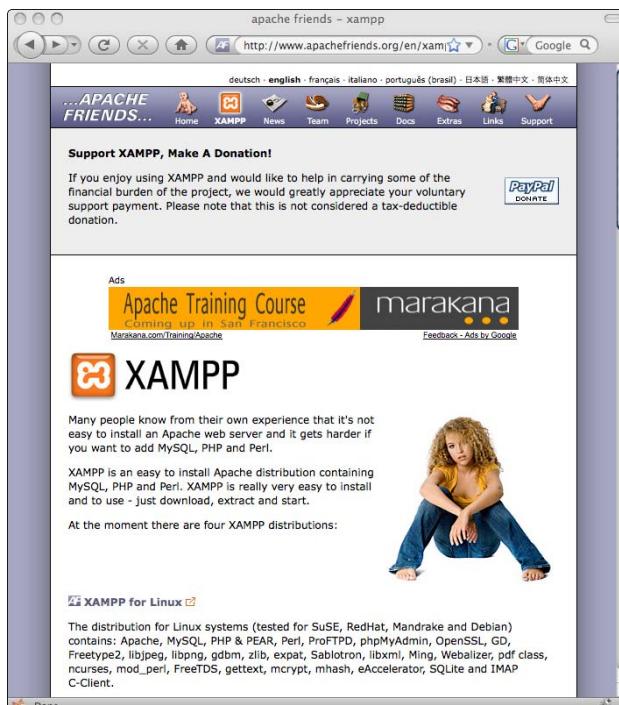
Walking through the installation of these three products is outside the scope of this book and rather involved. Fortunately, some developers have put together applications that install all three of these packages at the same time for you.

## Getting Apache, MySQL, and PHP

Several companies have taken the hard work out of installing these individual packages. These companies provide a single program that installs all three applications for you. I recommend either of these:

- ✓ XAMPP (see Figure 2-17) describes itself as “an easy to install Apache distribution containing MySQL, PHP and Perl. XAMPP is really very easy to install and to use — just download, extract and start.” It can be installed on Linux, Windows, and Mac OS X. The home page for XAMPP is located here:

[www.apachefriends.org/en/xampp.html](http://www.apachefriends.org/en/xampp.html)



**Figure 2-17:**  
The home  
page of  
XAMPP.

- ✓ WAMP is a Windows option. The home page is  
`http://www.wampserver.com`
- ✓ MAMP (see Figure 2-18) is a great option created just for Mac OS X. The home page is  
`http://www.mamp.info.`
- ✓ They have commercial and free versions of the software.



**Figure 2-18:**  
The home  
page of  
MAMP.

## *Finishing a local machine install*

After you've got MySQL, PHP, and Apache running, whether individually or through XAMPP or MAMP, you are ready to set up a database and install Drupal.

To set up a database and install Drupal on a local machine, follow these steps:

- 1. Locate and open the phpMyAdmin program installed by XAMPP or MAMP.**

2. Locate the Create a new database field on the right side of the phpMyAdmin screen.
3. Type in the name of your new database. Call it *drupal* and click the Add button.

Now you need to download the Drupal software and install it on your local machine under the Web directory. Follow these steps:

- 1. Browse to [www.drupal.org](http://www.drupal.org).**

A link to download the most current stable release is on the right side of the page just under the Search box.

- 2. Click the Download the latest version link.**

You will be taken to a News and Announcements page with a link to actually begin the download.

The file will be named something like drupal-6.12.tar.gz.

- 3. Save this file to a directory you will remember.**

- 4. Double-click the Drupal .tar.gz file to extract it.**

It will be extracted as a single folder.

- 5. If necessary, rename the extracted folder drupal.**

- 6. Copy the drupal folder to your local Web server directory.**

Move this new folder to your local Web server directory. This location depends on which package you used to install Apache. Consult the documentation for your particular package to find the Web directory on your machine.

Now you are ready to run the installation. To reach it, browse to <http://localhost/drupal>.

## *Running the installation*

Drupal will take you through a series of forms. Click on the Install Drupal in English link. Your first step is to create a configuration file.

### *Creating the configuration file*

To create the configuration file, open the drupal directory on your local Web server directory, and copy and rename a file in the directory sites/default/. To do so, follow these steps:

- 1. Using Explorer on Windows or Finder on the Mac, open your Web server directory, and then the drupal directory.**

2. Locate and open the `sites` directory. Open the `default` directory.
3. Select the only file in this directory, `default.settings.php`.
4. Rename this file `settings.php`.

### ***Verify requirements***

Browse back to your Drupal site and reload the page.

### ***Set up database***

Enter the name of the database you created earlier, `drupal`, in the Database name field. For the database username and password, enter the username `root` and leave the password blank, as I discuss in Step 4 in the section “Creating a database for Drupal.” Click the *Save and continue* button.



Your MySQL database username may not be `root`. If this doesn’t work, consult the documentation for your particular installation software (XAMPP, MAMP, or WAMP).

### ***Configure site***

There are quite a few bits of information you need to provide on the Configure site form.

Here’s the list of text boxes and options you fill out:



- ✓ **Site name:** This field is pre-filled with the domain name of your Drupal site. It’s actually going to show up at the top of all the pages on your site instead of the current large white heading, “Drupal.”  
Change this to a title that makes sense for your current site. If you don’t know what you want to call your site, you can set this later.
- ✓ **Site e-mail address**
- ✓ **Administrator username:** This is the username that you use to connect to your Drupal administrative functions.
- ✓ **Administrator e-mail address:** Enter an e-mail address where you want to receive e-mails from the Drupal system.
- ✓ **Administrator password:** Enter a password to be used with your Administrative login.
- ✓ **Administrator confirm password:** Type the password again to confirm.
- ✓ **Default time zone**
- ✓ **Clean URLs**
- ✓ **Check for updates automatically**

# **Chapter 3**

---

# **Essential Administration**

---

## *In This Chapter*

---

- ▶ Deciding where to begin
  - ▶ Understanding modules
  - ▶ Figuring out tasks
  - ▶ Becoming comfortable with Drupal terminology
  - ▶ Configuring Drupal
- 

**Y**

ou just finished the hardest part of Drupal — getting the software installed correctly. It wasn't easy. You had to decide where to install it; integrate your Drupal application with an Apache Web server, PHP, and a MySQL database server; and configure various settings. This is quite a bit of work. Now I move on to more interesting Drupal administration details.

In this chapter, I show you some easier but essential tasks to get your site into shape. This chapter is fun. You get to dive in and start shaping your Web site. You make changes and immediately get to see the results of those changes.

I cover some of the nitty gritty Drupal configuration settings that you need to know. And I introduce *Drupalese* — that is, I go over some of the language that Drupal uses and explain what it means in nontechnical terms. This is especially important because these terms are used frequently in the rest of the chapters. Understand them here, and you won't be in the dark later.

## ***Setting a Strategy for Your Drupal Site***

It's never too early to think about the purpose of your site. The site I use to illustrate concepts in this chapter is [drupalfordummies.com](http://drupalfordummies.com). In my case, this site exists to support this book and give readers a place to discuss information in the book and Drupal in general. It helps create a sense of community.

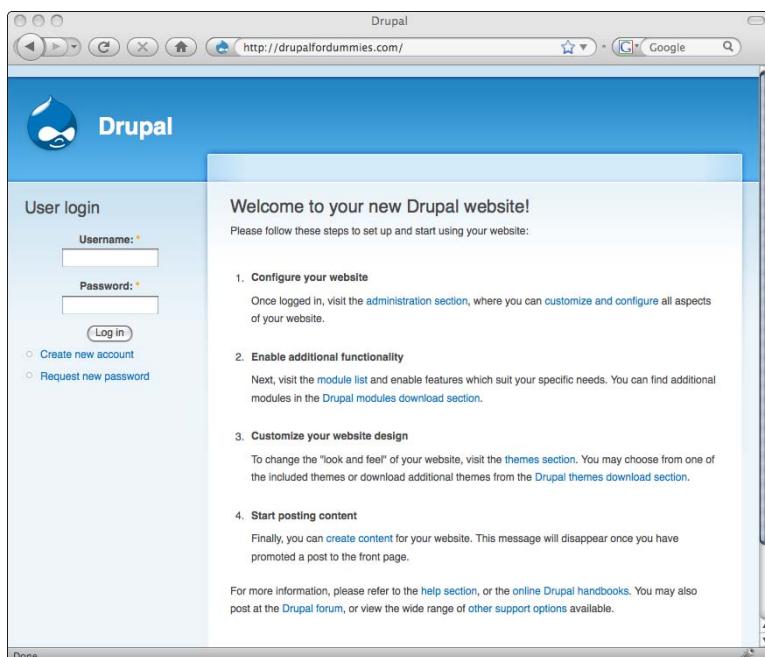
In this chapter, when you see screen shots of [drupalfordummies.com](http://drupalfordummies.com), they are early ones, taken when the site was first being put together. I was

still considering the site configuration options that Drupal offers and which choices made the most sense for this particular site. With every decision I made, I had to consider the purpose of the site and the audience of the site.

When you visit the site now, you see the finished product, complete with a blog where I share my personal Drupal experiences, and forums that allow site visitors to discuss book topics. But before I could build those into `drupalfordummies.com`, I had to become familiar with the Drupal administrative menus and take care of some initial administrative tasks. As I made my preliminary decisions, I had to keep in mind my eventual objective: a Web site to help me build a community for readers of this book. Your objective might be to raise awareness of a cause or to sell a product. These things matter as you make your decisions. Throughout this chapter, I mention how my personal site goals influenced my administrative decisions.

## Using Your New Site Sections

You've installed and done some initial configuration of your site. Now it's time to get down to work and customize this site to suit your needs. But before you can, you have to become familiar with the interface. Browse to your new Drupal Web site and take a look at the current default home page (see Figure 3-1).



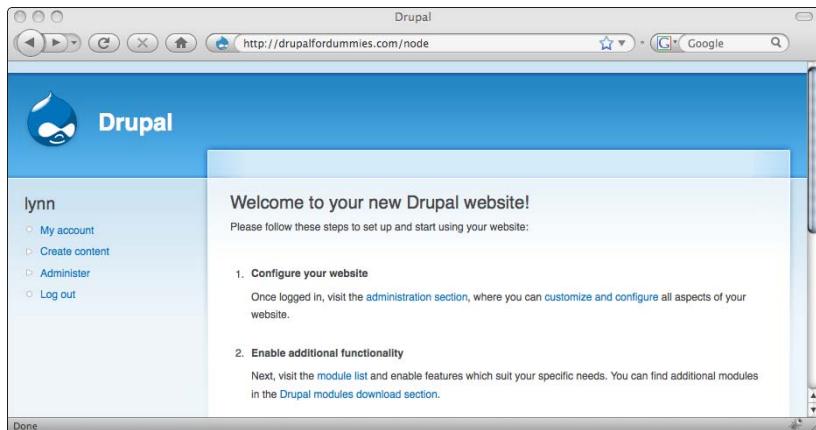
**Figure 3-1:**  
Your new  
Drupal site  
before any  
adminis-  
trative  
changes.

There's not much to see yet. It's still a default Drupal installation and needs lots of work. To do everything in this chapter, begin by logging in with the administrative username and password you set up in Chapter 2.

## Log out and log in

Everything begins by logging in. Type your administrative username and password that you chose when you installed Drupal and click Log in. You will now see your username above a new menu on the left where the user login form was (see Figure 3-2).

**Figure 3-2:**  
The main  
menu on the  
left appears  
when you  
log in to  
the site.



This menu contains four links:

- ✓ **My account:** Click on this to access your personal information. You can also edit it by clicking the Edit tab on the right side of the screen (see Figure 3-3). All users see this link.
- ✓ **Create content:** Clicking on this link opens up several links underneath it. This is where you go to add, edit, or delete any content on the site. Only when you are logged in as the administrator will you see this link.
- ✓ **Administer:** This also expands into many more links when clicked. This section is concerned with how the site behaves and looks rather than the content on it. Only when you are logged in as the administrator will you see this link.
- ✓ **Log out:** This does exactly what you think it does — logs you out. Make sure to log out if you plan on leaving your computer unattended in a public place for any length of time. All users see this link.

That's the overview of the main menu. Now you should take a closer look at each menu item.

## *Editing your account*

This link takes you to your personal settings. When you click on it, you see your basic information. Locate the Edit link on the right and click on it to edit your personal settings, as seen in Figure 3-3.

Even though you are logged in as the administrator, the account settings shown on this page are the same ones any registered user will be able to control. When a user clicks on the My account link and then the Edit tab, he will be able to make changes to his personal account.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for a Drupal site. The URL in the address bar is <http://drupalfordummies.com/user/1/edit>. The page title is "lyn" | Drupal. The main content area is titled "My account". On the left, there is a sidebar with a "lyn" profile picture and a navigation menu:

- My account (selected)
- Create content
- Administer
- Log out

The main content area has tabs "View" and "Edit" (which is selected). Below the tabs, there is a section titled "Account information". It contains fields for "Username" (set to "lyn"), "E-mail address" (set to "lyn@drupalfordummies.com"), "Password", "Confirm password", and "Status" (set to "Active"). There is also a "Locale settings" section with a "Time zone" dropdown set to "Friday, June 12, 2009 - 03:00 +0000". At the bottom of the form are "Save" and "Delete" buttons, and a "Done" link.

**Figure 3-3:**  
The Edit  
tab of the  
Account  
information  
page.

The settings are:

- ✓ **Username:** You can change your current username here.
- ✓ **E-mail address:** This is the e-mail address for the current user.
- ✓ **Password:** If you want to change the password for this account, enter it here.
- ✓ **Confirm password:** Type the new password again to confirm.
- ✓ **Status:** You can change the status here from Active, which allows you to post on the site, to Blocked, where you can't. There isn't any reason to change this setting in this menu. Another section of the site that I talk about later allows you, as an administrator, to manage the setting for any user on the site.
- ✓ **Time zone:** Remember the time zone you set in the last chapter during the manual install? No matter what the site time zone is set to, when you are logged in you will see the time zone selected here.

## *Creating your first content*

Enough about the important, but not very interesting, account settings. After setting up and administering your site in the first two chapters, you're ready to make a visual change to your Drupal site. I discuss the content link in this section and show how to add some content to the site.



I cover content creation in much more detail in Chapter 5.

### *Understanding pages and stories*

In Drupal, a *page* is generally content that seldom changes. In the case of my drupalfordummies.com site, I might create a page with my contact information on it.

A *story* is more like a news article or blog. You can allow users comments on an individual story, which a page, by default, doesn't allow you to do.

### *Creating a story*

To add your first story to the home page of your Drupal site, follow these steps:

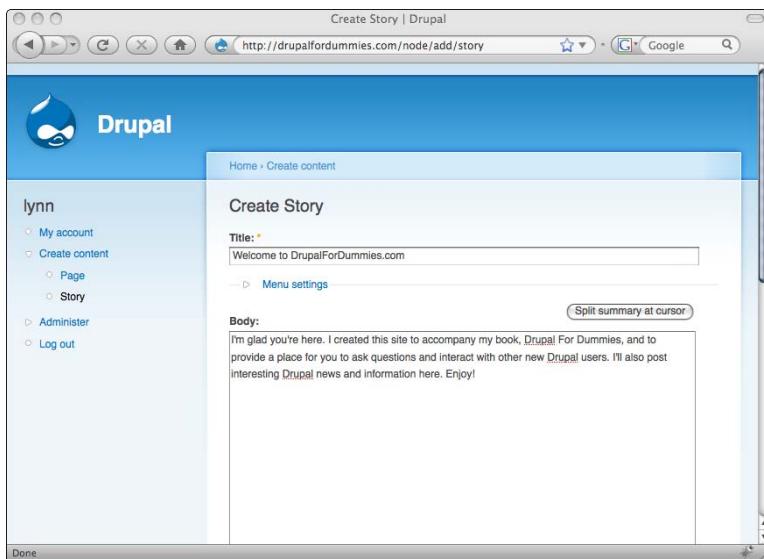
1. **If you aren't logged in to the site, log in with your administrator user-name and password.**

**2. Click the Create content link on the left.**

You see two new links appear on the left, *Page* and *Story*.

**3. Click the Story link on the left.**

You see a form that allows you to create your first story (see Figure 3-4). There are lots of other options and settings on this form, but I won't discuss those until Chapter 5.



**Figure 3-4:**  
The Create  
Story page.

**4. Type something in the title and body text boxes. Scroll down to the very bottom of the page, and click the Preview button.**

You will see a preview of your story (see Figure 3-5).

Your story will not yet appear on your Web site; this just gives you an idea of what it will look like when it is published and gives you the chance to make changes before it appears on your Web site.

**5. After you've made any additions or changes to it, and when you are happy with it, click the Save button at the bottom of the page.**

You can use the Preview button again and again as you change the story. Preview your story as often as you wish without saving it. It won't appear on your Web site until you click the Save button.



That's it! You will see a confirmation message in green (see Figure 3-6) that your story has been published, but that message won't show up on the site when you reload, and anybody else visiting your site will not see the green text.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the Drupal logo at the top. The main content area is titled 'Preview' and displays a story titled 'Welcome to DrupalForDummies.com'. The story's body contains the text: 'I'm glad you're here. I created this site to accompany my book, Drupal For Dummies, and to provide a place for you to ask questions and interact with other new Drupal users. I'll also post interesting Drupal news and information here. Enjoy!'. Below the preview, there are fields for 'Title:' (set to 'Welcome to DrupalForDummies.com') and 'Body:' (containing the same text). A 'Menu settings' link is visible above the body field. At the bottom of the form, there are 'Split summary at cursor' and 'Done' buttons.

**Figure 3-5:**  
A preview  
of your first  
story.



To see your new story, reload the browser. Your story is visible to anyone who browses to your site, whether or not they are logged in.

The screenshot shows the Drupal homepage after the story has been published. The story is listed under the 'Welcome to DrupalForDummies.com' heading. A green success message box appears below the story, stating 'Story Welcome to DrupalForDummies.com has been created.' The story's body text is the same as in Figure 3-5. At the bottom of the page, there is a 'View' and 'Edit' link next to the story, and a 'Add new comment' link below it. The URL in the browser bar is http://drupalfordummies.com/node/1.

**Figure 3-6:**  
The story  
you cre-  
ated now  
appears on  
the home  
page of  
your site.

By default, your story has a comment link. Only registered users can add comments.

## Administering Options



The Administer menu has a few interesting menu items you may want to play with right now.

I cover the Administer menu in detail in Chapter 4.

Log in with your administrator username and password, and click the Administer link. For now I focus on the menu on the left:

✓ **Content management:** The menu options available under this section control everything to do with the appearance and management of your content. While you would use the Create content link to create new content, this section allows you to edit existing content.

This is where you change how and where your content appears.

✓ **Site building:** Here's where you change the appearance of your site. You can change the overall look by selecting a new theme, and you can change where on the page various content types will appear. For example, I could move the new story I created in the left-hand column and move the menu items to the right if I wished. There's no good reason to do so, but there will be changes to the interface you will wish to make. This is also the area that controls navigation links and where they appear. This is where you would create a link to a Contact Us page, for example. You would create the page itself by clicking the Create Content link.

✓ **Site configuration:** In the preceding chapter, you set some of the Site Configuration options when you installed Drupal manually. If you used Fantastico, you haven't made any configuration changes yet. This section controls some basic but important options that control how your site operates.

The section "Configuring your site," below, shows a few important site configuration options you should set.



### Embracing Drupal terminology

You've already encountered the words *page* and *story* to describe types of content. And you probably have an idea of what *theme* means now.

A few Drupal expressions that you should know at this point are:

✓ **Page:** A type of content primarily used for news. This type allows registered users of the site to add comments.

✓ **Story:** A type of content primarily used for information that doesn't change very often.

✓ **Menu:** A Drupal menu means a collection of links.

✓ **Theme:** This is a set of styles, graphics, and layouts.



- ✓ **User management:** If you want to add, edit, or delete users, this is the place to do it. You can also control what the user can see on the site and what he can't.
- ✓ **Reports:** The reports section helps you keep tabs on how much and what kind of activity is happening on your site.  
This becomes very important as your site gets more visitors.
- ✓ **Help:** If you get stumped as you administer your site, you may find some help in this section.

It's not much fun to read about all these menu items and not get a chance to do anything. While I go through all this in more detail later in the book, here's one fun thing you can change on your site, buried in the Administer menu section:

- 1. Choose Administer → Site Building → Themes.**
- 2. Scroll down and find the Chameleon theme. Select the check box and radio button to the right of Chameleon (see Figure 3-7).**
- 3. Click the Save configuration button at the bottom of the page.**

The screenshot shows the Drupal administration interface for managing themes. The page title is "Themes | Drupal". The URL is "http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/themes". The main content area displays a table of available themes:

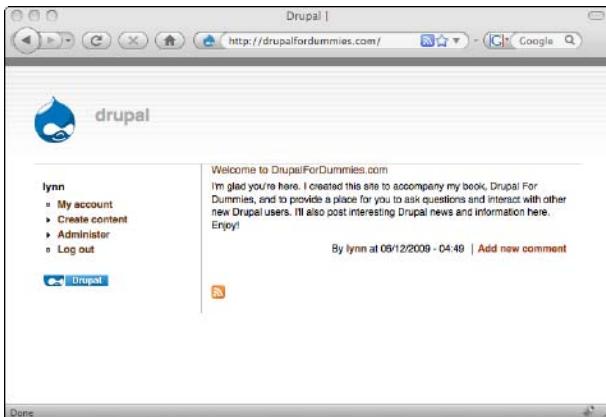
Screenshot	Name	Version	Enabled	Default	Operations
	Iceline	6.10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
	Chameleon	6.10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
	Garland	6.10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">Configure</a>
	Marvin	6.10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
	Minnelli	6.10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
	Pushbutton	6.10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>

At the bottom of the page are two buttons: "(Save configuration)" and "(Reset to defaults)".

**Figure 3-7:**  
Changing  
the default  
theme to  
Chameleon.

Suddenly your site has changed to a new theme (see Figure 3-8). Only the appearance has changed. The content is still there, and the layout is even the same.

**Figure 3-8:**  
Drupal site  
using the  
Chameleon  
theme.



If you don't like the new theme, you can return it to the Garland theme by selecting the radio button to the right of the Garland theme on the Themes page. Or try one of the others. You can change it back if you don't like it.

## Configuring Your Site

You may not have manually installed your Drupal site, choosing to go the Fantastico route instead. If so, the name of your site is still "Drupal." It's time to change that, as well as a few other important configuration options. I begin by looking at all the options under the Site configuration menu. To get there, choose Administer→Site configuration.

Here are the options you are most likely to use at some point:

- ✓ **Actions:** Suppose you wanted Drupal to send you an e-mail whenever someone comments on your story. Sending that e-mail to you is a type of *action*. Clicking this link allows you to create new actions.
- ✓ **Administration theme:** If you want just the administrative pages (that is, all the links under the Administer menu) to use a different theme than the rest of the site, you can set it here.
- ✓ **Clean URLs:** Many Drupal URLs look like this: `http://drupalfordummies.com/?q=node/1`. Enabling this makes them look like this: `http://drupalfordummies.com/node/1`.
- ✓ **Date and time:** Here's where you can change the default time zone for your site.



You can also control how dates appear on the site. For example, if you look at the story you created earlier in this chapter, it has a byline with your username followed by a time and date. This form lets you change the appearance of that information.

- ✓ **Error reporting:** Settings here control what happens when a visitor tries to go to a page on your site that doesn't exist.
- ✓ **File system:** These settings control where files uploaded by users are kept and how Drupal handles those uploads.
- ✓ **Image toolkit:** You can control the quality of images and how they are handled if you add an image gallery or similar feature on your site.
- ✓ **Site information:** This contains a number of text boxes where you can enter information that will, if you wish, appear on every page of your site. I explain this in more depth later in this chapter.
- ✓ **Site maintenance:** If you want to work on your site but don't want anyone to see the changes or log in while you are making them, you can take your site offline here. This means that visitors will see a message about the site being unavailable. You will still be able to see the site when you log in with your administrator username and password.

## *Setting your site information*

There are quite a few settings in the Site information form you should fill out. This is where you can put your own name on the site as well as additional information that appears on every page of your site.

To customize your site information, follow these steps:



**1. Logged in with your administrator username and password, choose Administer → Site configuration. You see the form shown in Figure 3-9.**

I am currently using the Chameleon theme. You may be using a different theme, so your screen doesn't look like mine. Don't let that throw you; all the same form fields are on all versions.

**2. Enter your site name in the Name text box. Also, if you don't have an e-mail address in the E-mail address field, enter one now. Click Save Configuration.**

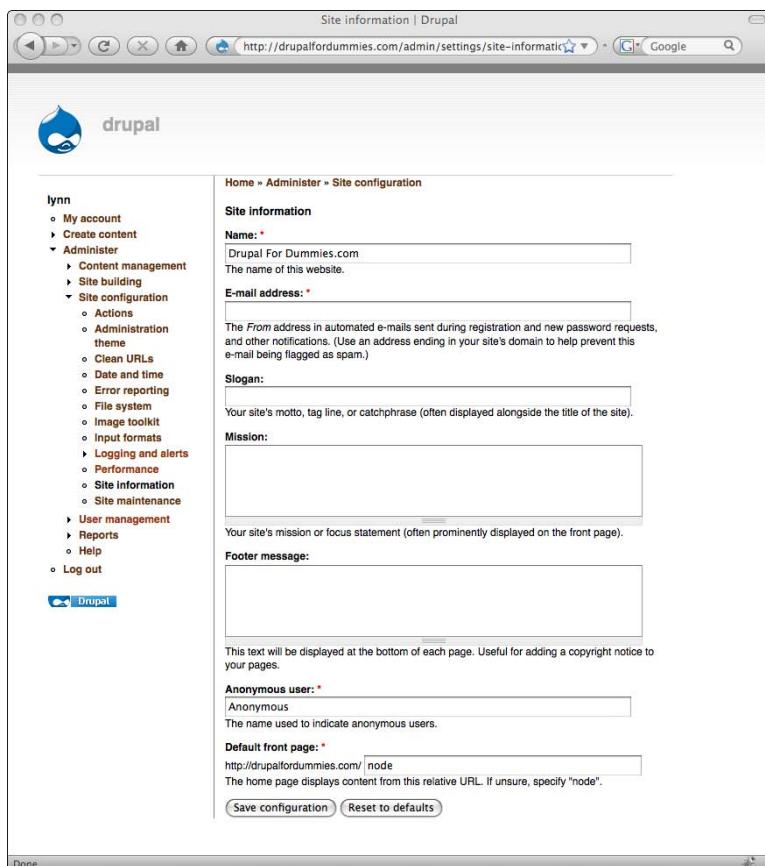
For now, just change the site name and save it. Look at the top of your page. Instead of the word "Drupal," the name you entered is displayed. In my case, my site now has a title.

**3. Navigate back to the Site configuration page and add a Footer message. Click Save Configuration.**

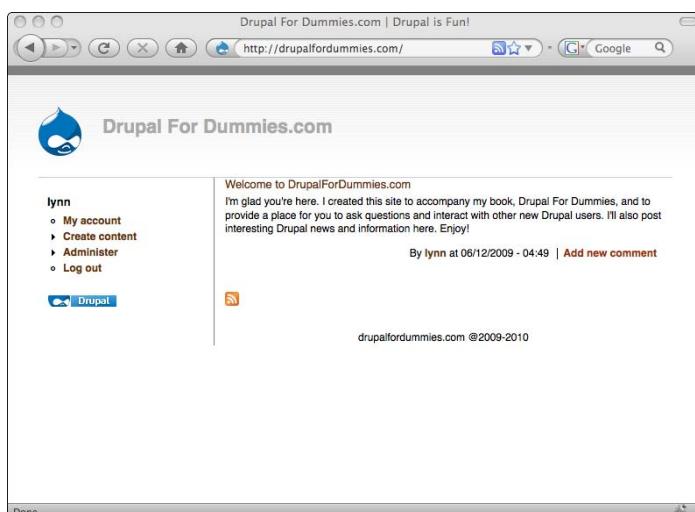
Your site will now have a title and a footer (see Figure 3-10).

Later in this book, I show you how to make the slogan and mission statements appear on the site.

At this point, your site should begin to look like your site, not the default Drupal site. It only gets better from here on out!



**Figure 3-9:**  
Site con-  
figuration  
settings.



**Figure 3-10:**  
Site with  
a title and  
footer.

## Chapter 4

# Tackling User Management

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Securing your administrator account
- ▶ Understanding roles
- ▶ Controlling site registrations
- ▶ Keeping tabs on your users

**W**hen the business of installing and configuring Drupal is complete, people can visit your site. Now it's time to consider how these visitors to your site will be treated. Part of that involves the decision whether to even allow users to register on your site and, if so, the privileges they get as registered users.

This chapter is about making your own administrator account a bit more secure, managing whether your visitors can register and log in, how that process takes place, and the privileges both unregistered and registered users get on your site.

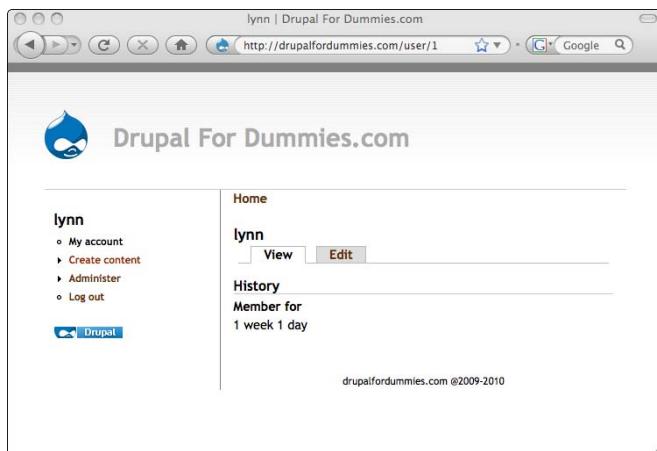
## *Managing Your Administrator Account*

The administrator account is the username and password you set up when you installed Drupal. This account is your key to the kingdom: The administrator account allows you complete control over everything on your site.

### *Editing administrator settings*

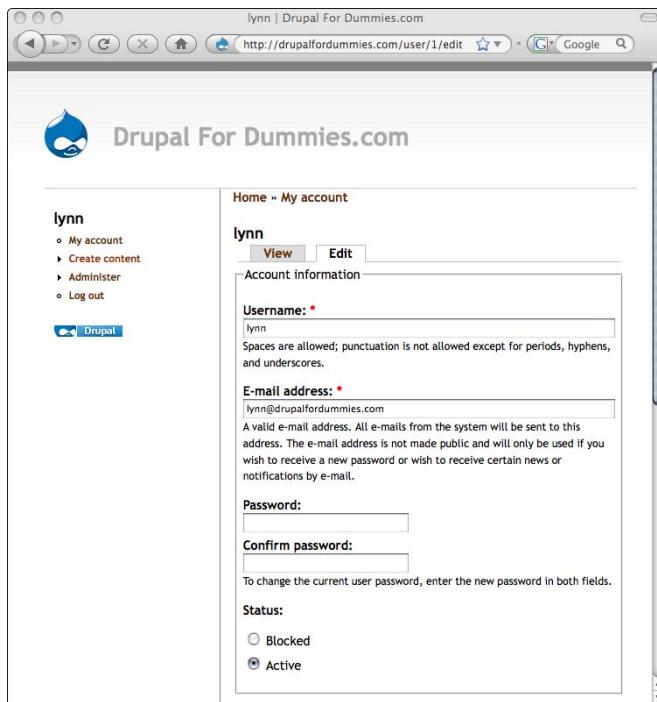
To change settings for your administrator account, log in and click the My account link. You will see basic information about how long your account has existed under the View tab (See Figure 4-1).

**Figure 4-1:**  
The View tab under  
the My account  
page.



You can't configure anything on this page; it states your history. Click the Edit tab (See Figure 4-2).

**Figure 4-2:**  
The Edit tab  
of the My  
account  
page.



## Initial user setup

Drupal allows two types of users by default when you first install it:

- ✓ Unregistered users are visitors to your site who don't log in.

By default, unregistered users can view the content on your site, located in pages, stories, and comments, but they can't contribute any content themselves. If they try to comment, they will be told they must log in to do so.

- ✓ Registered users have set up a username and password on the system.

By default, registered users can view all the content and are allowed to add comments.

These are the "out of the box" settings for unregistered and registered users, but you can change these settings to your liking.

The My account page opens up a much longer page with options for you to change your *status* (which I explain in a moment), username, e-mail password, and account password. There are also sections for Theme configuration and Locale settings (See Figure 4-3).



These two tabbed pages show up for all registered users on your site. They can control their own passwords and, by default, control the same options that your administrator account can change here. You can control what your users can change on the Edit tab:



- ✓ **Username:** You can change your administrator username here.
- ✓ **E-mail address:** This is the address associated with your administrator account.

This isn't the e-mail address you set up to be your Web site e-mail address used for automatically generated e-mails.

- ✓ **Password and Confirm Password:** If you didn't set a strong password when you set up the Drupal site, here's where you can change it.
- ✓ **Status:** This setting controls whether this user, in this case, you the administrator, can log in.

*Don't change Status to blocked!* If an account is blocked, that user will not be able to log in to the site.



Don't change Status to blocked when you are looking at your own account. I can't stress this strongly enough. If you change it to blocked, you will lock yourself out of your own site! There is no easy way to recover from this. At best, you'll have to dig around and change a setting in the MySQL database behind the scenes, which is tricky.



Although the status setting appears on your own administrator setting page, it only applies if you aren't looking at that administrator setting page. Later in this chapter, I show you how to view other user accounts and reach this settings page. That's the only time you need to use this setting.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit' tab of the 'My account' page. At the top, there is a note: 'To change the current user password, enter the new password in both fields.' Below this is a 'Status:' section with two radio buttons: 'Blocked' (unchecked) and 'Active' (checked). The next section is 'Theme configuration', which includes a dropdown menu showing 'chameleon' as the selected theme ('site default theme'). Other themes listed are 'Garland - Fluid Width' and 'garland'. Below this is a 'Locale settings' section with a 'Time zone:' dropdown set to 'Friday, June 19, 2009 - 14:57 +0000'. A note below says 'Select your current local time. Dates and times throughout this site will be displayed using this time zone.' At the bottom of the page are 'Save' and 'Delete' buttons, and the footer 'drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010'.

**Figure 4-3:**  
The bottom  
half of the  
Edit tab  
under the  
My account  
page.

The two remaining sections of the My account page are



- ✓ Theme configuration controls which theme this user (in this case, you the administrator) will see when logged in to the site. I spend lots of time talking about themes in Chapter 7.  
This is where users can change the theme that only they see. Chapter 7 explains how to turn this option off for other users if you want them to see only the theme you choose.
- ✓ Locale settings override the time zone you set when you configured the site for everything this user sees.



Drupal uses a menuing system that can hide page sections. Clicking on the title Theme configuration, for example, hides the content in the square just underneath it. You can click on the title again to display it. This behavior shows up in lots of places, so if you don't see sections of the site displayed that you think you should, make sure they aren't hidden under their titles.

## Maintaining security

Your administrator account controls everything, and I mean *everything*, to do with your Drupal site. Keep your administrator account safe at all times:

- ✓ If you started with a simple password, consider changing it to something with at least 7 characters, using both numbers and letters.  
Changing your password is easy. Click the My account link, then the Edit tab on the right. Type in your new, stronger password, and type it again. Then press the Save button.
- ✓ Consider changing your username if you've used something predictable like "admin" or your first name, as I have in the examples in this chapter.  
Change your username on the Edit tab of the My account page. You can use your full name (for example, Lynn Beighley) as your username. This is a nice choice, because when you post to your site blog or write comments, your full name will appear as the author.

## Allowing Public Registrations

As Drupal is set when you first install it, anyone can register for an account on the site without having to be approved by you. You can set up your own user account and see how user registration currently works:

- 1. If you are currently logged in, click the log-out link at the bottom of the left menu.**

You will see a log-in form on the left. Under that are two links: Create new account and Request new password.

- 2. Click the Create new account link.**

You will see the User account page with the Create new account form (see Figure 4-4).

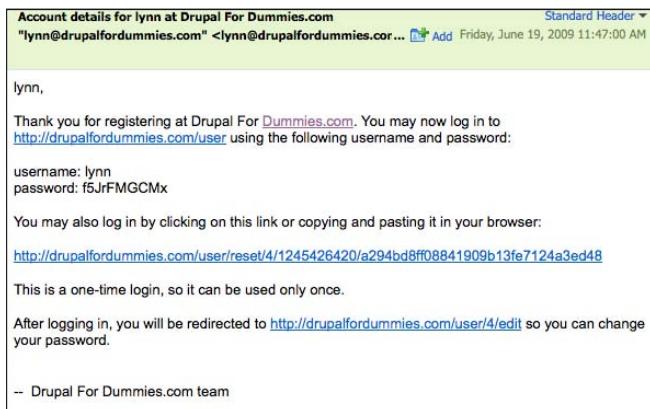
**Figure 4-4:**  
New user  
account  
request  
form.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/user/register>. The page title is "User account | Drupal For Dummies.com". The main content area has a blue logo and the text "Drupal For Dummies.com". Below it, there's a sidebar with a "Drupal" link and a main content area titled "User account". The content area contains fields for "Username:" and "E-mail address:", both marked with a red asterisk indicating they are required. Below these fields is a note about punctuation rules and a link to "Create new account". At the bottom of the form is a copyright notice: "drupalfordummies.com @2009-2010".

### 3. Enter a username and a valid e-mail address, and then click Create new account.

You will receive an e-mail at that address in a few minutes (see Figure 4-5).

**Figure 4-5:**  
The con-  
firmation  
e-mail users  
receive  
when they  
register.



Use a different e-mail address for your test user account than the address you used with your administrator account. Drupal identifies users on the site by e-mail address; only one user to an e-mail address is allowed.

The text of this e-mail is up to you. (I show you where you can change it in the “User e-mail settings” section, later in this chapter.)

The user account has now been set up. You can click the link in the e-mail you received and see how the rest of the registration process works.



Now you have a registered user account in addition to your administrator account. Take advantage of this new user account to see how the site looks to your registered users. You should also preview your site completely logged out as you work through the chapters of this book.

## Sensible registration guidelines

Users can create their own accounts (as I explained previously in this chapter). As things stand now, the site administrator (you) won't necessarily know when a new user registers. However, there are a couple of settings that can help you control new registrations:

- ✓ You can control how you are notified when users register.
- ✓ More importantly, you can control whether new users have to be approved by you first.

To control user registrations and a few other settings involved with new user creation, you can visit the User management page (see Figure 4-6).

**User settings | Drupal For Dummies.com**

Home » Administer » User management

**User settings**

User registration settings

**Public registrations:**

Only site administrators can create new user accounts.  
 Visitors can create accounts and no administrator approval is required.  
 Visitors can create accounts but administrator approval is required.

Require e-mail verification when a visitor creates an account  
If this box is checked, new users will be required to validate their e-mail address prior to logging into the site, and will be assigned a system-generated password. With it unchecked, users will be logged in immediately upon registering, and may select their own passwords during registration.

**User registration guidelines:**

This text is displayed at the top of the user registration form and is useful for helping or instructing your users.

**Figure 4-6:**  
The User settings section of the User management page.

To get to the user settings section, log in with your administrator username and password. Click Administer→User management.

The Public registration set of radio buttons controls how users can register. The options are:

✓ **Only site administrators can create new user accounts:** If you select this option, you must create new accounts yourself. The link that invites visitors to create a new account won't show.

To create new accounts, you will need to use the add user form that I discuss in the section "Adding, Editing, and Deleting users."

✓ **Visitors can create accounts and no administrator approval is required:** This is the default setting when you first install Drupal. You've already seen how this works for users:

- Provide the system with a username and e-mail.
- Receive an e-mail from the system with a temporary password and a link to log in.

✓ **Visitors can create accounts, but administrator approval is required:** If you select this, Drupal will send an e-mail to your administrator account password asking you to approve the new user registration. If you follow the link in the e-mail and approve the user, he will be able to log in. If not, then Drupal throws away his information.

Use the administrator approval required setting, at least until you finish designing your site.



The next option on the page is a check box that asks you if you want to require e-mail verification when a visitor creates an account. It's checked by default. This option causes the new registering user to get an e-mail like the one shown in Figure 4-5.

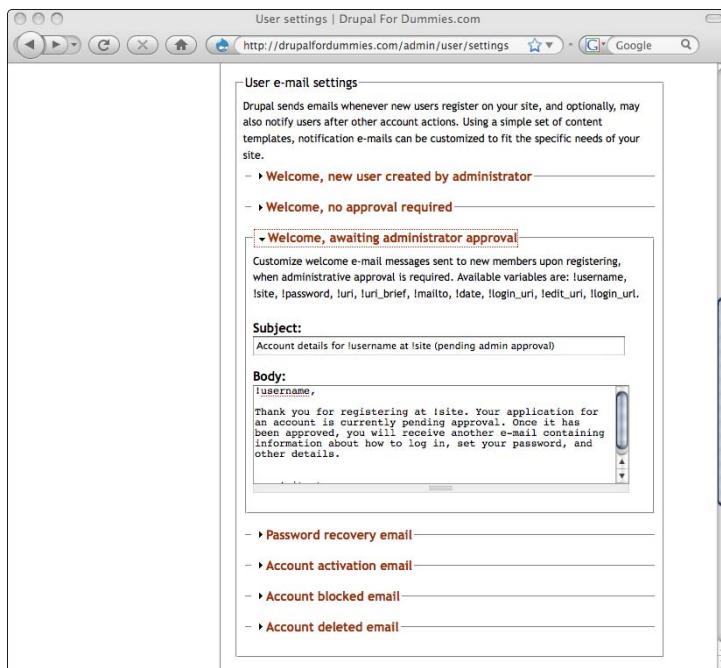


Leave this option checked. It prevents users from registering with a fake e-mail address. They have to use the password provided in the e-mail they receive, which proves that they have access to a real e-mail account and aren't spammers who want to fill your site up with spam advertisements.

The last text box in this section gives you a place to enter your own message to users filling out the user registration form. It shows up when visitors click the Create new account link. It's a good place to let them know what to expect if they register. If you choose to approve all registrations, for example, you can use this box to tell them that it may take up to 2 days to be approved.

## User e-mail settings

The User e-mail settings section on this page contains a long form on which you can customize e-mails that get sent out to users by Drupal when certain things happen. For example, here is where you can change the text sent to people who register and get e-mailed a password (refer to Figure 4-5). Figure 4-7 shows the list of e-mails. (In this figure, you're just seeing the title bars for most of the User e-mail settings.)



**Figure 4-7:**  
User e-mail  
settings por-  
tion of User  
manag-  
ment page.

To open the form for any individual e-mail form, click on its title bar.

Take a close look at the e-mail listed under Welcome, awaiting administrator approval. It starts with the word *!username*. Any time you see a word preceded by an exclamation point in these e-mails, the word is a stand-in. Since this e-mail is meant to go to any new registering user, Drupal uses *!username* and then replaces it with the appropriate username when it sends an e-mail to a specific user.



If you edit these e-mails, pay special attention to any words that are placeholders. The most commonly used are:

- ✓ **!username**: The username of the e-mail recipient
- ✓ **!site**: The site name that you set in the site configuration settings discussed in the preceding chapter
- ✓ **!password**: The e-mail recipient's password
- ✓ **!uri\_brief**: A URL that takes the new user directly to the Edit tab of the My account page where he can change his password
- ✓ **!mailto**: The e-mail address of the e-mail recipient
- ✓ **!date**: The current date
- ✓ **!login\_url**: The URL of the site

There are seven e-mails you can modify here:



- ✓ **Welcome, new user created by administrator**: If you select the first option under the user registration settings, shown in Figure 4-7, this is the e-mail that gets sent to the user.

- ✓ **Welcome, no approval required**: Sent to users if you select the second option under the user registration settings.

This is the e-mail you received, shown in Figure 4-5, when you created the user account earlier in this chapter.



- ✓ **Welcome, awaiting administrator approval**: If you select the third option under the user registration settings, shown in Figure 4-7, this e-mail is sent to the user.

Edit this e-mail to let the user know how long the approval will take.



- ✓ **Password recovery e-mail**: When visitors aren't logged in, they see a link to request a new password. After they enter their username or e-mail, this is the e-mail they are sent. It contains a link to a page on which they can reset the password.

- ✓ **Account activation e-mail**: If you are using the third option under user registration settings (administrator approval required), this gets sent to the user when you approve his account.



- ✓ **Account blocked e-mail**: If you block a user account, this e-mail informs him that he won't be able to log in to the site.

I show you how to block users in the section "Adding, Editing, and Deleting users."

- ✓ **Account deleted e-mail**: If you delete a user account, that user receives this e-mail. I show you how to delete users in the section "Adding, Editing, and Deleting users."



If you accidentally change any of these e-mails, or anything else on this page, and you don't like what you've done or you've left out one of the placeholder words, you can restore everything to Drupal's default settings. Click the Reset to defaults button at the bottom of this page.

There are two more sections on this page: Signatures and Pictures. I discuss these in Chapter 9, where I show you how to add a forum to your site.

## Assigning user permissions

By default, logged-in registered users can add comments to your postings, but unregistered users can't. This setting, and many other settings, is controlled by the Permissions form under User management (see Figure 4-8).

Permission	anonymous user	authenticated user
<b>block module</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
administer blocks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
use PHP for block visibility	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>comment module</b>		
access comments	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
administer comments	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
post comments	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
post comments without approval	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>filter module</b>		
administer filters	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>menu module</b>		
administer menu	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Figure 4-8:**  
The  
Permissions  
form  
controls  
what users  
can do.



Drupal calls users who are logged in to the site **authenticated users**. From this point on, I use **authenticated users** to mean users who are logged in to the system, and **anonymous users** to refer to users who are not logged in.

To get to the Permissions page, log in with your administrator account and click Administer→User management→Permissions. Along the top of the table

on this page, there are the table headings anonymous user and authenticated user. Anything you check under anonymous user will only apply to anyone who visits the site without signing in. Anything checked under authenticated users will only apply to users who sign in. There are lots of options here, but for now I only discuss a few of them.



It seems odd, but if you check anonymous user and not authenticated user on one of these options, only people who haven't logged in will have that privilege. Generally,, if an anonymous user can do something, an authenticated user should be able to do it as well. Make sure both check boxes are checked when the anonymous user box is checked.

Most of these permission settings are covered in detail elsewhere in the book as I show you more Drupal modules. You should know about these permission settings right now:

✓ **Comment Module:** This section controls whether users can view, create, or administer comments.

- Access comments: Controls if users can see comments.
- Administer comments: If selected, users can edit or delete comments.
- Post comments: If this is selected, users can post comments, but they have to be approved by you first.
- Post comments without approval: If you want users to post without prior approval, check this. In general, it's a good idea to not allow anonymous users to comment or, if so, make sure this is checked for you to view them first. Spammers frequently take advantage of comments to advertise their wares.

✓ **Node Module:** Nodes contain all the content on a Drupal site. I discuss only a few of these permissions that will be familiar to you at this point. Be cautious about granting permission for most of these.

- Access content: This is probably the one permission you will always grant. This allows visitors to see content on your site. They can't do anything except view it, so it's safe to give to anonymous users as well.
- Create story content: You may recall that the text I entered that appears on the front page of drupalfordummies.com is a *story*. This permission allows users to add their own stories to the site. You probably won't do this.
- Edit any story content: Granting this allows users to edit stories posted to the site. For example, with this checked, a user could change the text posted to the front page of drupalfordummies.com.
- Edit own story content: If you allow users to enter stories, you may want to enable this to allow them to edit only stories they have created.

✓ **User Module:** This controls the administration of users.

- Access user profiles: Allows a user to view other users' profiles.
- Administer permission: If selected, users can edit the page I am discussing right now. It is never a good idea to give users that much authority.
- Administer users: You will allow your users to do all of the things I talk about in the section "Adding, Editing, and Deleting Users." This is likely not something you will want to do.
- Change own username: If you check this, users will be able to change their usernames using the Edit tab of the My account page, as shown in Figure 4-2. It makes no sense to check this for an anonymous user, but you may wish to allow authenticated users to do so.



You can see many more permissions available here, but until you have an understanding of these modules and features (for example, blocks and filters), you shouldn't modify the permissions for them. You can always come back to this page and tweak permissions later. In general, it's best to start with as few permissions as possible and add more only when needed.

## *Adding, Editing, and Deleting Users*

Drupal gives the administrator (you) complete control over the registered users on your site. This means you can add new users, edit all user information, and delete users.

### *Adding users*

To add a new registered user to your site, log in as the site administrator and click on Administer→User management→Users. Then click the Add user tab on the right-hand side of the screen. You will see the Add user form (see Figure 4-9).

This is much like the Edit tab of the My account page. But rather than editing an existing user, this creates a new user. Enter a username, e-mail address, password, and status on this page. If you set the status to Active, the new user will be able to log in, and if you check the box next to Notify user of new account, an e-mail will be sent to the e-mail address you entered for this new user. The e-mail will inform him that his account has been created and explain where he can log in.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/user/user/create>. The page title is 'Drupal For Dummies.com' with a logo. The main content area is titled 'Users' with tabs for 'List' and 'Add user' (which is selected). A note says: 'This web page allows administrators to register new users. Users' e-mail addresses and usernames must be unique.' Below are fields for 'Username' (with a note about allowed characters), 'E-mail address' (with a note about valid email format), 'Password' (with a note about providing a password in both fields), and 'Confirm password'. There are status options ('Blocked' or 'Active') and a checkbox for 'Notify user of new account'. At the bottom is a 'Create new account' button.

**Figure 4-9:**  
Add new  
user form.

## Editing user information

Before you can edit user information for a particular user, you need to see a list of your users to select the correct account. To edit information for a user, log in as the site administrator and click on Administer→User management→Users. The list of users appears (see Figure 4-10).

Over time, your user list will get longer and longer. The table that lists your users can be sorted using the links at the top. For example, if you click on Username, the list will be alphabetized by username, A to Z. If you click it again, it will be ordered from Z to A. You may also find it useful to sort by the Member for heading if you are looking for a user who has just joined.

The section with the Filter button (as shown in Figure 4-10) allows you to view only users who satisfy particular criteria. You can choose to view a list of users based on the permissions you have granted them. Or if you need to see just your blocked users, use the status option.

To edit an individual user, click the edit link under the Operations heading. You will then be on the Edit tab of the My account link for that user (see Figure 4-11).

The screenshot shows the Drupal user management interface. On the left is a sidebar with a navigation menu:

- My account
- Create content
- Administrator
  - Content management
  - Site building
  - Site configuration
- User management
  - Access rules
  - Permissions
  - Roles
  - User settings
  - Users
- Reports
- Help
- Log out

Below the sidebar is the main content area. It has tabs for "List" and "Add user". A note says: "Drupal allows users to register, login, log out, maintain user profiles, etc. Users of the site may not use their own names to post content until they have signed up for a user account." There's a link "[more help...]".

Under "Show only users where" there are two radio buttons: "permission is administer blocks" and "status active". Below that is an "Update options" section with a dropdown set to "Unblock the selected users" and a "Update" button.

The main table lists users:

	Username	Status	Roles	Member for	Last access	Operations
<input type="checkbox"/>	lynn	active		3 hours 15 min	2 hours 32 min ago	<a href="#">edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Lynn Beighley	active		1 week 2 days	1 min 43 sec ago	<a href="#">edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Anonymous	blocked		39 years 25 weeks	never	<a href="#">edit</a>

At the bottom of the page is the footer: drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010

**Figure 4-10:**  
User man-  
agement  
page with  
list of users.



For each registered user, Drupal keeps track of a username, password, e-mail address, a status (active or blocked), locale, and choice of theme. It also keeps track of roles, which I discuss in the next section. This is information that you, as administrator, can change. Drupal also records information such as when the last time a user logged in and comments a user has made. You can't edit this information. You can modify everything else that shows up on the Edit tab of the My accounts link.

The user edit page you as administrator see is basically the same as the edit page the user sees, with a few exceptions:

- ✓ The status section isn't available to the user. Only the administrator can control a user's status.
- ✓ The administrator can change the theme the user sees.
- ✓ The administrator can specify which *roles* (explained later in this chapter) the user has.



If you are ever asked to reset a user's password, this is the place to do it. But Drupal provides a link, Request new password, on your home page. This link sends the user an e-mail with a randomly generated password that allows him to log in and change his password himself.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit user' page for a user named 'lynn'. The page is divided into several sections:

- Account information:** Fields include Username (lynn), E-mail address (lynntestuser@drupalfordummies.com), Password, Confirm password, Status (Active selected), and Roles (authenticated user selected).
- Theme configuration:** A table showing theme settings. The 'chameleon' theme is selected as the site default theme.
- Locale settings:** Set the Time zone to Sunday, June 21, 2009 - 08:12 -0400.

**Figure 4-11:**  
The Edit  
user page  
the adminis-  
trator sees.

## Deleting users

To delete users, follow these steps:

1. Log in as the site administrator and click on Administer → User management → Users.

You will see the list of users (refer to Figure 4-10).

2. Click the box next to the user you wish to delete.

3. In the section Update options, click on the drop-down list box, and choose Delete the selected users.
4. Press the Update button to delete all the users you have selected.

## Understanding User Roles

Drupal allows you to create new user types with different permissions than anonymous or authenticated users. Drupal refers to these special groups of users as user *roles*. For example, imagine that you want to allow a group of people permission to create new stories, but you don't want your average authenticated user to have permission to do this.

### *Creating roles*

To create a new role, log in as administrator, and then choose Administer→User Management→Roles (see Figure 4-12).

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/user/roles>. The page title is 'Roles | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with 'Lynn Beighley' at the top, followed by 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator' (which is expanded to show 'Content management', 'Site building', 'Site configuration', and 'User management'), 'User management' (which is also expanded to show 'Access rules', 'Permissions', 'Roles', 'User settings', 'Users', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Log out'), and a 'Drupal' link at the bottom. The main content area has a breadcrumb trail: 'Home » Administer » User management'. A heading 'Roles' is followed by a paragraph explaining what roles are: 'Roles allow you to fine tune the security and administration of Drupal. A role defines a group of users that have certain privileges as defined in user permissions. Examples of roles include: anonymous user, authenticated user, moderator, administrator and so on. In this area you will define the role names of the various roles. To delete a role choose "edit".' Below this, it says 'By default, Drupal comes with two user roles:' with a bulleted list: 'Anonymous user: this role is used for users that don't have a user account or that are not authenticated.' and 'Authenticated user: this role is automatically granted to all logged in users.' At the bottom, there is a table with three rows:

Name	Operations
anonymous user	locked <a href="#">edit permissions</a>
authenticated user	locked <a href="#">edit permissions</a>
story editors	<a href="#">Add role</a>

At the very bottom of the page, it says 'drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010'.

**Figure 4-12:**  
Adding a  
new role on  
the Roles  
page under  
User man-  
agement.

To create a new role, type a name for your role in the text box and click the Add role button.

At this point, you have a new role, but it has exactly the same permissions the authenticated user role has. In my example, I created the story editor role to allow people with that role permission to create stories on the site. First, the new role doesn't have any permissions, and second, I haven't assigned this role to any users. To fix the first part, and modify a new role to have the right permissions, click the edit permissions link that appears to the right of the role name. You will see a page very much like the Permissions page you saw earlier (refer to Figure 4-8), only with a single column (see Figure 4-13). You can add the appropriate permissions here.

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled 'Permissions | Drupal For Dummies.com' at the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/user/permissions>. The page header includes the Drupal logo and the site name 'Drupal For Dummies.com'. The main content area is titled 'Permissions' and contains a brief explanation of what permissions are. Below this is a table with two columns: 'Permission' and 'story editors'. The 'block module' section contains two items: 'administer blocks' and 'use PHP for block visibility', both with empty checkboxes. The 'comment module' section contains three items: 'access comments', 'administrator comments', and 'post comments', also with empty checkboxes. At the bottom of the table, there is a note: 'not comment administer without comment'.

**Figure 4-13:**  
Permission  
editing  
for a new  
administrator-  
created  
role.



Although you can edit permissions for your new roles by clicking the edit permissions link, it's actually better to click on Administer→User management→Permissions. This page lets you see all your roles and permissions at once, making it much easier to ensure your new role has the basic permissions that an authenticated user has in addition to the new permissions (for example, *create story content*, which my story editors need).

## Assigning roles to users

Users can have as many roles as you wish to give them. There are two ways to give users an additional role. To assign roles, follow these steps:

- 1. Navigate to Administer → User Management → Users.**
- 2. Click on the check box to the left of the user you are assigning the new role to.**
- 3. Click on the drop-down box under the Update options section and select your new role from the list.**

*or*

- 1. Navigate to Administer → User Management → Users.**
- 2. Click the edit link to the right of the username in the list.**

Since you created a new role, Drupal displays a Roles listing in the Account information section of the Edit page. Only the administrator can see this section. By default, all users are authenticated, so you can't uncheck the check box.

- 3. Check the box next to the name of your new role and click the Save button at the bottom of the page.**



# Part II

# Your First Drupal Site

The 5<sup>th</sup> Wave

By Rich Tennant



## *In this part . . .*

**I**ou discover how to take control of your new site, which includes creating and publishing content, changing the appearance of the site, and building menus. You learn how to post more images to your site. And to top it all off, you discover the secret to Drupal: modules.

Things are a tad more complicated here, but the rewards are great. By the end of this part, you'll have built a site with lots of fun features.

## Chapter 5

---

# Creating Content: Pages and Stories

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Understanding nodes
  - ▶ Beginning content creation
  - ▶ Organizing your content
  - ▶ Telling stories
  - ▶ Creating pages
- 

**W**hat's the point of creating a Web site without content? The primary reason to have a Web site is to communicate. You need content to get your message across, be it to sell something, to teach something, or to build a community. This chapter is all about content creation and organization.

The term *content* in this book refers to text, images, and other media intended to communicate information to site visitors. In this chapter, I focus on creating pages and adding text and image content to the pages of your site.

## ***Understanding Drupal Nodes***

Drupal has several types of content. In this chapter, I discuss two types: pages and stories. Each page or story you create for your Drupal site is stored as a structure called a *node*. Think of a node as a block of content, be it a page, story, or blog posting.



Don't confuse a Drupal page with a Web page. Drupal uses the word *page* to describe a block of content that doesn't allow comments and is largely static. And while you can view a page node as though it were a single Web page, you can do the same with a story node or any of the Drupal node types discussed in this book.

## Making basic pages

At this point, your site has a home page. Chances are you need additional content on your site for things such as contact information and information about your company or group. Drupal *pages* contain information you want on your site that:

- ✓ Is necessary to have available to visitors
- ✓ Doesn't need to be on the main page of your site
- ✓ Doesn't change very often

Examples of appropriate information for Drupal pages include directions to your office; contact information; background information about your company; Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs); legal terms and policies; and biographies of your management team.



Content on a Drupal page doesn't allow visitors to add comments. If you want to allow your site users to comment, you need to create a story instead of a page. I cover stories later in this chapter.

## Accessing content creation

To get to the content creation pages, you need to log in as the site administrator and click the Create content link (see Figure 5-1).

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Create content | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL in the address bar is <http://drupalfordummies.com/node/add>. The page title is 'Drupal For Dummies.com'. On the left, there's a sidebar with a user profile for 'Lynn Beighley' and links for 'My account', 'Create content' (which is expanded), 'Page', 'Story', 'Administer', and 'Log out'. Below the sidebar is a 'Drupal' logo. The main content area has a 'Home' link at the top. Under 'Create content', there are two sections: 'Page' and 'Story'. The 'Page' section contains text about what a page is and how it differs from a story. The 'Story' section contains text about what a story is and how it differs from a page. At the bottom of the page, there's a copyright notice: 'drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010'.

**Figure 5-1:**  
The Create  
content  
section of  
the adminis-  
trator site.

You see a menu allowing you to create a page or a story along with some text to help you understand the difference between a story and a page. The important differences between the two are:

- ✓ Stories allow user comments; pages do not.
- ✓ Stories appear on the home page of your site. Pages are created as unique pages on your site with their own URLs.
- ✓ Stories are best for content that changes over time, such as news. Pages are best for static content.

## *Adding a page*

You create a new page by clicking on the Page link under the Create content section. Follow these steps:

- 1. Log in to your site as administrator.**
- 2. Click the Create content link on the left.**
- 3. Click on the Page link.**

You see the Create Page form (see Figure 5-2).

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title 'Create Page | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL in the address bar is 'http://drupalfordummies.com/node/add/page'. The page content is as follows:

**Drupal For Dummies.com**

Lynn Beighley

- o My account
- ▼ Create content
  - o Page
  - o Story
- Administer
- o Log out

Drupal

Home > Create content

**Create Page**

Title: \*

Menu settings

Body:

Split summary at cursor

Input format

Revision Information

Comment settings

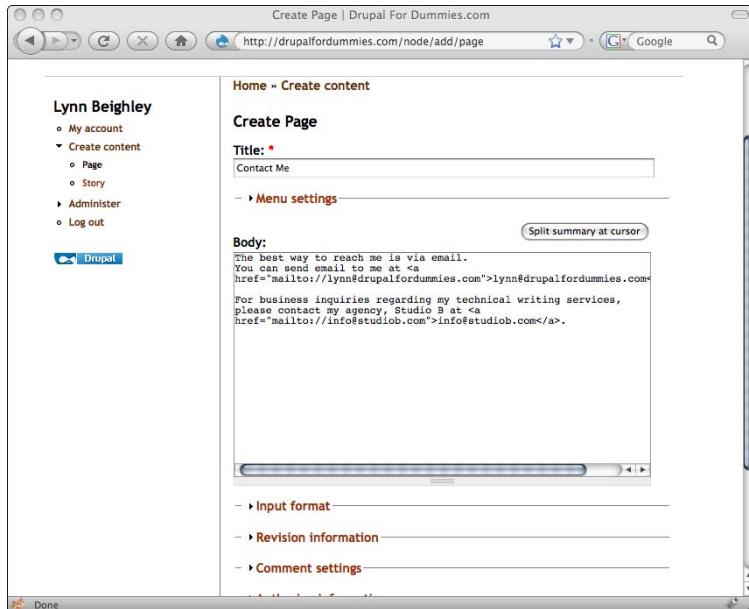
Authoring Information

Publishing options

**Figure 5-2:**  
Create Page  
form.

- 4. Enter the title of your page in the Title blank.**
- 5. Enter some sample content in the Body section of the form.**

Figure 5-3 shows sample content for a contact page.



The screenshot shows a web browser window titled 'Create Page | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL is 'http://drupalfordummies.com/node/add/page'. The page content area has the following fields filled out:

- Title:** \* Contact Me
- Body:**

```
The best way to reach me is via email.  
You can send email to me at <a href="mailto://lynne@drupalfordummies.com">lynne@drupalfordummies.com</a>  
For business inquiries regarding my technical writing services,  
please contact my agency, Studio B at <a href="mailto://info@studiolob.com">info@studiolob.com</a>.
```

On the left sidebar, under 'Lynn Beighley', the 'Create content' link is expanded, showing options: Page, Story, Menu settings, Input format, Revision information, and Comment settings. Other links include 'My account', 'Administer', and 'Log out'.

**Figure 5-3:**  
The Create  
Page form  
with the  
Title and  
Body fields  
filled out.

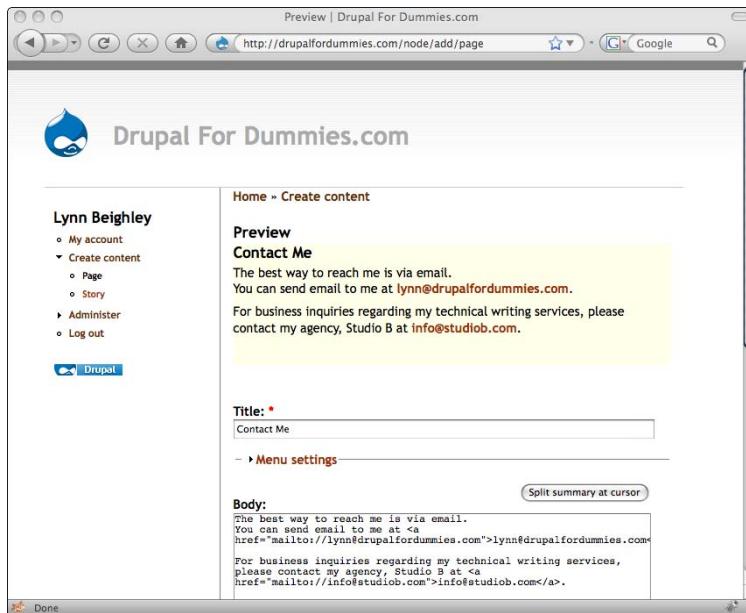


I've used some HTML code in my sample. This code turns my e-mail addresses into links on the page I'm creating. Don't let this throw you. You don't need to use HTML in your pages, but you can if you wish. I discuss this in more detail in Chapter 6.

- 6. Scroll to the bottom of the form and click Preview.** If you click Save, your page will be automatically published to the Web. Preview allows you to see what your page will look like before it is published.

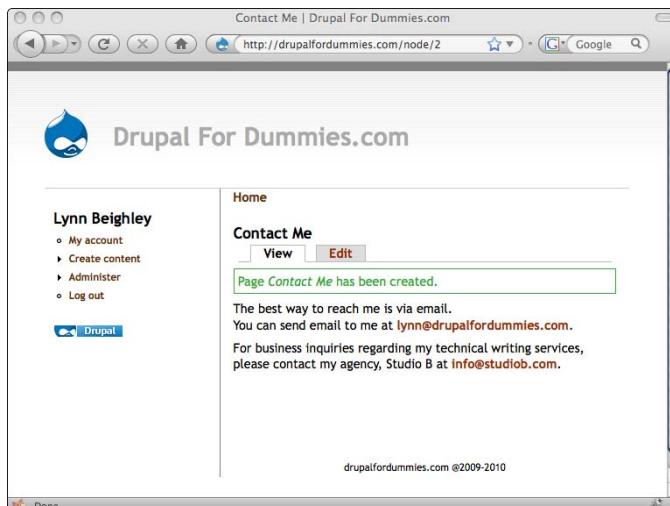
Figure 5-4 shows you a preview of the new page you created. If you wish to change anything, scroll down and make your changes in the Create Page form. The same two buttons, Save and Preview, are at the bottom of the page.

- 7. When you are happy with the content on your new page, click the Save button.**



**Figure 5-4:**  
The Create  
Page form  
with a  
preview of  
the page.

When you save your new page, you see your new page with a status message, “Page *Contact Me* has been created.” (See Figure 5-5.) The status message appears only once after you save your new page. You won’t see it again when you later visit the page, and your site visitors will never see it.



**Figure 5-5:**  
You see  
your new  
page with a  
status mes-  
sage after  
you save it.



The title you gave your page will appear near the top of your new page as well as part of the title bar at the top of the browser when the page is viewed.

## Editing a page

When you view a page you create, your page has an Edit tab (refer to Figure 5-5). Site visitors will not see this tab. It exists to allow you, the site administrator, to make changes to the content on your page. In the example I created, I left out a comma that I now want to add. I can go back and edit the page to fix this. To edit your page, follow these steps:

- 1. Log in to the site as the administrator.**
- 2. Click on Administer→Content Manager→Content.** You see a list of pages, including the home page and the new one you just created (see Figure 5-6).

The screenshot shows the Drupal Content management interface. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with items like 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administer' (expanded), 'Content management' (selected), 'Comments', 'Content types', 'Post settings', 'RSS publishing', 'Taxonomy', 'Site building', 'Site configuration', 'User management', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Log out'. The main content area has a heading 'Content' and a sub-heading 'Content management'. There are two filter boxes: 'Show only items where' (status is published) and 'Update options' (Publish). A table lists pages with columns: Title, Type, Author, Status, and Operations. The table contains three rows: 'Contact Me' (Page, Lynn Beighley, Published, edit), 'Welcome to DrupalForDummies.com Story' (Page, Lynn Beighley, Published, edit), and 'Story updated' (Page, Lynn Beighley, Published, edit). At the bottom, it says 'drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010'.

**Figure 5-6:**  
The Content management section with a listing of pages.



If you ever create a page and click the Preview button, but never click the Save button, you can get back to that page. Click on the drop-down menu next to the label *status* and choose *not published*. Then click the Filter button. You will see a list of any pages you have previewed but not saved.



- 3. Click on the edit link next to the page you wish to edit.** You will see the same form you used to create the page, but this version has two tabs: a View tab and the currently selected Edit tab (see Figure 5-7).

Only you, as the administrator, will see the Edit and View tabs. Site visitors will not see them.

Contact Me | Drupal For Dummies.com

http://drupalfordummies.com/node/2/edit?dest=

Drupal For Dummies.com

Lynn Beighley

- o My account
- ▶ Create content
- ▶ Administer
- o Log out

Drupal

Contact Me

**Edit**

Title: \* Contact Me

→ Menu settings

Body:

The best way to reach me is via email.  
You can send email to me at <a href="mailto://lynne@drupalfordummies.com">lynne@drupalfordumm...  
For business inquiries regarding my technical writing services, please contact me using Studio B, at <a href="mailto://info@studiotb.com">info@studiotb.com</a>.

Split summary at cursor

→ Input format

Done

**Figure 5-7:**  
Edit tab on  
your page.

- 4. Make your desired changes and choose Save or Preview until you are happy with your changes.**

## *Deleting a page*

Deleting a page is done from the same content management section shown in Figure 5-6. To delete a page, follow these steps:

1. Log in to the site as the administrator.
2. Click on Administer→Content Manager→Content. You see a list of pages, including the home page and the new one you just created (refer to Figure 5-6).
3. Click on the check box to the left of the title of the page you wish to delete (see Figure 5-8).

**Figure 5-8:**  
Click the  
check box  
next to the  
page you  
wish to  
delete.

The screenshot shows the Drupal administrative interface for content management. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with items like 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator', 'Content management', 'Comments', 'Content', 'Content types', 'Post settings', 'RSS publishing', 'Taxonomy', 'Site building', 'Site configuration', 'User management', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Log out'. The main content area is titled 'Content' and shows a table of pages. The table has columns for 'Title', 'Type', 'Author', 'Status', and 'Operations'. There are two rows: one for 'Contact Me' (Type: Page, Author: Lynn Beighley, Status: published) and another for 'Welcome to DrupalForDummies.com Story' (Type: Story, Author: Lynn Beighley, Status: published). In the 'Operations' column for 'Contact Me', there is a link labeled 'edit' with a pencil icon. A checkmark is present in the checkbox next to 'Contact Me'. Below the table, a message says 'drupalfordummies.com @2009-2010'.

- 4. Choose Delete from the Update options drop-down box and click the Update button.** You will be asked to confirm the deletion. Click the Delete all button to delete your page.



You can delete as many pages as you wish at the same time. You can click in the check boxes next to any pages you wish to delete at the same time.

## Accessing your page

If you go to the home page of your site, you won't see a link to your new page. Even though your page exists on the Web, your site doesn't give visitors a link to get to it.



Later in this chapter, you add a page to a site menu that will contain links to pages you create and will show up on every page of your site.

For now, you can get to your page by clicking on the page title on the Content page (refer to Figure 5-8).



To see how your page will look to visitors to your site, follow these steps:

- 1. Click the page title on the Content page.**
- 2. Copy the URL from the address bar in your browser.**

The URL will probably be like `http://drupalfordummies.com/node/2`.

- 3. Log out of the site and then browse to the URL you just copied.**

You will see the page as site visitors will see it.

## Telling a Story

I created a Drupal *story* in Chapter 3. This bit of content appears on the home page of my site by default. It also allows logged-in users to comment on it.



Even though a story can allow user comments, it doesn't necessarily have to. You may want your story to contain news from your company, but not be interested in user feedback on that news. Sometimes comments can clutter up a site and are better left for pages other than the home page.

You can have more than one story on the home page and turn off comments. Follow these steps:

- 1. Log in to your site as administrator.**
- 2. Click on Create Content>Story.**

The Create Story form appears (see Figure 5-9).



The Title field for a story behaves differently than the title field for a page. A page title is the actual title on a page and appears both at the top of the page and in the title bar of the viewer's browser. The title of a story appears directly above the story, but the page the story is on has its own title.

- 3. Add a title and body for your new story.**
- 4. Scroll down to the Comment settings link lower on this page. Click the Comment settings link to expand this section.**

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Create Story | Drupal For Dummies.com' at the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/node/add/story>. The page title is 'Drupal For Dummies.com'. On the left, there's a sidebar with a user menu for 'Lynn Beighley' (My account, Create content, Administer, Log out) and a 'Drupal' link. The main content area shows a 'Create Story' form. The 'Title:' field contains 'A work in progress'. Below it is a text area with the placeholder text: 'This site is still being developed, but will be live in 9/2009. If you sign up, your account will be activated when the site is complete. Thank you for your patience!'. There are collapsed sections for 'Input format', 'Revision information', and 'Authoring information'. A red box highlights the 'Comment settings' section, which contains three radio buttons: 'Disabled' (selected), 'Read only', and 'ReadWrite'. At the bottom of the form is a 'Done' button.

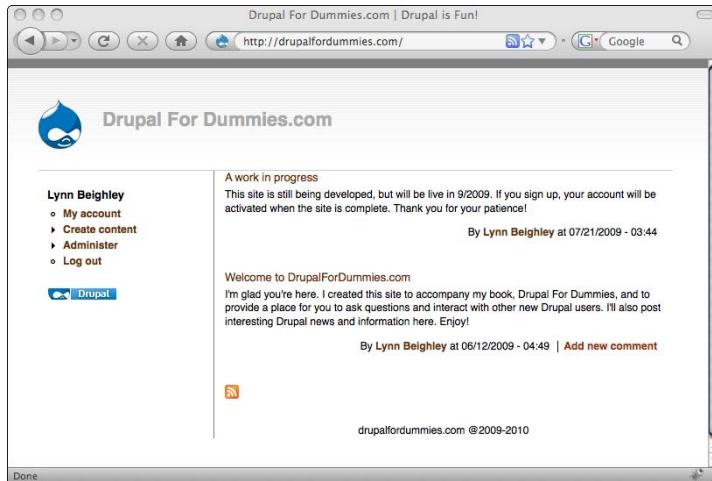
**Figure 5-9:**  
Create Story  
form.

**5. Select the Disabled radio button to turn off comments for this story.**



If you select the second option, Read Only, any comments that have been made will still be visible, but new comments will not be allowed. If comments already exist and you choose Disabled, none of the comments will show.

**6. Click the Save button at the bottom of this page to publish your new story.** Your new story will appear above any you created earlier and won't have a comment link (see Figure 5-10).



**Figure 5-10:**  
Home page  
with two  
published  
stories.

## *Editing and deleting stories*

You edit and delete stories exactly the same way as you edit and delete pages. Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the site as the administrator.
2. Click on Administer→Content Manager→Content.
  - To edit, click the edit link next to the story you want to edit.
  - To delete a story, click the check box next to the story you want to delete. Choose Delete from the Update options drop-down box and click the Update button.

## *Ordering your content*

The default behavior of a story is to show up on the home page. New stories are at the top; older ones move to the bottom of the home page. However,

say you create a story that you want always to appear at the top of the home page. You can accomplish this by setting the story as *sticky*. Follow these steps:

- 1. Log in to the site as the administrator.**
- 2. Click on Administer→Content Manager→Content.**
- 3. Click in the check box next to the story you want to always appear at the top of the page.**
- 4. Choose Make sticky from the drop-down box in the Update options section (see Figure 5-11). Click Update.**

Title	Type	Author	Status	Operations
Welcome to DrupalForDummies.com updated	Story	Lynn Beighley	published	edit
A work in progress updated	Story	Lynn Beighley	published	edit
Contact Me	Page	Lynn Beighley	published	edit

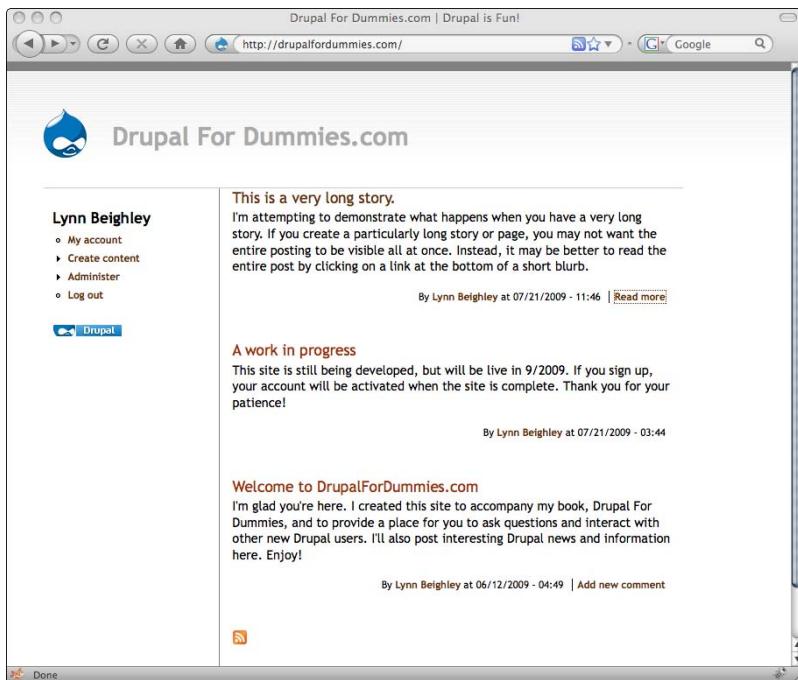
**Figure 5-11:**  
Setting a  
story as  
sticky.



If you no longer want your story to be sticky, unset this option by choosing Remove stickiness from the Update options drop-down box.

## Managing story length

If you create a particularly long story, Drupal automatically shortens it for you and provides a Read more link if users want to read the entire story. Instead of a long post taking up the entire screen, and users having to scroll down to see other content on the page, the first few sentences of the post are displayed. To see a shortened story, look at Figure 5-12.



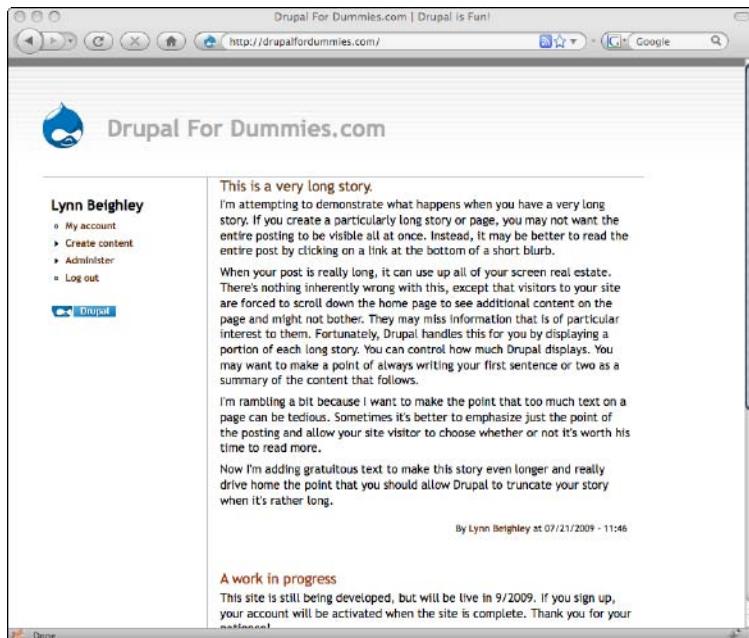
**Figure 5-12:**  
Truncated  
story post  
on the home  
page.

When your post is really long, it can use up all of your screen real estate. The first post on the home page is fairly long, but it doesn't bump down the other posts on the page. Figure 5-13 shows what this page would look like if the first post was not truncated.

There's nothing inherently wrong with having a long post, except that visitors to your site are forced to scroll down the page to see additional content and might not bother. Therefore, it may be better to truncate the visible part of your post by clicking after the first sentence or so and clicking the Split summary at cursor button.

You can control how many characters Drupal displays when it truncates your stories. Follow these steps:

- 1. Log in to the site as the administrator.**
- 2. Click on Administer→Content Manager→Post settings.** The Post settings form appears (see Figure 5-14).



**Figure 5-13:**  
Home page  
with long  
first story.

3. To change how many characters are displayed, change the value of the Length of trimmed posts drop-down and choose Save configuration.

The screenshot shows a web browser displaying the "Post settings" form for the Drupal For Dummies.com website. The title bar reads "Post settings | Drupal For Dummies.com" and the URL is "http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/content/node-settings". The main content area displays the "Post settings" configuration page. On the left is a sidebar with a user menu and links for "Content management", "Comments", "Content types", "Post settings" (which is selected), "RSS publishing", "Taxonomy", "Site building", "Site configuration", "User management", "Reports", "Help", and "Log out". The main content area has the following sections:

- Number of posts on main page:** A dropdown menu set to "10". A note below says: "The default maximum number of posts to display per page on overview pages such as the main page."
- Length of trimmed posts:** A dropdown menu set to "600 characters". A note below says: "The maximum number of characters used in the trimmed version of a post. Drupal will use this setting to determine at which offset long posts should be trimmed. The trimmed version of a post is typically used as a teaser when displaying the post on the main page, in XML feeds, etc. To disable teasers, set to 'Unlimited'. Note that this setting will only affect new or updated content and will not affect existing teasers."
- Preview post:** Radio buttons for "Optional" (selected) and "Required".
- Must users preview posts before submitting?** Radio buttons for "Save configuration" and "Reset to defaults".

At the bottom right is the URL "drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010".

**Figure 5-14:**  
Post  
settings  
form.

To force Drupal to display entire stories rather than truncate them, choose Unlimited.



When you change the Length of trimmed posts setting, it doesn't have any effect on stories that you have already published. However, anything published after you change this setting will reflect it. If you want old stories to be shortened to the new setting, you have to edit and save them in order for the new length setting to take affect.

The Post settings form also lets you control how many stories will be displayed on the main page. By default, 10 stories are displayed.

## *Setting Menu Options for a Page Node*

If you haven't created a page, now is a good time to do so. If you have, click on Administer→Content Manager→Content and click the edit link next to your page. Look back at Figure 5-2; you see a link, Menu settings, between the title and body fields of the form. Click this link to open the Menu settings form (see Figure 5-15).

The screenshot shows the Drupal administrative interface for editing a page node. The URL in the browser is <http://drupalfordummies.com/node/2/edit>. The page title is "Contact Me". On the left, there's a sidebar with user links for Lynn Beighley: My account, Create content, Administer, and Log out. Below that is the Drupal logo. The main content area has a breadcrumb trail: Home → Contact Me. Under "Contact Me", there are "View" and "Edit" buttons, with "Edit" being active. The "Title:" field contains "Contact Me". A "Menu settings" section is expanded, containing:

- Menu link title:** (empty input field)
- Parent item:** (dropdown menu set to "<Primary links>")  
A note: "The maximum depth for an item and all its children is fixed at 9. Some menu items may not be available as parents if selecting them would exceed this limit."
- Weight:** (input field with value "0")  
A note: "Optional. In the menu, the heavier items will sink and the lighter items will be positioned nearer the top."
- Body:** (text area with placeholder text: "The best way to reach me is via email. You can mail me at lynn.beighley@drupalfordummies.com")

**Figure 5-15:**  
Menu settings in page editing form.

These settings allow you to put a link to your page in a menu that will appear on every page of your site.

## *Giving your node a menu link title*

Your page already has a title. In my example, my page title is Contact Me. The Menu link title field is where you specify what text to use to link to your page. In my case, Contact Me is appropriate. Most of the time, your page title will be the perfect text to use as the link. It's possible, however, that your page title is too long to be a good link title, and this is how you can reword it to be more succinct.



Enter some sort of title in the Menu link title field. If you don't enter text here, your page will not have a link in the main site menu.

## *Choosing a parent item*

The menu you want to put your current page link in is called the *primary menu*. The primary menu appears on every page of the site. It isn't visible right now because it contains no links. When I add this link, it will appear just under the site header (see Figure 5-16). Your new link will appear in a menu after you complete this form and save your page.

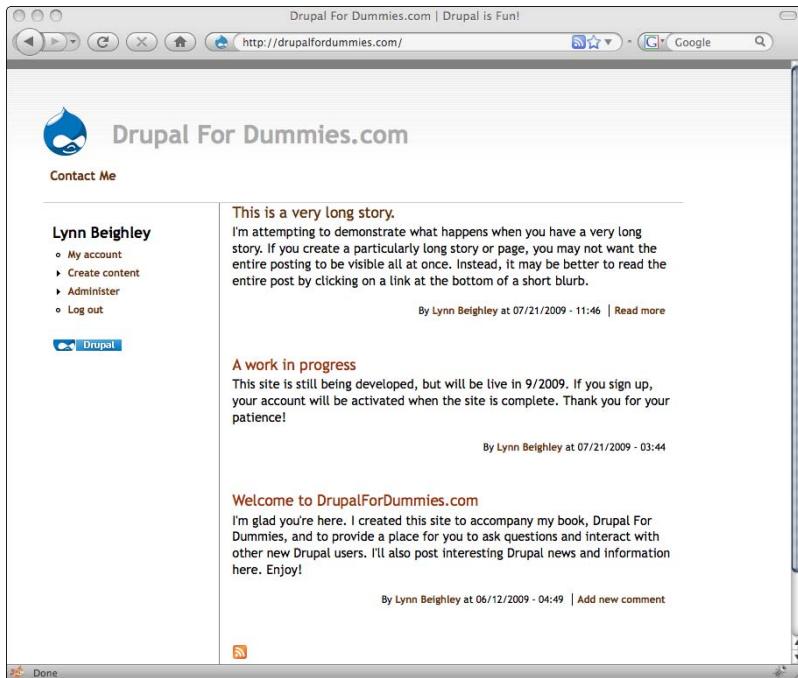
Choose the option <Primary links> from the Parent item drop-down menu. This puts your new link to your page in the primary menu.

## *Setting the link weight*

The weight setting controls where in the menu your link appears. If you choose -50 from this menu, your link will be at the top of the primary menu. Choosing 50 will make your link appear on the bottom of the menu. In my case, it makes sense to choose a higher number, or heavier weight, so my link will always be the last one in my primary menu.



When choosing a weight for your menu items, consider the big picture. Will your site have several primary links? Does it make sense to put the About Us link in front of the Contact Us link? Make a list of links and assign a weight to each before you actually create them. If you know you want Contact Us to always be the rightmost link, give it a weight of 50. If you know you want your Products link to always appear on the left, because people will see it first, give it a weight of -50.



**Figure 5-16:**  
The primary menu appears under the Drupal logo with a single link to the Contact Me page.

When you create or edit a story node, you also have a Menu settings section on the form. It works exactly the same way as it does for Drupal pages.

There are lots of additional options for managing the content you create, and I discuss them in Chapter 6.



# Chapter 6

---

# Managing Your Content

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Controlling HTML in your content
- ▶ Hiding content from logged-out visitors
- ▶ Managing comments
- ▶ Creating pages



Drupal offers you a number of options that allow you to customize the appearance of your content. This chapter shows you how to leverage Drupal's options to refine your content further. You see how to include HTML code, images, and even Flash movies in your posts. Also, I discuss the comment system and how to control the appearance and behavior of comments. I also show you how to temporarily hide posts while you continue to work on them and how to control who can see them when they are published. Along the way, I include information about a few other optional tweaks to the presentation of your content that Drupal gives you. There's a lot of good stuff in this chapter to help you fine-tune your nodes.



The tweaks and settings discussed in this chapter apply to both pages and stories. They also apply to other node types, including polls, blog posts, and forum posts I discuss in Chapter 9.

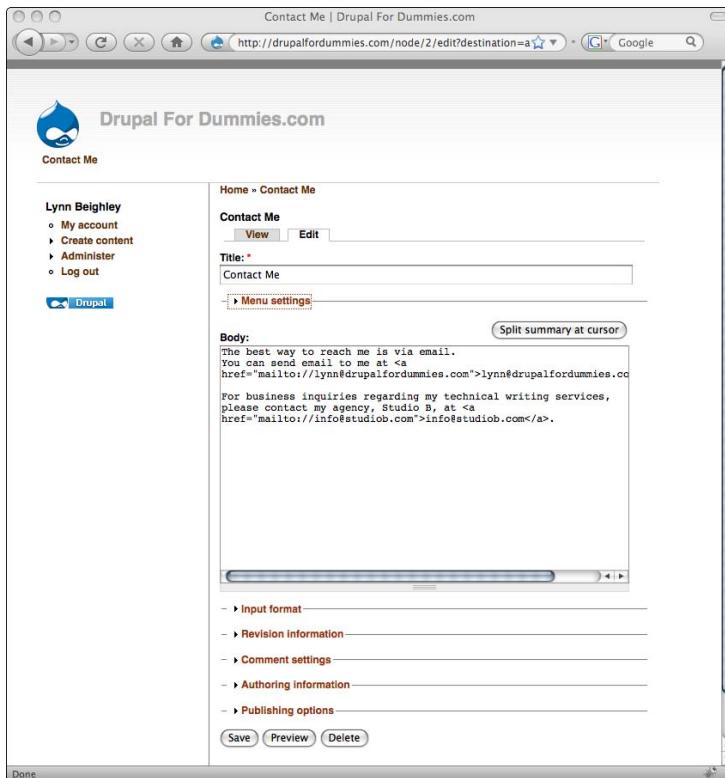
Most of the settings I discuss in this chapter are accessed from the form used to create or edit content. They are accessed by clicking on the links under the large Body text box (see Figure 6-1).



You get to the content editing form for any of your pages or stories by logging in as administrator and clicking on Administer→Content Management→Content. Locate the content you want to edit and click the appropriate edit link. The options I discuss in this chapter are also accessible when you first create content by selecting the Create content link and choosing Page or Story.

The links are Input format, Revision information, Comment settings, Authoring information, and Publishing options.

**Figure 6-1:**  
Content editing page with option links below the Body text box.



## Handling HTML Content

If you aren't familiar with HTML, you're in luck. You don't need to know how to code in HTML to create links with Drupal.

To see that you don't need to know HTML, consider the text in these two versions of the Contact Me page I created: one with HTML and one without.

### With HTML code:

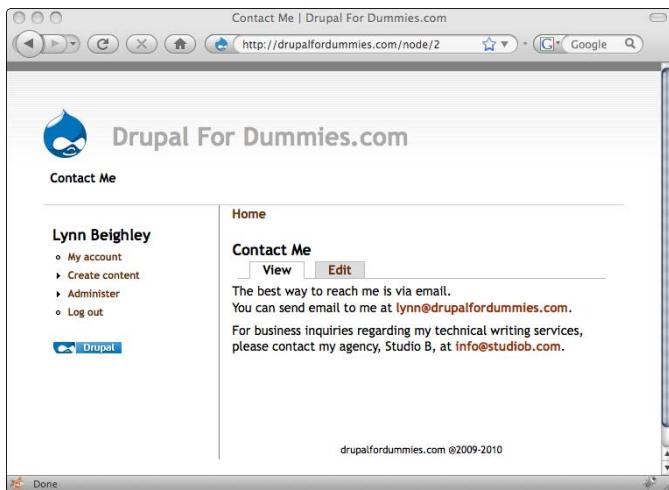
*The best way to reach me is via e-mail. You can send e-mail to me at <a href="mailto://lynn@drupalfordummies.com">lynn@drupalfordummies.com</a>. For business inquiries regarding my technical writing services, please contact my agency, Studio B, at <a href="mailto://info@studiorob.com">info@studiorob.com</a>.*

### Without HTML code:

*The best way to reach me is via e-mail. You can send e-mail to me at lynn@drupalfordummies.com. For business inquiries regarding my technical writing services, please contact my agency, Studio B, at info@studiorob.com.*

Both versions give you the same end result, linked e-mail addresses (see Figure 6-2). The first version, with HTML tags, is a little tricky to type and definitely not as easy to edit if, for example, my e-mail address were to change.

**Figure 6-2:**  
Hyperlinked  
e-mail  
address  
auto-  
matically  
created by  
Drupal.



Drupal does the dirty work for you. This also applies to Web addresses and URLs. To create an HTML link, you would ordinarily have to type:

```
<a href="http://drupalfordummies.com">http://drupalfordummies.com</a>
```

Instead, Drupal will automatically convert `http://drupalfordummies.com` into a link.



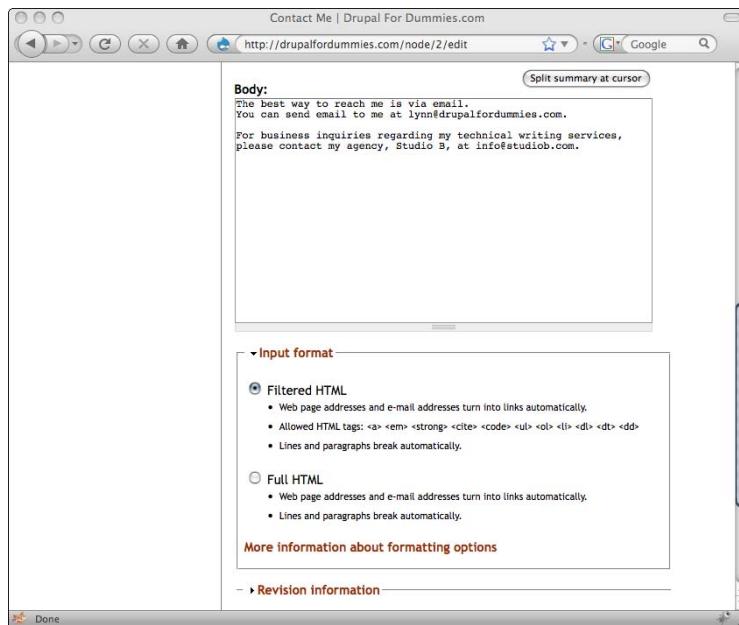
HTML requires tags to create paragraph and line breaks. Drupal handles this for you, behind the scenes, so you don't need to include `<P>` or `<BR>` tags in your content.

This automatic formatting takes some of the work out of your content creation. When you create or edit your content by typing text in the Body field of a page or story, it's very readable.

## Choosing an input format

If you know HTML, you can use it in your posts. Drupal offers you two choices: Filtered HTML or Full HTML. Choose from the Input format section when you create or edit content (see Figure 6-3).

**Figure 6-3:**  
The Input format settings available when you create or edit content.



By default, Filtered HTML is selected.

## Using filtered HTML

Filtered HTML allows you to use only certain tags, as listed in Table 6-1.

**Table 6-1** Tags Allowed by HTML Filtering

HTML tag	Function
<a>	Create a link from words in your text, like <a href="http://drupalfordummies.com">Drupal for Dummies</a>.
<em>	Italicize.
<cite>	Italicize.
<strong>	Boldface.
<code>	Display as computer code.
<ol>	Start an ordered (numbered) list of items.
<ul>	Start an unordered (bulleted) list of items.
<li>	Identify an item in a numbered or bulleted list.
<dl>	Start a definition list.

<i>HTML tag</i>	<i>Function</i>
<dt>	Define a term in a definition list.
<dd>	Create a definition in a definition list.

## Using full HTML

Unfiltered HTML allows you to use any HTML tag you wish. When you edit or create a page or story, you decide which to use.



Only choose the Unfiltered HTML option if you have to. If you ever give another user the ability to edit posts, as discussed later in this book, keeping your content filtered prevents inadvertent code mistakes or the inclusion of tags that give the content an appearance inconsistent with other content on your site.

Drupal ignores certain tags that are potentially dangerous, such as JavaScript PHP tags.

## Controlling Revision Information

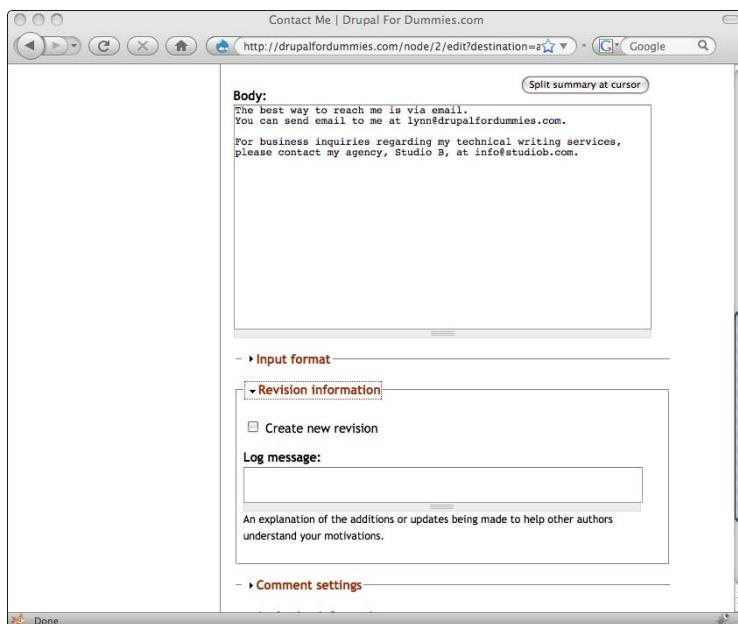
Things change. Maybe you made a mistake, leaving out some important bit of information. Maybe something new happened, making the current content inaccurate. Drupal allows you to revise your content and keep track of both

- ▀ ✓ The original version
- ▀ ✓ All revisions you make to it

To create a revision, follow these steps:

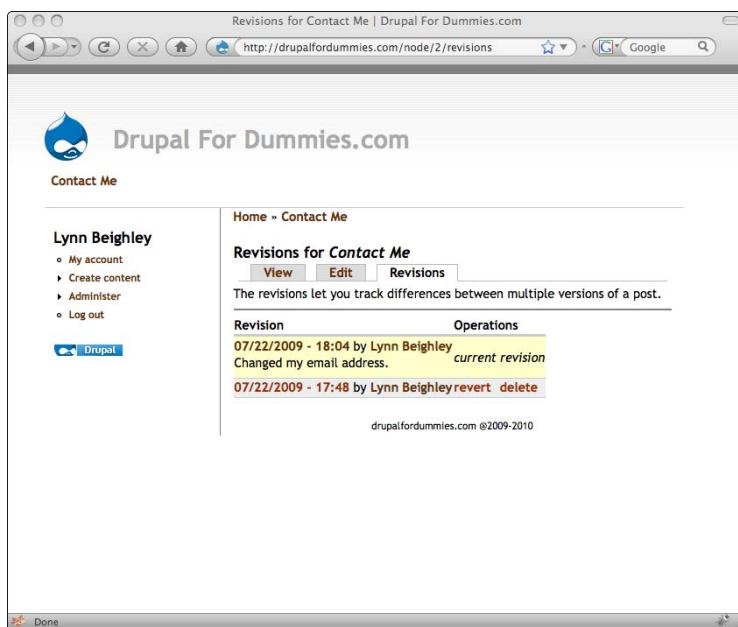
1. Log in to your site as administrator.
2. Click on Administer→Content management →Content.
3. Choose a page or story you created earlier and click edit.
4. Make a change in your content.
5. Scroll down to the Revision information link and click on it. (See Figure 6-4.)
6. Click the Create new revision check box and type something in the Log message box that explains changes you have made to the content. Click Save.

**Figure 6-4:**  
The Revision information settings available when you create or edit content.



Your revision has been saved, and you will now see a new Revisions tab that you can click to see all saved revisions (see Figure 6-5).

**Figure 6-5:**  
Revision history of content.



Next time you edit the content, you will see the current revision. If you wish to edit the current revision but not create a new revision, don't use the revision settings when editing. To go back to the original version, click on the revert link on the Revisions tab.



Revisions are great for keeping track of changes to the content:

- ✓ If you need to make a temporary change to content on your site but eventually want to go back to the original, you can create a revision and then click revert when you no longer need the latest change.
- ✓ When more than one person works on the same site, revisions can record when someone else changed something and why.

## Managing Comment Settings

You can allow users to submit their thoughts about your content by allowing comments. When you create or edit content, you control whether registered users can add comments by using the Comment settings (see Figure 6-6).

When you allow comments, a link appears at the end of your post. When comments are posted, a link to view the comments is visible, as shown in Figure 6-7.

The screenshot shows the Drupal content editor interface. The main area displays a long story with a summary at the bottom. Below the text, there are several expandable sections under the heading "Comment settings". The "Disabled" option is selected. At the bottom of the editor are "Save", "Preview", and "Delete" buttons.

**Body:**

I'm attempting to demonstrate what happens when you have a very long story. If you create a particularly long story or page, you may want the entire thing to be visible all at once. Instead, it may be better to read the entire post by clicking on a link at the bottom of a short blur.

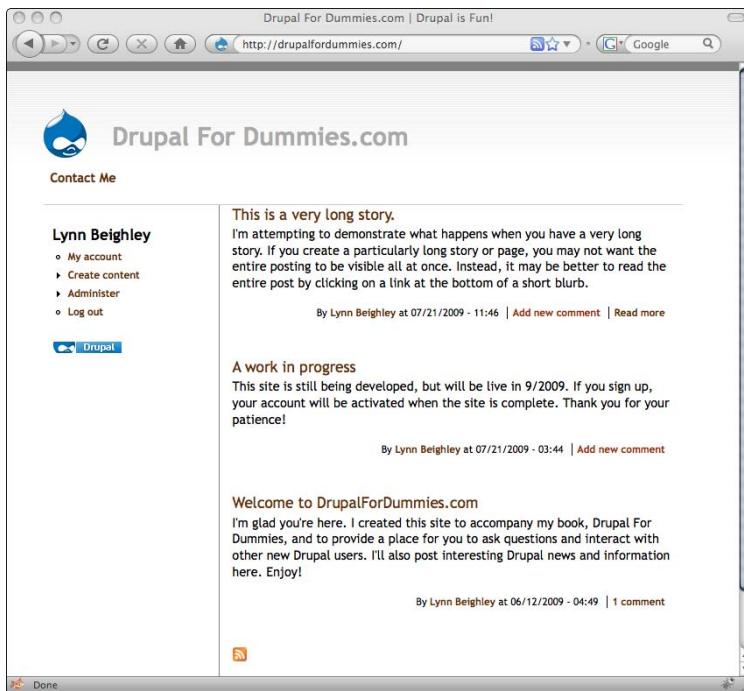
When your post is really long, it can use up all of your screen real estate. There's nothing inherently wrong with this, except that visitors to your site are forced to scroll down the home page to see additional content on the page and might not bother. That's where the "comment" section comes in handy. Fortunately, Drupal handles this for you by displaying a portion of each long story. You can control how much Drupal displays. You may want to make a point of always writing your first sentence or two as a summary of the content that follows.

I'm rambling a bit because I want to make the point that too much text on a page can be tedious. Sometimes it's better to emphasize just the point of the posting and allow your site visitor to choose whether or not it's worth his time to read more.

–> Input format  
–> Revision information  
–> **Comment settings**  
     Disabled  
     Read only  
     Read/Write  
–> Authoring information  
–> Publishing options  
Save Preview Delete

**Figure 6-6:**  
The Comment settings available when you create or edit content.

**Figure 6-7:**  
Posts with  
comments  
allowed and  
comment  
links.



To view comments on a post, click on the comment link or the title of the posting. This opens the story or page node in its own page with the comments visible and a link for users to add a new comment (see Figure 6-8).

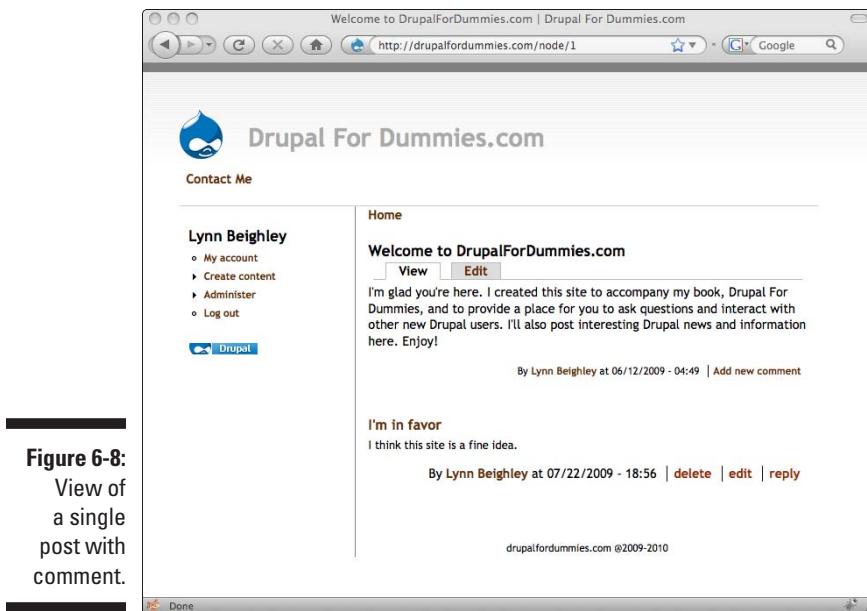
The user who posted the comment will see links to delete or edit the comment. Users can also reply to comments.

## Considerations of allowing comments

Every node you create (for example, each page and story) has the option of allowing users to comment. For some types of content, this doesn't make sense. My Contact Me page doesn't need to allow comments. But some content you create may be appropriate for allowing user comments.



A setting under User management → Permissions allows you to permit anonymous users (site visitors who are not logged in) to post comments. Do not allow anonymous users to post comments. You leave yourself open to spammers. It's best to allow only authenticated users (people who are logged in) to post comments.



**Figure 6-8:**  
View of  
a single  
post with  
comment.

## *Disabling comments*

If you disable comments for your post, no comments will be allowed. The link to Add new comment won't be present. If you edit a post and change the option from Read/Write to disabled, all the current comments will be hidden. They will not be deleted; they will show up again if you choose Read only or Read/Write.

This is the default setting for pages.

## *Allowing Read only comments*

The Read only setting removes the Add new comments link and the reply link. Existing comments are readable, but no new ones can be added. Users can't delete comments they have posted.

The Read only setting can be useful when new comments won't add any value to the discussion.

## *Permitting read/write comments*

This allows registered users to post comments and reply to other people's comments. Users can also delete or edit comments they have posted. This is the default setting for stories.



A primary difference between pages and stories is whether comments are permitted. Pages don't allow comments; stories do. The Comment settings are how that is controlled by default:

- ✓ When you create a page, comments are disabled.
- ✓ When you create a story, read/write comments are permitted.

## *Changing Authoring Information*

Every time you post a story, Drupal includes information about when the content was posted and who posted it. (Refer to Figure 6-7.) The poster's username (in this case, Lynn Beighley) appears, along with the time and date the story was posted.

By default, stories include this information and pages do not.

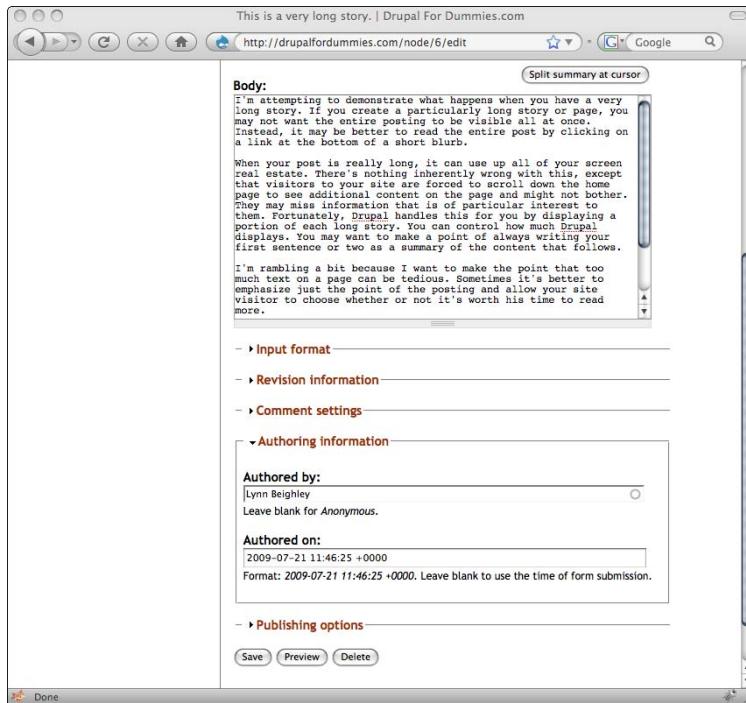
You can fine-tune your control over this with the Authoring information section when you create or edit your story (see Figure 6-9).

## *Modifying Authored by information*

By default, your username will appear here. You can change it or leave it blank if you don't want an author name to appear.

## *Modifying Authored on date*

This allows you to change the date of the posting. The date is in the format year-month-day hour:minutes:seconds. When you save your post, Drupal takes that date and reformats it to a date in a format like 07/21/2009 – 11:46.



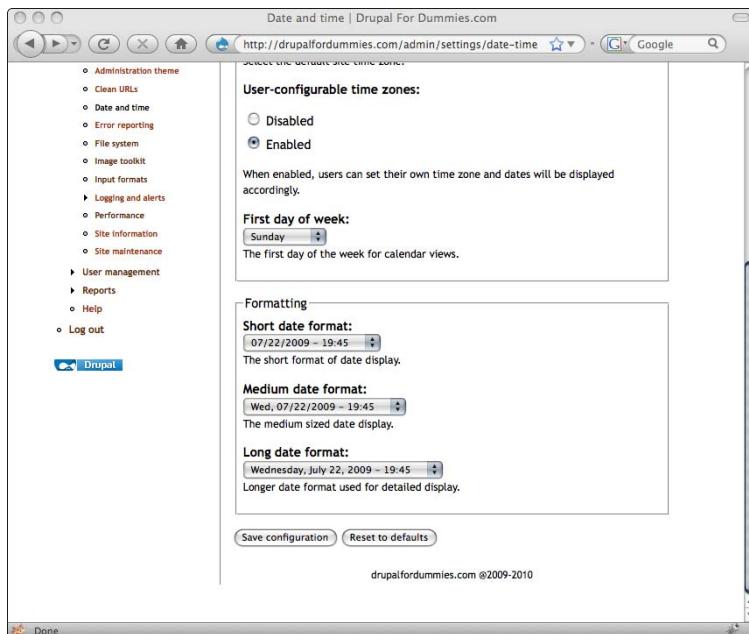
**Figure 6-9:**  
The  
Authoring  
information  
settings  
available  
when you  
create or  
edit content.

To change the format of this date, follow these steps:

1. **Logged in as administrator, click on Administer ➔ Site configuration ➔ Date and time.** The Date and Time configuration page appears (see Figure 6-10).
2. **Locate the Short date format, in the bottom half of the page. Click on the drop-down menu and select a new format.**  
This is the format used as the Authored on date.
3. **Click Save configuration.**

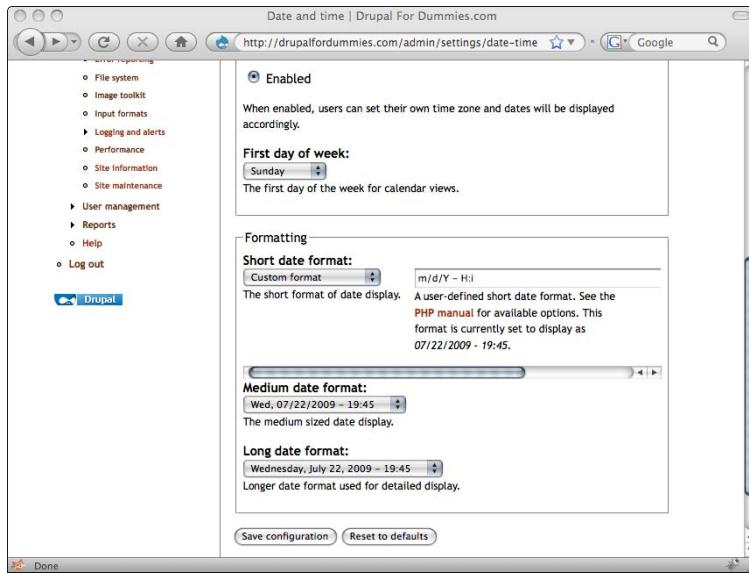
You can fine-tune the appearance even further by selecting Custom format from the list. This causes a text box to appear, where you can precisely customize the date (see Figure 6-11).

**Figure 6-10:**  
The date  
and time  
con-  
figuration  
formatting  
page.



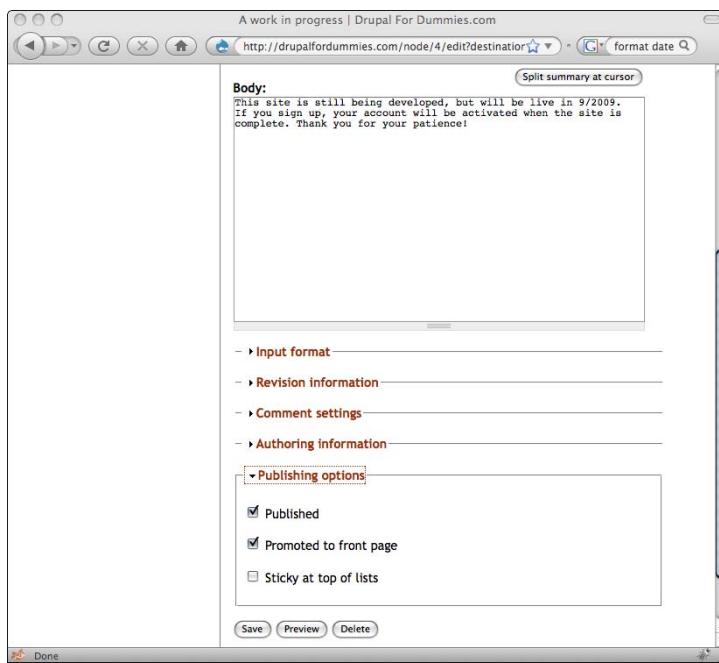
If you are determined to create a custom date format, I recommend visiting this page: [www.tizag.com/phpT/phpdate.php](http://www.tizag.com/phpT/phpdate.php). Scroll down to the heading “Reference” and use the information there to build your date.

**Figure 6-11:**  
The Custom  
format  
option of the  
Short date  
format.



## Publishing Options

When you write stories, they appear on the home page when you click Save (refer to Chapter 5). When they are published, pages and stories can be visited directly by anyone. But you don't have to automatically publish your content to the Web. You may want to write content but publish it at a later time. The Publishing options section lets you control what happens after you create content. This section is available when you create or edit your story (see Figure 6-12).



**Figure 6-12:**  
The Publishing options available when you create or edit content.

The options you select here control what happens when you click the Save button.

## Publishing

By default, for both pages and stories, the Published check box is selected. This means that your content will be made live on the Web when you click Save.

If you uncheck this box and click Save, your content is saved but not actually published. No one but you, logged in as administrator, will be able to see it. To access unpublished content, log in as administrator, and click on Administer→Content management→Content. You will see all of your content with the publishing status listed next to it. If it is unpublished, it will have a Status of *not published* (see Figure 6-13).

The screenshot shows the Drupal administrative interface for managing content. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with 'Lynn Beighley' at the top, followed by 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administer' (which is expanded to show 'Content management', 'Comments', 'Content', 'Content types', 'Post settings', 'RSS publishing', and 'Taxonomy'), 'Site building', 'Site configuration', 'User management', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Log out'. Below the sidebar is a 'Drupal' logo.

The main content area has a title 'Content' and a breadcrumb trail 'Home > Administer > Content management'. It includes a search bar with the placeholder 'Show only items where' and a dropdown menu set to 'status is published'. Below this is an 'Update options' section with a dropdown menu set to 'Publish' and a 'Update' button.

A table lists content items:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Type	Author	Status	Operations
<input type="checkbox"/>	Test Page 2 updated	Page	Lynn Beighley	published	<a href="#">edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	A work in progress	Story	Lynn Beighley	published	<a href="#">edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	This is a very long story.	Story	Lynn Beighley	published	<a href="#">edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Welcome to DrupalForDummies.com	Story	Lynn Beighley	published	<a href="#">edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Contact Me	Page	Lynn Beighley	published	<a href="#">edit</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Test page	Page	Lynn Beighley	published	<a href="#">edit</a>

**Figure 6-13:**  
The Content  
page lists  
the publica-  
tion status  
of all  
content.

To publish your content without any changes, click in the check box next to its title, choose Publish from the Update options drop-down menu, and click Update. To make changes to the content before publishing, click Edit, make your changes, under Publishing options click the Published check box, and click Save.

## Promoting to front page

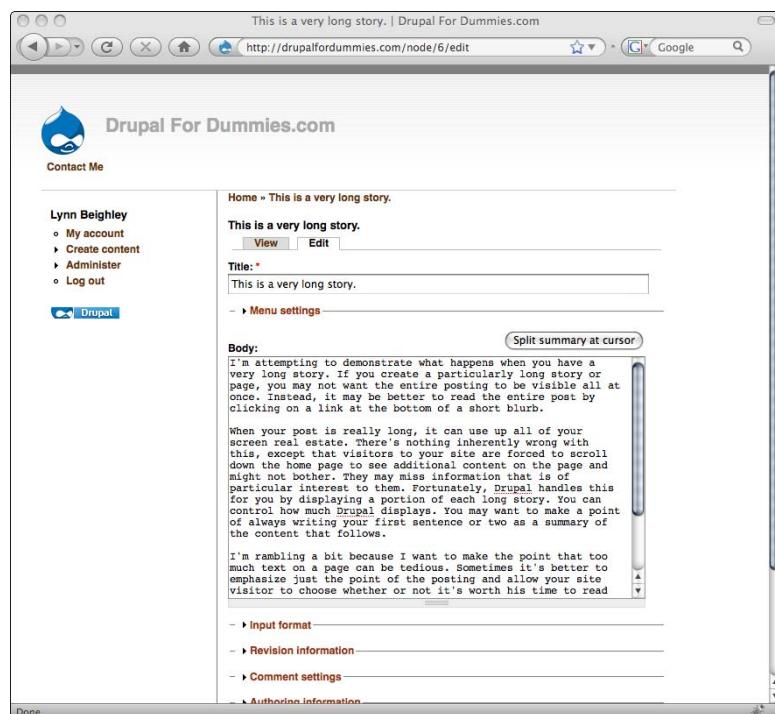
Stories appear on the home page by default; pages do not. But if you change the Promoted to front page check box, you can change this behavior regardless of node type.

## Making content sticky in lists

When you create a new story and post it to the home page, it ends up as the one on top. Stories are ordered from newest to oldest. Chapter 5 explains how to use the Content page to set a story as sticky, so that it always appears at the top of the home page even when newer stories are published. This check box accomplishes the same thing as modifying the stickiness in the Content page.

## Splitting your content

The Split summary at cursor button lets you specify precisely where to break your post to create a blurb. It's located just above the Body text box (see Figure 6-14).



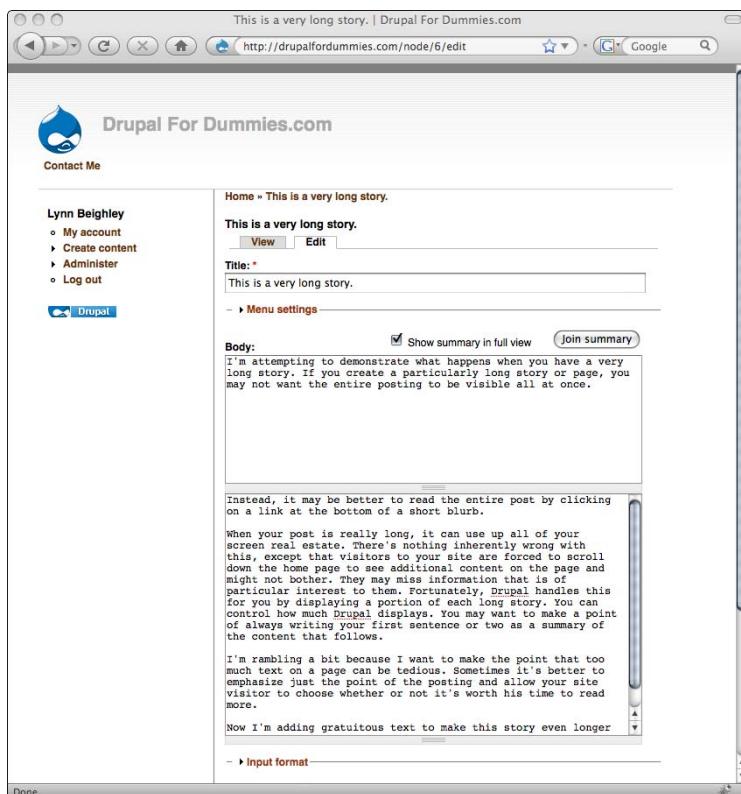
**Figure 6-14:**  
The Split  
summary at  
cursor  
button.



This button overrides the Length of trimmed post setting that's covered in Chapter 5.

To use the Split summary at cursor button, follow these steps:

- 1. As administrator, open a story you have posted to the home page in edit mode.**
- 2. Inside the Body text block, locate a good spot to trim your content.**  
Generally, this will be after the first or second sentence.
- 3. Move your cursor to this spot and click.**
- 4. Without clicking anywhere else on the page, move your mouse to the Split summary at cursor button and click it.** Your page changes to show your Body text now split into two fields (see Figure 6-15).



**Figure 6-15:**  
The body content is split in two after you click Split summary at cursor.

5. **Save your content.** Your home page now reflects the new blurb length.



If you edit an existing posting and use the Split summary at cursor option, make sure you click Save to republish your content. You may have to reload the home page to see the changes.



Depending on your content, you may want to write a specific blurb to show up on the home page. You can create a summary of your content in the top box and keep all your content together in the bottom box. If you uncheck the Show summary in full view check box, the summary blurb will only show up in the shortened home page version, and only the larger content will appear when someone chooses to view the entire content.

If you decide later that you don't want to split your content, you can rejoin it by clicking the Join summary button.



When you rejoin your content, you may end up with an extra line feed or carriage return at the spot where you originally split your content. Just remove the space and click Save.

## Adding Images

You may be eager to include images in your pages. This section involves a bit of HTML coding, but the code is fairly easy to follow and generally is only a line or so. The rest of this chapter shows you how to add images to your pages with HTML code.



If you don't want to use HTML code, you can add images and other media with Drupal *modules*. Modules are extensions to Drupal that make it easy to do various things. Chapter 13 shows you how.

If you are going to use HTML code, make sure you select the Full HTML option under the Input format section of your content option (discussed in the "Handling HTML Content" section, earlier in this chapter). Otherwise, your content will ignore some of the code you place in your content.



### Image hosting

Before you can add an image to your content, it needs to be on your Web server. Your Web hosting company should have a simple way for you to upload images to your Web server.

Chapter 2 discusses how to get files on your Web server using a file manager application on your hosting company's Web site.

I will use an image from my site for this example. If you want to test with my image, feel free, but please delete the story or page with the image when you are finished testing!

You should only use images that you have put on your own Web server. When you use an image that is on someone else's Web server, it's like watering your lawn with your neighbor's hose connected to his faucet. He has to pay for what you are using for your own purposes.

To add an image to your content using HTML, follow these steps:

1. As administrator, create a new story by selecting **Create content** > **Story**.
2. Enter a title such as *Posting an Image*.
3. In the Body section, enter the following code (see Figure 6-16):

```

```



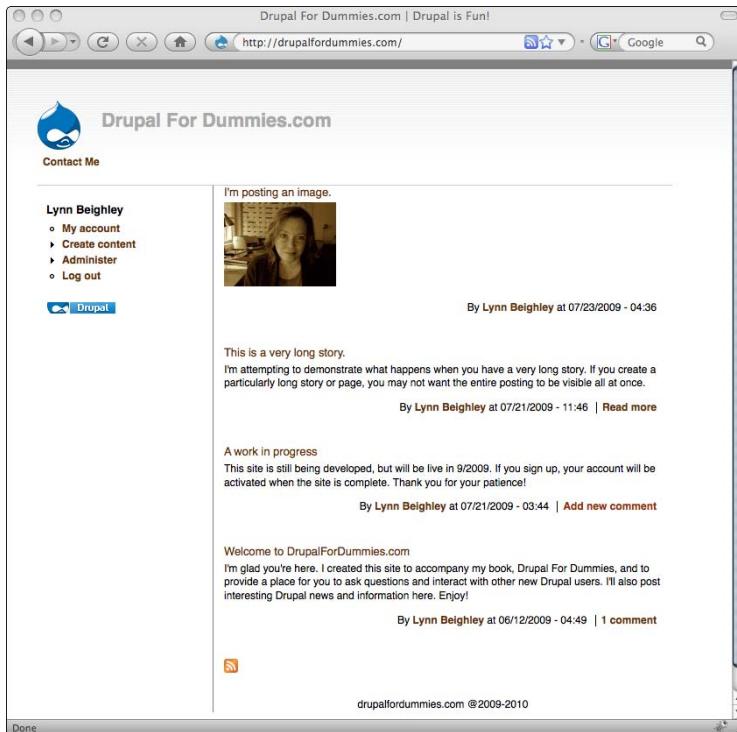
4. Click on Input format and select the Full HTML option.

Without Full HTML selected, Drupal will ignore the HTML code.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Story' page on the 'Drupal For Dummies.com' website. The left sidebar shows the user 'Lynn Beighley' and navigation links for 'My account', 'Create content' (selected), 'Page', 'Story', 'Administrator', and 'Log out'. The main content area has a title 'I'm posting an image.' and a body containing the HTML code ''. Below the body is a 'Split summary at cursor' button. At the bottom, there is an 'Input format' section with two options: 'Filtered HTML' (unchecked) and 'Full HTML' (checked). The 'Full HTML' option includes a note: 'Web page addresses and e-mail addresses turn into links automatically.' and 'Lines and paragraphs break automatically.' There are also links for 'More information about formatting options', 'Revision information', 'Comment settings', 'Authoring information', and 'Publishing options'. At the very bottom are 'Save' and 'Preview' buttons.

**Figure 6-16:**  
Adding an  
image to a  
story with  
HTML.

- 5. Click Preview to see the image in your content, then click Save to view it on your home page.** Figure 6-17 shows the image on the home page.



**Figure 6-17:**  
Homepage  
with a story  
containing  
an HTML  
coded  
image.

The HTML code you used is known as an image tag. Here's the syntax again:

```

```

This code consists of an open and close angle bracket containing:

- ✓ The code word *img*, which stands for image and tells the Web browser to display an image.
- ✓ The code word *src*, which stands for the word source and tells the Web browser that the image location or URL follows the equal sign.
- ✓ The Web address or URL of an image in quotes.



You aren't confined to posting a single image in a story with no text. You can add text above or below the image tag, but make sure to place a carriage return or two between your text and the image. Otherwise, the text runs into the edge of the image and can be difficult to read.



## Chapter 7

---

# Changing Themes

---

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Getting new themes
  - ▶ Changing themes
  - ▶ Configuring themes
- 

**I**n Drupal, the look and layout of the site is dependent on a set of files collectively called a *theme*. A Drupal theme is a bit like a skin or a Windows desktop theme. In Drupal, a theme controls the appearance of the fonts, how many columns are displayed, background colors, and the appearance of logos, buttons, and menu items.

When you first install Drupal, it is using a theme named Garland. While it's a perfectly nice theme, you aren't obligated to continue using it. Not only is it good to know how to change themes, but it's also fun to see your site change appearance with just the click of a button. In this chapter, you see how to change from the default theme to others of the preinstalled themes. I show you where you can preview and download even more themes. You find out how to quickly swap between themes while you are developing your site. Finally, you discover how to configure your theme.

## *Changing Themes*

Getting and changing your Drupal theme is one of the simplest administration tasks in Drupal. Preinstalled themes can be enabled to change the look of your site by changing a simple administrative setting.

## The default theme

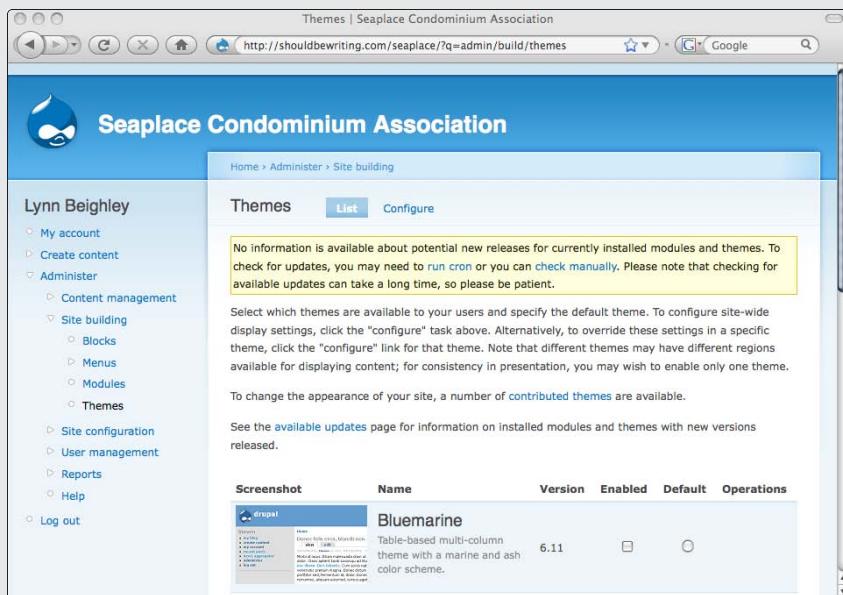
By default, Drupal uses the Garland theme. Take a moment to look at it. Every page on your site uses it.

The Garland theme has two columns:

- ✓ The left column contains a form for logging in and user specific site navigation.
- ✓ The larger right column contains all the site content.

When you aren't logged in to the site, the login form appears in the left column.

When you are logged in as the administrator, you see the administration links.



## Enabling a theme

Before you can use a theme, you must enable it. Enabling it means that you can easily turn it on whenever you want to use it.

In addition to the default theme, Garland, Drupal provides you with a number of preinstalled themes. They are installed but not enabled.

To enable and view the other preinstalled themes, follow these steps:

- 1. If you aren't logged in, log in to your site with your administrator username and password.**
- 2. In the left column, click on Administer→Site Building→Themes.**  
You see a list of themes with thumbnail views.
- 3. Select the Enabled check box next to each theme in the list.**  
Garland already has the Enabled box checked.
- 4. Select the radio button under Default next to one of the themes.**  
For example, if you select the Chameleon theme (the second on the list), your site looks something like Figure 7-1.
- 5. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click the Save Configuration button.**

You now see your site with the new default theme you selected.



**Figure 7-1:**  
Your site  
with the  
Chameleon  
theme  
enabled  
and set as  
default.

The screenshot shows the Drupal admin interface at <http://shouldbewriting.com/seaplace/?q=admin/build/themes>. The left sidebar shows the user Lynn Beighley and a navigation menu with links like My account, Create content, Administer, Content management, Site building, Site configuration, User management, Reports, Help, and Log out. The main content area is titled "Themes" and has tabs for "List" and "Configure". A success message says "The configuration options have been saved." Below it, instructions explain how to select themes and configure them. A table lists themes, with "Bluemarine" highlighted as the default. The table columns are Screenshot, Name, Version, Enabled, Default, and Operations.

Screenshot	Name	Version	Enabled	Default	Operations	
	Bluemarine	Table-based multi-column theme with a	6.11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">configure</a>



Enabling a theme doesn't make it the active or current theme. Themes have to be *both*

- ✓ Enabled (the check box)
- ✓ Selected as default (the radio button under the Default column on the right)

## *Changing enabled themes*

There are two ways themes on your site can be changed. The first is through the administrator interface. The second involves configuring Drupal to allow users to select from a list of enabled themes.

### *Changing the theme as administrator*

While logged in as an administrator, you can change the current theme by following these steps:

1. Navigate to the Site Building section under Themes.
2. Select the radio button under Default.
3. Press the Save Configuration button.

### *Letting your user set his theme*

You can allow any registered, or even unregistered, visitors to your site to select the enabled theme they wish.



Although giving your users the ability to change the site theme has its uses, in general you want them to see only the theme you have customized for your site. This feature is more useful for you to use as you test your site design. To turn this option on, follow these steps:

1. Log in to your site with your administrator username and password.
  2. In the left column, click on Administer→User Management→Permissions.
- You are presented with a list of options (see Figure 7-2).
3. Scroll down to the bottom of the page and locate the heading **system module**. Select the check box to the right of **select different theme** and press the Save permissions button.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title 'Permissions | Seaplace Condominium Association'. The URL is http://shouldbewriting.com/seaplace/?q=admin/user/permissions. The page displays a table of permissions for 'anonymous user' and 'authenticated user'. The table is organized into sections: 'Content module', 'System module', 'Taxonomy module', and 'User module'. Under each section, there are several permissions listed with checkboxes for both user types. A 'Save permissions' button is located at the bottom right of the table.

Permission	anonymous user	authenticated user
edit any story content	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
edit own page content	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
edit own story content	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
revert revisions	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
view revisions	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>system module</b>		
access administration pages	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
access site reports	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
administer actions	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
administer files	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
administer site configuration	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
select different theme	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>taxonomy module</b>		
administer taxonomy	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>user module</b>		
access user profiles	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
administer permissions	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
administer users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
change own username	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Figure 7-2:**  
User Management Permissions.

By selecting that check box, you have now made a Theme selection option appear on every authenticated user's Edit page. To access it, follow these steps:

1. Log in to your Drupal site with a non-administrator account.
2. In the left column, choose My Account.
3. On the right column, click the Edit tab. Scroll down on this page.

You see the Theme Configuration section (see Figure 7-3). This is a list of all of the themes you enabled. Your signed-in users can select any of these.

4. Click on one of the Selected radio buttons to the right of the theme of your choice (see Figure 7-4). Then click the Save button at the bottom of the page.

This changes the active theme for just the user account you are currently logged in as.

By choosing a theme, your registered user always sees that theme when he visits your site. This theme selection overrides the default theme for the site.

**Figure 7-3:**  
User theme  
editing  
options.

## Setting an administration theme

While the theme you set as default is the active theme for the entire site, you can also set a different theme that appears only on the site administration pages when you are logged in as an administrator. This allows you to tinker with the site theme and layout and have the capability to reset the site theme should something go horribly wrong with the design.

To set a different theme for the site administrator pages, follow these steps:

- 1. Log in to your site with your administrator username and password.**
- 2. In the left column, click on Administer → Site configuration → Administration theme.**
- 3. Choose your preferred theme from the drop-down list.**

You can also enable this theme when you post or edit content by selecting the check box next to *Use administration theme for content editing*.

- 4. Click the Save Configuration button.**

You now have a theme selected that only appears when you are logged in as the site administrator.

# Configuring Themes

Themes have settings associated with them. You can change settings for all themes or manage individual themes. A custom theme may have special settings that only apply to it. The rest of this chapter shows you the general or global theme settings and common settings for individual themes.

## Global theme settings

To get to the page with the global theme settings, log in as administrator and click Administer ➤ Site Building ➤ Themes. Locate and click the tab in the right column that says Configure (see Figure 7-4). Notice the list of themes, as well as the words Global Settings. These are all the currently enabled themes. Click on Global settings.

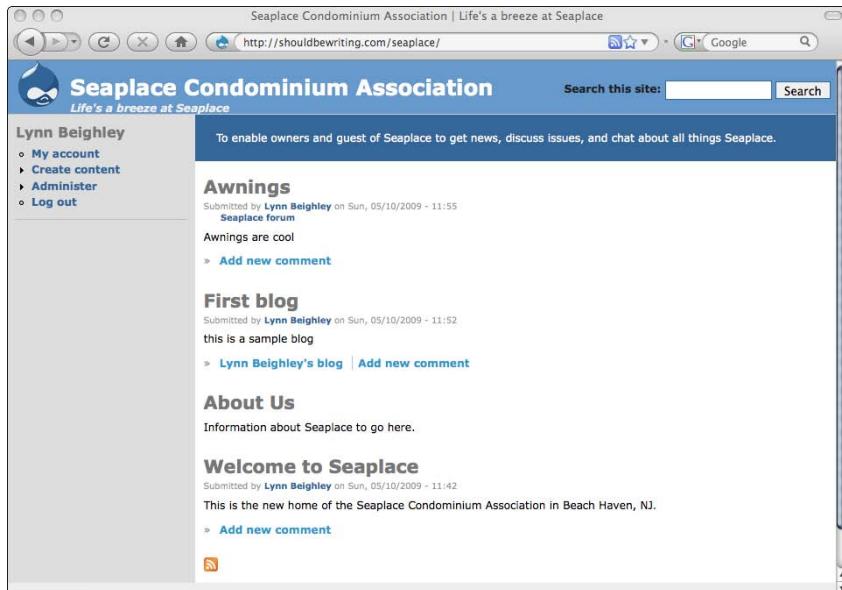


Figure 7-4:  
Global set-  
tings for  
themes.

The theme settings let you choose

- ✓ Elements that appear on the site
- ✓ User information that appears in various content sections



- ✓ Whether the default Drupal logo appears  
You can select an alternative logo here.
- ✓ A “favicon,” that small shortcut icon that appears in the URL address bar in users’ browsers when they visit your site.  
The default favicon is a tiny Drupal logo.

## *Toggle display settings*

Of all the settings you can control, by far the most powerful are the appearance or absence of the elements. Here’s what they do:

- ✓ **Logo:** Simply enough, this check box controls whether your site has a logo. By default, it is the Drupal logo, unless you specify another one in the logo image settings section farther down on this page.
- ✓ **Site name:** Check this if you want the site name to appear. In Figure 7-4, the site name is shown as *Seaplace Condominium Association*.  
To set your site name, log in as administrator and click on Administer→Site configuration→Site information. Whatever you type in the *Name* field appears as the site name.
- ✓ **Site slogan:** Also set on the site information page, this is an optional field that shows up on all pages of your site, typically under the site name, depending on the theme.
- ✓ **Mission statement:** Just under site slogan on the site information page, this is another optional field. Unlike Site slogan, some of the preinstalled themes don’t display this field at all, even when it’s checked on the Global settings.
- ✓ **User pictures in posts:** This controls whether the picture of the user who made a post appears in that post.
- ✓ **User pictures in comments:** If selected, the picture of each user appears next to any comments he makes. Both this setting and the preceding one depend on whether you have allowed users to have picture support.
- ✓ **Search box:** This displays a Search box that allows users to search through all the content on your site. It is disabled by default. To make the box functional, you need to turn on the Search module under Administer→Site building→Modules. Locate it in the Core modules list.
- ✓ **Shortcut Icon:** This check box controls whether visitors see a favicon in the address bar. By default, it is the Drupal logo, unless you specify another one in the shortcut icon settings section farther down on this page.

- ✓ **Primary Links:** Unchecking this causes your primary links to be hidden from the user. In general, you always leave this checked.
- ✓ **Secondary Links:** This is also one you typically leave checked. Unchecked, the secondary links don't appear.

## Logo image settings

Just under the Toggle display section are the logo image settings. To use the logo that comes with the default theme you are using, just leave the check box selected.



If you want to use your own logo, uncheck the box, then either

- ✓ Type a URL for your logo image in the *Path to custom logo* text box (for example, `http://yourwebsite.com/images/yourlogo.jpg`).
- ✓ Click the Browse button next to the *Upload logo image* text box to locate the file on your local machine. This uploads the logo to the Web server where Drupal is located.



When you use a URL or path to your logo, you may not have control over that image. If, for example, you are using an image from a Web server you don't control, the owner can choose to delete that image at any time, leaving your site logo-less, and worse, with a broken image. If, however, the logo resides on the same Web server as your Drupal software, there's generally no reason why you shouldn't use a URL path.

## Shortcut icon settings

Shortcut icons, also known as favicons, aren't the same as image files you may be familiar with. They are a specific type of image file that uses an `.ico` extension.

To create a shortcut or favicon, you need a special image editor. Most major image creation programs don't offer support for this file type.

If you have a favicon, these settings work the same way as the logo image settings described earlier. Uncheck the box and either enter a path to your favicon or upload it.



If you don't have an icon and don't wish to use the Drupal logo as your shortcut icon, uncheck the box. They aren't as popular as they once were, and many sites don't bother to use them at all.

## Reset to defaults

Many administration pages have this wonderful button: Reset to defaults. As you first learn how to use Drupal, you may find yourself needing to back out of changes you made. The Reset to defaults button does just that, restoring the settings on the current page to the default settings Drupal uses when you first install it.



If you are happy with the changes you've made to the page, press Save configuration to see them. If you don't like them, you can reset to default settings.

## Specific theme settings

If you aren't still on the global settings page, return there by clicking Administer→Site Building→Themes, and then click the tab in the right column that says Configure. Notice the other enabled themes listed after the *Global settings* link. Take a moment to click on these and notice the settings you can control.

When you are on one of these theme-specific settings pages, you can control those options for just that theme. For example, if you click on Bluemarine and deselect the Primary links check box, the primary links don't show up when Bluemarine is the default theme.



If you let users override the default theme, they see their chosen theme as you configure it here. Even if Bluemarine is not the default, for example, but they choose it, they see the Bluemarine theme, complete with your configuration settings for Bluemarine.

## Chapter 8

# Building Blocks and Managing Menus

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding regions
- ▶ Using blocks
- ▶ Creating and administering menus

**T**hemes are customizable. A theme can be modified, for example, to put the primary menu on the left side of the Web page rather than across the top. In this chapter, I extend the discussion of themes and take a closer look at how they can be manipulated from their default appearances.

I also discuss menus in more detail. In this chapter, I look at secondary menus and custom menus. (Chapter 5 covers primary menus.) Finally, I discuss creating a dynamic menu that changes when you post new content.

## *Understanding Blocks, Regions, and Menus*

You need to understand three Drupal terms before diving in to this chapter: menus, blocks, and regions.

- ✓ **Menu:** You probably have a pretty good idea of what a menu is. It's a set of links to Web pages. In Drupal, that basically describes a menu, but links can also point to Drupal nodes, such as stories and pages. When a link to a story or page node is clicked on from a menu, a Web page opens with the story or page node content presented as though it were an actual Web page.
- ✓ **Block:** A block is a container that holds a chunk of code. The menu you see on the left is in a single block. Drupal organizes menus and other



chunks of code into blocks. This makes it easier to move them around as you redesign the look of your site.

✓ **Region:** A region is a location on your Web page. For example, the Header region is located at the top of all your site pages. It usually contains a logo and the title of your site.

Think of it this way — menus are stored in blocks. Blocks are placed into specific regions on your Web site.

## Using Regions

To see where regions are located, look at Figure 8-1. Look for the words Header, Left sidebar, and Right sidebar. These are regions.

The regions your site has depend on which theme you use. Figure 8-1 is using the Garland theme. In the Garland theme, a Header region is at the very top of each page of your Drupal site. The Left sidebar region is on the left and contains the administrative menu functions and the login. The Right sidebar is empty.

Block	Region	Operations
Left sidebar	Left sidebar	<input type="button" value="configure"/>
	Left sidebar	<input type="button" value="configure"/>
	Right sidebar	
	Content	
	Header	
	Footer	

**Figure 8-1:**  
Header,  
Left, and  
Right  
sidebar  
regions of  
the Garland  
theme.

The Garland theme has two more regions (the Content region and the Footer region) visible when you scroll to the bottom of the Web page shown in Figure 8-1 (see Figure 8-2).

The Content region is where stories and pages appear. The Footer contains a default Drupal logo and any other footer content you add.



In Chapter 3, I configured the Site configuration→Site information page. The *Drupal For Dummies.com* name I set in the Site information page appears in the Header region in Figure 8-2.

Block	Region	Operations
Powered by Drupal	Footer	<a href="#">configure</a>
<b>Disabled</b>		
Primary links	<none>	<a href="#">configure</a>
Recent comments	<none>	<a href="#">configure</a>
Secondary links	<none>	<a href="#">configure</a>
Syndicate	<none>	<a href="#">configure</a>
Who's new	<none>	<a href="#">configure</a>
Who's online	<none>	<a href="#">configure</a>

[Save blocks](#)

Content

drupalfordummies.com @2009-2010

Drupal

Footer

**Figure 8-2:**  
Content  
and Footer  
regions of  
the Garland  
theme.

## Understanding how themes work with regions

The Garland theme has five regions: Header, Footer, Content, Left sidebar, and Right sidebar. Not all themes have the same regions. The theme I have been using so far in this book for most of the figures is the Chameleon. It only has two regions: the Left and Right sidebars. Figure 8-3 shows the two regions of the Chameleon theme.

**Figure 8-3:**  
The Chameleon theme has two regions: Left and Right sidebar.

The screenshot shows the Drupal admin interface at <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/block>. The left sidebar menu is open, showing the 'Chameleon' theme selected. The main content area displays the 'Blocks' configuration page for the 'Left sidebar' region. A table lists three blocks: 'Navigation', 'User login', and 'Powered by Drupal', each assigned to the 'Left sidebar'. A 'configure' link is available for each block. A note at the top explains the drag-and-drop functionality for reordering blocks. A 'more help...' link is also present.

To see which regions your current theme has, follow these steps:

1. Log in as administrator.
2. Click on Administer→Site building→Blocks.



At this point, it's a good idea to enable a few different themes by clicking on Administer→Site building→Themes. Select the check box under Enabled and choose Save configuration. Now when you view the Administer→Site building→Blocks page, you will see links to all the enabled themes under the List tab. Clicking on any one of these theme links will show you all the regions it contains.

The preinstalled themes contain these regions:

- ✓ **Bluemarine:** Header, Footer, Content, Left and Right sidebars
- ✓ **Chameleon:** Left and Right sidebars
- ✓ **Garland:** Header, Footer, Content, Left and Right sidebars
- ✓ **Marvin:** Left and Right sidebars
- ✓ **Minnelli:** Header, Footer, Content, Left and Right sidebars
- ✓ **Pushbutton:** Header, Footer, Content, Left and Right sidebars



Programmers who build Drupal themes may create additional regions beyond those I cover here. If you add themes to your Drupal software (which I mention in Chapter 7), the regions may differ from these.

## *Exploring the regions*



Each of the common theme regions controls a different section of each page of your site.

The following figures use the Minnelli theme because it contains all five regions.

### **Header**

The Header, shown in Figure 8-4, contains the site logo and the site title.



**Figure 8-4:**  
The Header  
region of  
the Minnelli  
theme.

This theme, Minnelli, also contains the primary menu. You can tell that the primary menu is in the Header because of the presence of the Contact Me link. Other themes may place the primary menu in a different region.

### **Content**

The Content region is in the middle of the page, just below the Header (see Figure 8-5). It displays

- ✓ Story and page content you create
- ✓ Built-in Drupal site creation, management, and configuration forms



The most central region in a theme usually is Content. It contains the main content on each page of the site.

The screenshot shows the 'Blocks' administration page for the 'Minnelli' theme. At the top, there are tabs for 'List' (selected) and 'Add block'. Below the tabs, a horizontal menu lists themes: Chameleon, Bluemarine, Garland, Marvin, **Minnelli**, and Pushbutton. The main content area is divided into regions:

- Left sidebar:** Contains three blocks:
  - Navigation (Region: Left sidebar, Configure button)
  - User login (Region: Left sidebar, Configure button)
  - Powered by Drupal (Region: Left sidebar, Configure button)
- Right sidebar:** No blocks in this region.
- Content:** No blocks in this region.
- Header:** No blocks in this region.
- Footer:** No blocks in this region.
- Disabled:** Contains six blocks, all set to '<none>' in the Region dropdown:
  - Primary links
  - Recent comments
  - Secondary links
  - Syndicate
  - Who's new
  - Who's online

At the bottom right is a 'Save blocks' button.

**Figure 8-5:**  
The Content  
region of  
the Minnelli  
theme.

## Footer

The region at the very bottom of the Web site is the Footer (see Figure 8-6).

**Figure 8-6:**  
The Footer  
region of  
the Minnelli  
theme.



The Footer usually contains a copyright statement. Sometimes it will contain a small Drupal logo and RSS feed logo.

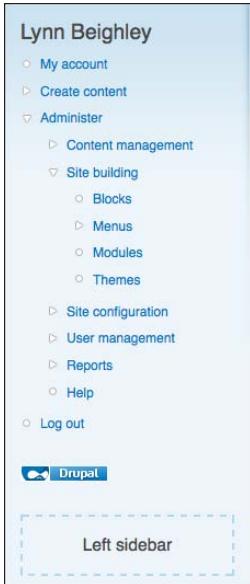


This is a great place to put company information links, which I explain how to do later.

### ***Left sidebar***

In this theme, all the administrative navigation occurs in the Left sidebar (see Figure 8-7).

**Figure 8-7:**  
The Left sidebar region of the Minnelli theme.



The username of the logged-in user is displayed at the top of the Left sidebar region. If the site visitor isn't logged in, the log-in form is displayed in this region. In Minnelli, the small Drupal logo is here, but in other themes it's located in the Footer region.

### ***Right sidebar***

In Minnelli, the Right sidebar is empty. It serves as a space between the Content region and the right side of the browser window.

## ***Configuring regions***

A useful feature of most Drupal themes is the capability to customize where various page elements (such as blocks containing navigation) appear on the

page. For example, you can move the User login from the Left sidebar region to the Right sidebar region. To do this, follow these steps:

- 1. Log in as Administrator.**
  - 2. Change to the Minnelli theme by clicking on Administer→Site building→Themes.**
- You will see the list of themes that come preinstalled with Drupal (see Figure 8-8).
- 3. If Minnelli is not enabled, click the Enabled check box. Select the Default radio button.**
  - 4. Choose Save Configuration.**
  - 5. Click on Administer→Site building→Blocks.**

You will see the Block configuration page (see Figure 8-9).

The screenshot shows the Drupal admin interface at <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/themes>. The left sidebar has a 'Themes' section under 'Administrator'. The main content area is titled 'Themes' with tabs for 'List' and 'Configure'. A table lists six themes: Blubmarine, Chameleon, Garland, Marvin, Minnelli, and Pushbutton. The 'Minnelli' theme is highlighted as the current theme. It is described as 'Tableless, recolorable, multi-column, fixed width theme'. The 'Enabled' checkbox is checked, and the 'Default' radio button is selected. At the bottom are 'Save configuration' and 'Reset to defaults' buttons.

**Figure 8-8:**  
Theme selection with Minnelli set as default.

Block	Region	Operations
Powered by Drupal	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
Navigation	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
User login	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>

**Figure 8-9:**  
The Block configuration page for the Minnelli theme.

This page allows you to move blocks from one region to another. Since the User login form is contained in a block, when you move that particular block to another region, the User login form moves.

**6. Look at the table on this page and locate the User login Block. Click on the drop-down menu next to it and choose Right sidebar.**

The User login label moves down to the Right sidebar section of the table.

You can also simply grab and drag the cross icon down into the Right sidebar section of the table.

**7. Scroll down and click Save blocks.**



Your login form will now appear in the Right sidebar region. To see it, log out of the site and then browse to the home page. To change it back, log in as administrator, return to the Block configuration page, and drag the User login back up into the Left sidebar section.



See those links to your other enabled themes near the top of this page? If you click on one of the other themes and move blocks around, you will see those changes reflected on the Web site only when you make that theme the default. This means that you can change the block settings without changing themes. Because this page temporarily changes your theme when you click on a different theme, you can get a preview of how the page will look when you move blocks. This is why the Blocks configuration page displays the label for each region.

You move any of the built-in blocks between any of the regions in a given theme in the same way, by using the drop-down menu or dragging them into the region where you want them.



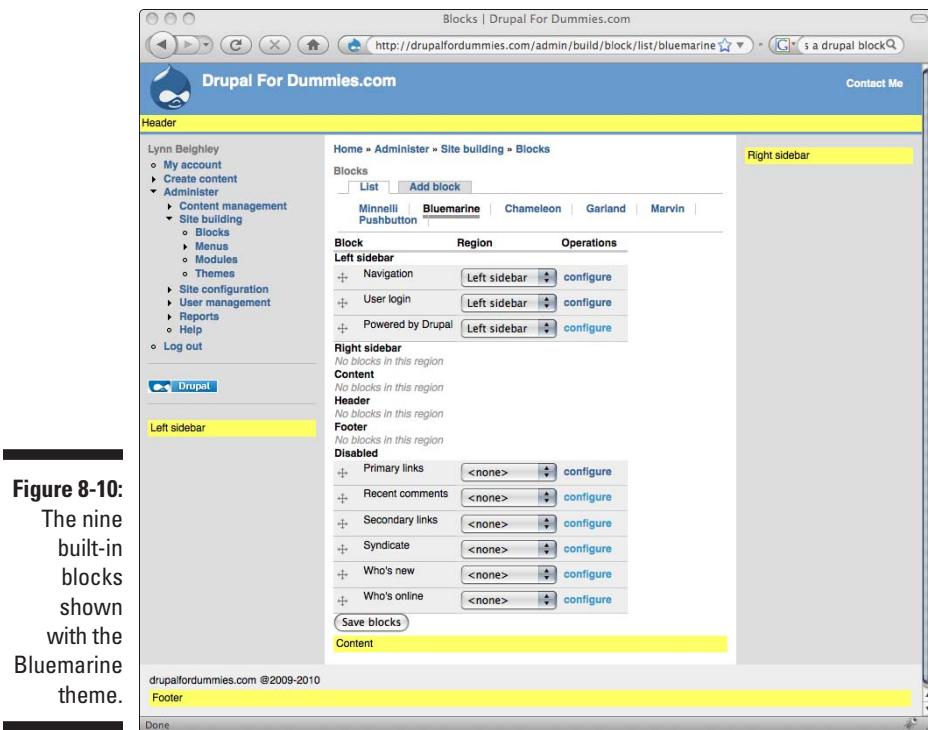
In the Block configuration page, the order of blocks matters. Suppose you have three blocks under the Left sidebar region. The order they are in will be the order they appear in all your Web pages. You can order the blocks within a region by dragging them above or below other blocks in the same region. For example, if you want the User login block to appear as the bottom item in the Right sidebar region, drag it under any other blocks in the list.

## *Administering Blocks*

At this point, you have seen the User login block and moved it, but that isn't the only block you can move. All the preinstalled themes have the same nine other built-in blocks I describe below. Also, you can create your own blocks and move them to any region you wish. This can come in handy for posting images to the Right sidebar, for example.

### *Using the built-in blocks*

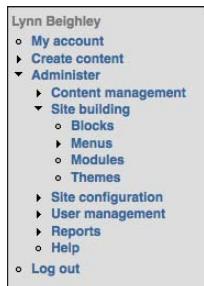
There are nine built-in blocks in all of the preinstalled Drupal themes. You can see them in Figure 8-10, where I have selected the Bluemarine theme.



**Figure 8-10:**  
The nine  
built-in  
blocks  
shown  
with the  
Bluemarine  
theme.

The built-in blocks are:

- ✓ **Navigation:** The Navigation block contains the administrator links when you are logged in as administrator, and the My account and Log out links for logged-in users. It also displays the username (see Figure 8-11).



**Figure 8-11:**  
The  
Navigation  
block.

- ✓ **User login:** This block contains the User login form. It's only visible when a visitor to the site has not yet logged in. If a visitor is logged in, the block is not visible. This block also contains Create new account and Request new password links (see Figure 8-12).



The User login block interface shows a light blue header with the title "User login". Below it is a form with two text input fields: "Username:" and "Password:", each with a required asterisk (\*). Below the fields is a "Log in" button. At the bottom of the form are two links: "Create new account" and "Request new password".

**Figure 8-12:**  
The User  
login block.

- ✓ **Powered by Drupal:** This little block, shown in Figure 8-13, contains a small logo and links to Drupal.org when you click on it.



**Figure 8-13:**  
Powered  
by Drupal  
block.

The following blocks are disabled by default.



- ✓ **Primary links:** Primary links are links such as the Contact Me that I created earlier. They link to important locations in your Web site. This block contains these links, but is disabled because Drupal also posts those links automatically in a location determined by the theme designer.

Think of your primary links as being hardwired into your site.

If you enable this block, you will have a duplicate set of these links. I recommend that you drag this block into the Right sidebar region and click Save blocks to see what it does. Don't forget to disable it when you are finished.

- ✓ **Recent comments:** This shows a list of the subject lines of up to ten of the most recent comments made anywhere on your site. It also includes a link to the comment (see Figure 8-14). It's a good candidate for the empty Right sidebar region.

**Figure 8-14:**

Recent comments block.



- ✓ **Secondary links:** You haven't created any secondary links yet, so this block won't be visible. Think of the Secondary links as just another set of links that you can add to your site, links that aren't as important as the primary links. They are useful for pages you need to include, like legal information. In the next section, I show you how to add links to your Secondary links menu.
- ✓ **Syndicate:** This block adds a logo and a link to the XML version of your site pages, which allows users to grab and use the syndicated content from your site. I discuss this in detail later in the book.
- ✓ **Who's new:** Shown in Figure 8-15, this displays usernames and links to profiles of the newest registered users of the site.
- ✓ **Who's online:** Also in Figure 8-15, Who's online shows a summary of how many people are currently using the site, divided into registered users and people who aren't logged in. It also shows a list of the registered users and links to their profiles.

**Figure 8-15:**

Who's new and Who's online blocks.



## *Creating custom blocks*

You can create your own blocks and put content in them. In the last chapter, I created a story containing an image of me. I can create a block and take that same HTML code I pasted in the story and place it in a custom block instead. Here's how to create a custom block and add content to it:

1. **As administrator, click on Administer ➤ Site building ➤ Blocks.** You will see the Block configuration page, as shown in Figure 8-10.

2. **Locate and click on the Add block tab near the top of the page.** You will now see the Add block form (see Figure 8-16).
3. **Give your block a meaningful description.** For my image, I enter the description *My thumbnail photo*. Only you will see the description. It is used on the List tab of the Block configuration page where you drag your custom block to the region where you wish it to appear.
4. **Enter a title if you wish.** The Title will show up on all your pages just above whatever content you put in the body. I enter the title *Lynn Beighley*.
5. **Enter any content you wish for the body.** The same rules apply here as with other types of content, such as stories and pages. I enter the HTML code to display my image. If I wish, I can also enter text here.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Blocks | Drupal For Dummies.com' at the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/block/add>. The page has a standard Drupal header with a logo, site name, and user menu. The main content area is titled 'Blocks' with tabs for 'List' and 'Add block' (which is selected). A note says 'Use this page to create a new custom block. New blocks are disabled by default, and must be moved to a region on the blocks administration page to be visible.' Below this are sections for 'Block specific settings': 'Block description:' containing 'My thumbnail photo', 'Block title:' containing 'Lynn Beighley', and 'Block body:' containing ''. To the right, there's a sidebar with 'Recent comments', 'Who's new', 'Who's online', 'Online users', and 'Syndicate' links. At the bottom, there's a footer with the copyright notice 'drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010'.

**Figure 8-16:**  
The Add  
block form.

6. If you used any HTML code in your body content, click the Input format link and select the appropriate setting. The <IMG> tag I used requires me to choose the Full HTML option.
7. Click the Save block button. Your new content block has been created, but it won't show up on your site until you drag it into the region where you wish it to appear.
8. Click on the List tab at the top of the page. This returns you to the list of blocks. Your new block should appear in this list under the Disabled section (see Figure 8-17).
9. Drag your new block to the region of your choice and choose Save Blocks.



Don't forget that the order of blocks in each region also matters.

**Blocks**

Block	Region	Operations
Powered by Drupal	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
Navigation	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
User login	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
<b>Left sidebar</b>		
My thumbnail photo	Right sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
Recent comments	Right sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
Who's new	Right sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
Who's online	Right sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
Syndicate	Right sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
<b>Right sidebar</b>		
Secondary links	<none>	<a href="#">configure</a>
Primary links	<none>	<a href="#">configure</a>

[Save blocks](#)

**Figure 8-17:**  
Your new  
custom  
block now  
appears in  
the list of  
blocks.

## *Editing and deleting custom blocks*

My new block is listed in the Block configuration page under the List tab, as shown in Figure 8-17. To edit a custom block, click on the Configure link next to your custom block description. This will open the same form as the Add block tab; only your content will be visible and editable.

If you want to delete your custom block, click on the Delete link next to it.

## *Changing block visibility settings*

When you create a custom block, there are visibility settings at the bottom of the Add block form. These setting can also be applied to the pre-built blocks. To see them, click on the Configure link next to a block. You see three sections, as shown in Figure 8-18.

The screenshot shows the 'My thumbnail photo' block configuration page in a web browser. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/block/configure/block/1>. The page title is "My thumbnail photo" block | Drupal For Dummies.com. On the right side, there's a sidebar with a "Syndicate" button. The main content area has three sections:

- User specific visibility settings:**
  - Custom visibility settings:**
    - Users cannot control whether or not they see this block.
    - Show this block by default, but let individual users hide it.
    - Hide this block by default but let individual users show it.
  - Allow individual users to customize the visibility of the block in their account settings.
- Role specific visibility settings:**
  - Show block for specific roles:
    - anonymous user
    - authenticated user
    - story editors
  - Show this block only for the selected role(s). If you select no roles, the block will be visible to all users.
- Page specific visibility settings:**
  - Show block on specific pages:
    - Show on every page except the listed pages.
    - Show on only the listed pages.
    - Show if the following PHP code returns TRUE (PHP-mode, experts only).
  - Pages:  
[Empty text area]
  - Enter one page per line as Drupal paths. The "\*" character is a wildcard. Example paths are blog for the blog page and blog/\* for every personal blog. <front> is the front page. If the PHP-mode is chosen, enter PHP code between <?php ?>. Note that executing incorrect PHP-code can break your Drupal site.

At the bottom left is a "Save block" button, and at the bottom center is the copyright notice "drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010".

**Figure 8-18:**  
Block  
visibility  
settings.

The visibility sections are:

- ✓ **User specific visibility settings:** These settings control whether registered users can choose to hide a block from view when they visit pages on your site. The first option gives them no control. The second lets them hide the block, but it is visible at first. The third lets them hide the block but lets them show it if they wish. If you let them control the visibility, a check box with the block name will appear on their My account>Edit page.
- ✓ **Role specific visibility settings:** If you wish to allow only registered users to see your block, this is where you control that. Leave everything unchecked if you want both signed-in and guest users to see your block.
- ✓ **Page specific visibility settings:** This third option allows you to display your block on specific pages of your site. It requires you to enter the path to the pages on which you do or do not want the content to appear.



Before you can enter paths in here, you need more pages on your site. I will return to this setting later in the book.

## *Editing pre-built blocks*

There aren't many things you can change about the nine pre-built blocks. If you click on the Configure link next to any of them, you will see a form that allows you to enter a title for the block. This will override any title the block currently uses. All of them also provide you with the visibility options.

Only three of the pre-built blocks have any other options:

- ✓ **Powered by Drupal:** This controls the color and size of the small Drupal logo. You don't have to include it. You can drag it to the disabled list, but I encourage you to leave it on your site. The block is shown in Figure 8-19.

**Figure 8-19:**  
Special configuration options for the Powered by Drupal block.

**'Powered by Drupal' block**  
The 'Powered by Drupal' block is an optional link to the home page of the Drupal project. While there is absolutely no requirement that sites feature this link, it may be used to show support for Drupal.

▼ **Block specific settings**

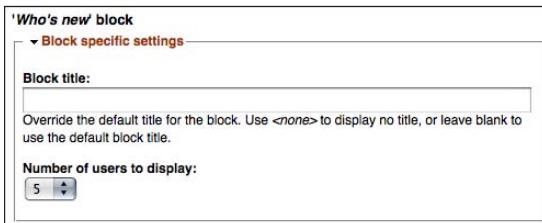
**Block title:**  
Override the default title for the block. Use <none> to display no title, or leave blank to use the default block title.

**Badge color:** Blue

**Badge size:** Small

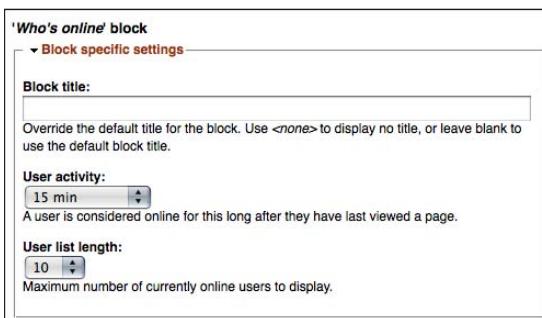
- ✓ **Who's new:** This option lets you control how many users are listed in the Who's new list (see Figure 8-20).

**Figure 8-20:**  
Special con-  
figuration  
options for  
the Who's  
new block.



- ✓ **Who's online:** You can control which users this block lists based on how long it has been since they last clicked a link on your site. This also controls how many users to list (see Figure 8-21).

**Figure 8-21:**  
Special con-  
figuration  
options for  
the Who's  
online block.



## Managing Menus

Drupal has three menus that already exist. These are the Navigation menu, the Primary menu, and the Secondary menu (see Figure 8-22).

- ✓ **The Navigation menu:** This is the menu you use every time you log in as administrator and make changes to your site.
- ✓ **The Primary menu:** This is for important sections on your site. You might link to your company's Product page, a forum, or news about your business.
- ✓ **The Secondary menu:** These links are for less important pages, like legalese or partner sites.

**Figure 8-22:**  
The three  
Drupal  
menus.

At this point, you know how to put a page node in the Primary menu when you create or edit it. My Contact Me page is in this menu, and a link to it appears on every page of my site. But instead of going through the process of editing a page to add it to the Primary menu, you can add additional links directly. To get to the Menus section, click on Administer→Site building→Menus. You will see the options shown in Figure 8-22. There are three tabs on this page: List menus, which lists all the menus; Add menu, where you can create a custom menu; and Settings, which controls the overall structure of your menus.

## Setting primary and secondary links



It's best not to make any changes to the Navigation menu. It is used for the My account link, the Log out link, and all the administrative functions; if you change it, you run the risk of being unable to get to a particular administrative section of your site.

## Adding an item to a menu

To add an item to a menu, follow these steps:

- 1. Click on Administrator ➔ Site building ➔ Menus.**
- 2. Click on the menu to which you wish to add an item.** In my case, I click on Primary links. You will see a list of links in the menu. In my case, I have only one, my Contact Me link (see Figure 8-23).
- 3. Click on the Add item tab.** You see the Add item form (see Figure 8-24).
- 4. Enter the URL or path to your page or story in the Path blank.** You can also use external links (for example, <http://fordummies.com>).



To get the correct URL for a page or story node, follow these steps:

- a. Open your site in another browser window.
- b. Click on Administer ➔ Content management ➔ Content.
- c. Locate the story or page to which you want to link and click on its title.
- d. Copy the URL to that page.

The URL will look something like <http://drupalfordummies.com/node/10>. This is what you will paste in the Path blank.

The screenshot shows the Drupal admin interface for managing menus. The page title is "Primary links | Drupal For Dummies.com". The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/menu-customize/primary-links>. The main content area shows the "Primary links" menu with a single item, "Contact Me". The "Add item" tab is active. To the right, there's a sidebar titled "The Author" featuring a photo of Lynn Beighley and some recent comments. Another sidebar on the right lists "Who's new" and "Who's online".

**Figure 8-23:**  
The list of  
links in the  
Primary  
menu.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/m>. The page title is 'Primary links | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The main content area is titled 'Primary links' with tabs for 'List items', 'Add item' (which is selected), and 'Edit menu'. A sidebar on the left shows a navigation tree for Lynn Beighley, including 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator' (expanded to show 'Content management', 'Site building' (expanded to show 'Blocks', 'Menus', 'Modules', 'Themes'), 'Site configuration', 'User management', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Log out'), and a 'Drupal' link.

**Form Fields:**

- Path:** \* (Text input field)
- Menu link title:** \* (Text input field)
- Description:** (Text input field)
- Enabled:** (Check box)  Enabled
- Expanded:** (Check box)  Expanded
- Parent item:** (Select dropdown) <Primary links>
- Weight:** (Text input field) 0

**Buttons:**

- Save** (button)

At the bottom of the page, it says 'drupalfordummies.com @2009-2010'.

**Figure 8-24:**  
The Add item page to create a new menu link.

5. In the **Menu link title** blank, enter the text you want used for the link. This will be something like About Us or Products.
6. (Optional) Enter a **description** of the page you are linking. The description will appear when the mouse cursor passes over the link.
7. If you wish to hide the link temporarily, uncheck the **Enabled** box.
8. For now, leave the **Expanded**, **Parent item**, and **Weight** settings as they are. You will use these when you create child links, covered later in this book.
9. Click **Save**. You now return to the List items form.

You should already see your new Primary menu item on your pages.



You can change the order of the Primary menu items by dragging them up or down in the list on the List items page.

## *Editing and deleting links*

Just as with the block menu, you have to delete links on the List items page to delete. To edit a link, click on the edit link. You are presented with the same form you used to create the link.

## *Adding a menu*

Drupal allows you to create custom menus. They are automatically put in blocks and can be moved to various regions on the site in the same way as a custom block.

To create a new menu, follow these steps:

1. Click on Administer→Site Building→Menus.
2. Click on the Add menu link. You will see the form shown in Figure 8-25.
3. Give your menu a name or identifier that can be used by the Web server. Make it short, with no spaces or special characters, because it will become part of a URL. Something like *prodmenu* or even *p* is sufficient.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Drupal For Dummies.com'. The address bar shows the URL: <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/menu/add>. The page title is 'Drupal For Dummies.com' with a logo. The main content area has a sidebar on the left with user information (Lynn Beighley) and a navigation menu. The right side contains the 'Add menu' form. At the top of the form is a breadcrumb trail: Home > Administer > Site building > Menus. Below the breadcrumb are three tabs: 'List menus' (selected), 'Add menu' (highlighted in blue), and 'Settings'. A note says: 'Enter the name for your new menu. Remember to enable the newly created block in the blocks administration page.' There are three input fields: 'Menu name:' with a red asterisk, 'Title:' with a red asterisk, and 'Description:'. A 'Save' button is at the bottom. The footer of the page includes the text 'drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010'.

**Figure 8-25:**

The Add menu form.

4. **Enter a title for your menu.** Something like *Product links* or *My links* is good. This will appear in the same listings with Primary links and Secondary links menus.
5. **(Optional) Enter a description of your menu.**
6. **Click Save.**

You add links to your menu in exactly the same way you added them to the Primary menu earlier.



With custom menus and block visibility settings, you can create a custom page that contains its own content and menu. Create as many custom blocks and menus as you need, put them in the Content region, and make them visible only on the necessary page. It's a bit of work, but it allows you increased control over your content and the ability to put more custom content than just a single story or page node can have.

## *Menu settings you shouldn't change*

The Menu configuration page has a Settings tab that controls settings for the Drupal menuing system. To see this page, click Administer→Site building→Menus. Click the Settings tab (see Figure 8-26).

This form is extremely confusing. Here's what the options mean:



- ✓ **Default menu for content:** Remember the form you use to create a page or story? At the top of that form, there is a link, *Menu settings*, that allows you to put a link to your new page or story in a menu. Under Menu settings, there's a drop-down list box with all the menus in it. The default one is Primary links.

There's generally no reason to change *Default menu for content*. This setting simply means, "Make the menu you choose here the one that shows up as the default menu in that drop-down list box."



- ✓ **Source for the primary links:** This option says, "Use the links from this menu as the one that show up as the primary links." If I change this to a different menu, the links in the new menu will show up instead of my Contact Me and For Dummies links that are currently in my Primary links menu.

Again, it confuses things if you change the source for the primary links. It's rather like saying, "Don't use my primary links as my primary links; use these other links instead."

- ✓ **Source for the secondary links:** Same functions as the primary links, only affecting the secondary links. It's best to leave it alone.

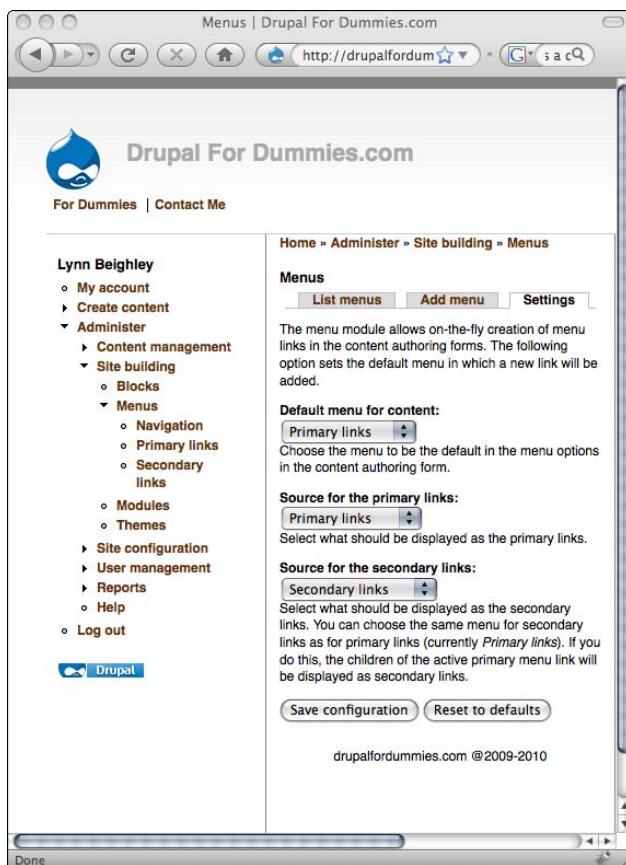


Figure 8-26:  
Menu  
settings.

## Chapter 9

# Using Modules: Create a Site with a Blog and Forum

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Using modules
- ▶ Managing forums
- ▶ Building blogs
- ▶ Moderating comments

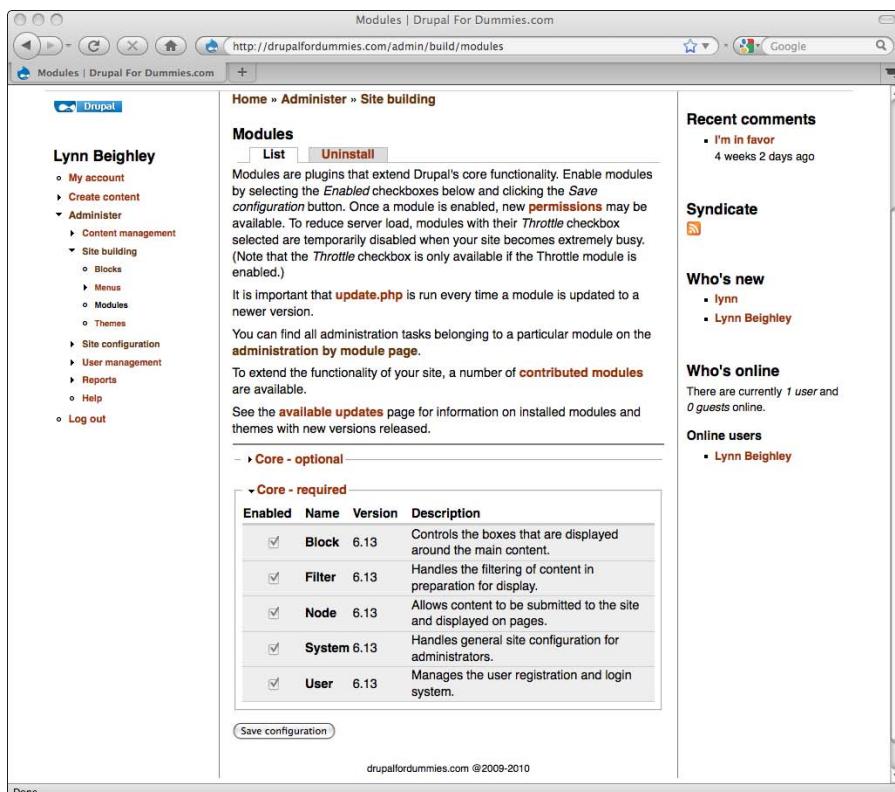
**A** Drupal module is a plug-in program that extends Drupal's core functionality. Think of a module like an add-on application that allows Drupal to do more things. In general, like themes, modules have to be downloaded, placed in a directory on your Web server, and then enabled. For example, the blog and forum I talk about in this chapter are modules. When you install Drupal, these modules aren't enabled, so you can't initially build a blog or forum. Enabling them adds this increased functionality to Drupal.

In this chapter, you take a close look at modules. You see how to build a site complete with a blog and a forum. Along the way, you discover how to upload and activate modules and where to find new ones.

## *Understanding Modules*

You may not realize it, but you are already using modules. Drupal itself is composed of a set of modules, known as the *Core modules*. To see what I mean, choose Administer→Site Building→Modules (see Figure 9-1).

**Figure 9-1:**  
The Module  
menu displays all the  
pre-installed  
modules.



Modules preinstalled with Drupal are called Core modules. The two types of Core modules are

- ✓ **Optional:** These are modules you don't have to have enabled for Drupal to run, but they are some of the most useful ones. A few of them are enabled by default.
- ✓ **Required:** As you might guess, required modules have to be enabled for Drupal to run. These are the heart and soul of Drupal. You can't disable or delete them.

In Figure 9-1, the Core-optional menu is collapsed so you see the Core-required modules.

## Understanding the required modules

Take a look back at Figure 9-1 and notice the required Core modules. There are five of them, and even though they have check boxes under *Enabled*, you can't uncheck them to disable them.

- ✓ **Block:** These are chunks of code that contain content and menus and can be placed in the regions around the main content area. In Chapter 8, you add and remove blocks from the various regions. The regions displayed in your site depend on the theme you are using and control where you can place blocks.
- ✓ **Filter:** Before Drupal displays content on your site, it removes and modifies certain kinds of code or content that could allow your site to be compromised by hackers. The Filter module scans and removes potentially harmful content. It also turns Web page addresses into clickable links.
- ✓ **Node:** Content types, such as a story, page, poll, or blog post, are organized into nodes, discrete units that can be viewed on a page by itself or on the same page as other nodes. This module is responsible for managing nodes.
- ✓ **System:** This module manages all the important site configuration settings that you, as the administrator, control.
- ✓ **User:** If you couldn't log on to your website as the administrator to manage it, your site wouldn't be very useful. The User module contains the code that allows users to logon, the administrator to set up and manage accounts, and unregistered users to request accounts.

Each required module allows the administrator to modify specific settings.

### ***Block module***

In the preceding chapter, you used the Block module settings to control in which regions Drupal displays various content. It's worth taking another look at the Block module interface. There are three ways to access the Block module interface:

- ✓ Choose Administer→Site building→Blocks.
- ✓ Choose Administer. Make sure you are on the By task tab. On the right side of the page, find Site building and locate and click on the Blocks link.
- ✓ Choose Administer. Click on the By module tab. Notice that under the box titled Block are three links, Configure permissions, Blocks, and Get help (see Figure 9-2). Click on the Blocks link.



Under the Administer→By module tab, click on the Get help link under the box titled Block. This displays some useful rules that may come in handy when you are working with blocks. Also on the By module tab is a link to the Configure permissions page. On this page, the Block module has check boxes controlling which user roles can administer blocks and control where or if blocks appear on the site.



Modules currently enabled show up under the Administer→By module tab.

**Figure 9-2:**  
Three links  
pertain  
to blocks  
under the  
By module  
tab on the  
Administrator  
page.

The screenshot shows the Drupal Administer interface at <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/by-module>. The 'By module' tab is active. The page displays three main sections:

- Block:** Controls the boxes that are displayed around the main content. Links include: Configure permissions, Blocks, and Get help.
- Comment:** Allows users to comment on and discuss published content. Links include: Configure permissions, Comments, and Get help.
- Filter:** Handles the filtering of content in preparation for display. Links include: Configure permissions, Input formats, and Get help.

On the right side, there are sidebar modules for Recent comments, Syndicate, Who's new, Who's online, and Online users.

### Filter module

The Filter module is responsible for four types of content filtering. These are

- ✓ **HTML corrector:** This filter attempts to find and correct faulty code. For example, if the HTML is missing a close table tag, `</table>`, this filter will add it. The HTML corrector applies only when HTML code is allowed.
  - ✓ **HTML filter:** This filter removes HTML code when you choose to restrict certain HTML tags. You can also restrict all HTML tags and this filter will remove them.
- By default, Drupal filters out potentially harmful content. This includes JavaScript events, JavaScript URLs, and CSS styles. Even when you allow HTML, this kind of coding will be removed. Drupal also removes PHP scripts.
- ✓ **Line break converter:** This filter converts carriage returns and line feeds into HTML tags.

Any time you create text content, Drupal scans it and looks for carriage returns or line breaks. When you type text into a text field to create a story or posting, the Filter module converts your carriage returns and line breaks into HTML style line breaks. Without this, when you publish



your story, your carriage returns don't show up in a browser. This all happens behind the scenes, so you can type away without worrying about the HTML side of things.

- ✓ URL filter:** When you are creating content and you type a URL (for example, `www.drupalfordummies.com`), after you publish it, Drupal turns it into a clickable link. This also applies to `mailto` links (for example, `<mailto://lynnbeighley@gmail.com>`).



Chapter 10 explains how to use any combination of these filters when you create content.

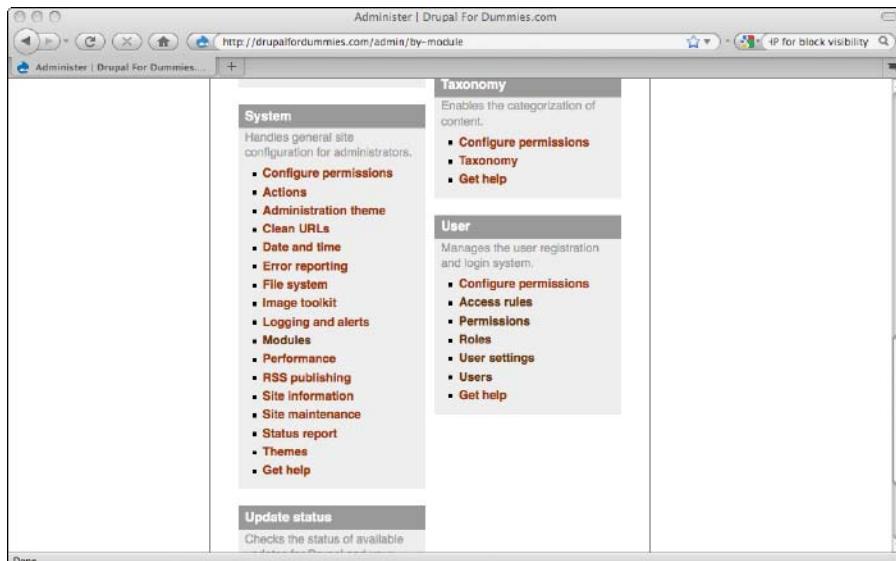
### ***Node module***

Because every bit of content is contained in a node, this module controls how content is created and submitted. The administration links for the Node module are used to manage content types, edit and delete submitted content, and manage how posts to the front page behave. The only settings you can change for the Node module itself are how the roles can interact with content. These settings are under the Permissions page at Administer→User management→Permissions. These are discussed in Chapter 4.

### ***System module***

The System module contains the code that runs Drupal. To get an idea of all the areas under the umbrella of this module, choose Administer→By module tab, and locate the section on the page titled System (see Figure 9-3).

**Figure 9-3:**  
The System  
module  
section  
under the  
By module  
tab on the  
Administer  
page.



There are a number of settings here. Some you have seen already, and many are covered in detail in Chapter 10. To give you a sense of what the System module does, it controls, among other things:

- ✓ **Actions:** These are tasks that Drupal can do automatically when something happens. You can add custom actions, and I show you how in the next chapter.
- ✓ **Administration theme and Site Theme:** When you select a new theme, the System module manages the display of it.
- ✓ **Date and Time format**
- ✓ **Site maintenance:** This allows you to temporarily prevent your site from being viewed or logged on to by visitors while you work on it.
- ✓ **Site information:** These are settings for the entire site, such as site name, e-mail address for automated e-mails to users, and a site-wide footer (a bar across the bottom of all your pages that may contain copyright and contact information).

### *User module*

If you take a look back at Figure 9-3 under the title User, you should recognize all the functions that this module controls. The User module controls everything to do with roles, user accounts, and access rules and permissions.



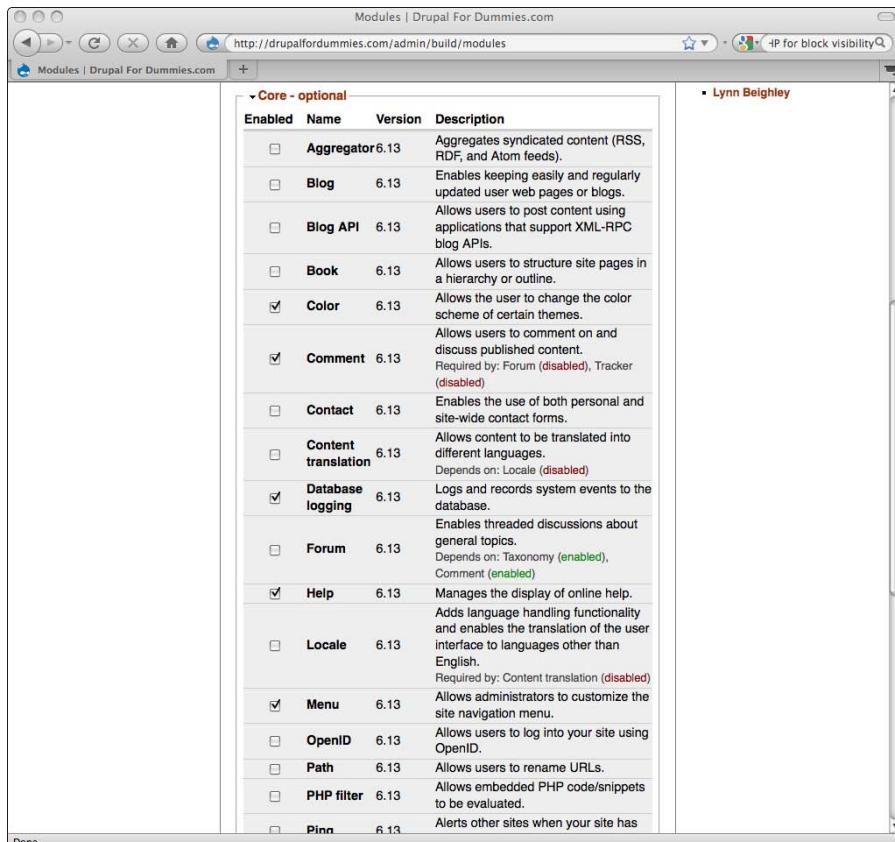
You may have noticed that all the modules on the Administer→By module tab have a Configure permissions link and a Get help link. The Configure permissions link controls who can change the settings associated with each module. In general, unless you trust your authenticated users or story editors implicitly, you should never give anyone permission to control anything under the Core modules.

## *Looking at the optional modules*

There are a number of optional modules installed with Drupal. Some of these are enabled by default; most are not. To see the list of optional modules, choose Administer→Site Building→Modules and expand the Core→optional section (see Figure 9-4).



If you want to learn more about any of the optional modules, click on the Enabled box next to them and choose Save configuration. Now when you browse to the Administer→By module tab, you will see them listed. Choose the Get help link for more information.



**Figure 9-4:**  
The Core-  
optional  
modules.

Here's a quick look at most of them.

- ✓ **Aggregator:** This module allows you to grab content from other sites and publish it on yours. You can add, edit, and delete RSS, Atom, and RDF feeds from other sites. I discuss this in more detail in Chapter 14.
- ✓ **Blog:** This is exactly what it sounds like, a module that allows you to create blog entries. This is the module you will use later in this chapter to create your own blogs.
- ✓ **Blog API:** This module lets you update your blog using a variety of other applications rather than having to log on to your Drupal site through a browser to post new blog entries.
- ✓ **Book:** A book in Drupal is an organized set of pages. They can be organized like a book table of contents and are useful if you want to publish anything structured, such a manual or user guide.

- ✓ **Color:** Some themes have settings that allow users to choose their own colors. This module has to be enabled for that option.
- ✓ **Comment:** This module is what allows registered users to comment on site content. It is enabled by default, and has to be enabled for forums to work.
- ✓ **Contact:** Rather than publishing a page with an e-mail address for your visitors to contact you, this module lets you create a contact form. Visitors can fill out and submit the form. You can have the information e-mailed to you, but you can also see it online and better keep track of it.
- ✓ **Content translation and Locale:** These two modules help you translate your published content into different languages.
- ✓ **Database logging:** This handy module keeps track of system events, such as user postings, people trying to browse to a nonexistent page on your site, and a record of when anything changes.
- ✓ **Forum:** Like a bulletin board, a forum allows registered users to post content and other users to respond.
- ✓ **Help:** This module controls online help documentation.
- ✓ **Menu:** With this enabled, administrators can add links to and edit the site navigation menu.
- ✓ **OpenID:** You can allow users to log on to your site with accounts from other service providers. They don't have to create a new account on your site. You can learn more about OpenIDs by visiting [wwwopenid.net/](http://wwwopenid.net/).
- ✓ **Path:** The Path module lets you create simpler and shorter URLs for pages on your site.
- ✓ **PHP filter:** This allows PHP code to be included in content created for your site.
- ✓ **Ping:** Whenever you post new content, this module sends out a message to specific other sites to let them, and their users, know.
- ✓ **Poll:** Creates a question and a set of responses for your users to choose from.
- ✓ **Profile:** With this enabled, your users can create enhanced user profiles.
- ✓ **Search:** This module allows visitors to search through content posted on your site.
- ✓ **Statistics:** If you want to know more information about visitors to your site, this module can provide it. You can find out where your visitors are coming from and which pages they visit the most.
- ✓ **Tracker:** This creates a block displaying the newest content.
- ✓ **Update status:** It's always a good idea to keep your Drupal software, modules, and themes up to date. This module checks for available updates and keeps you posted.

# Installing Your Blog

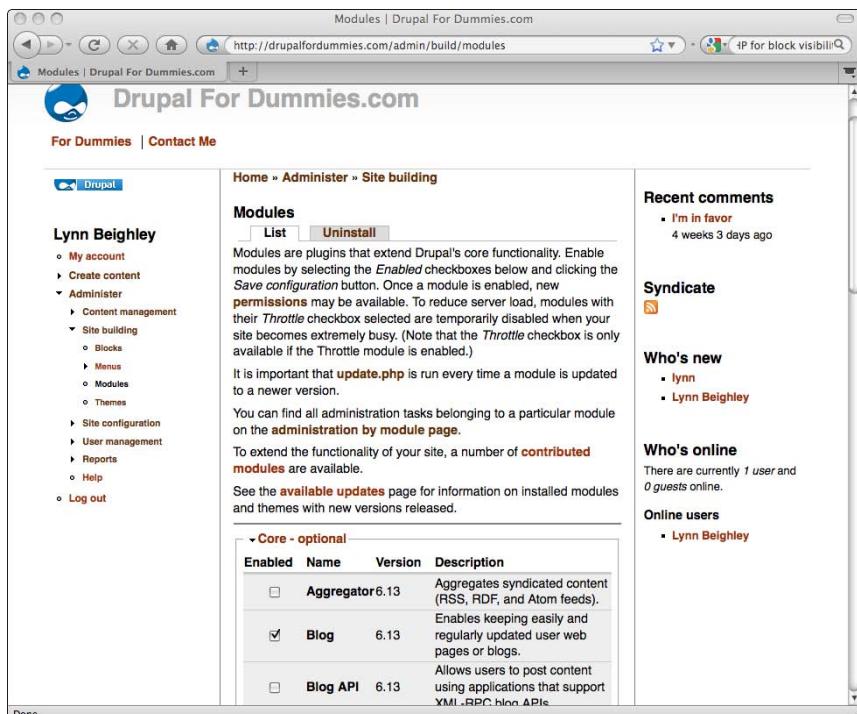
Blogs are incredibly popular, and it's no wonder. A blog is a relatively simple way of getting your message out to the interested public. People do read them, and a well-written blog may make the difference between a customer buying from you or going to your competitor.

As you probably figured out in the preceding section, setting up a blog in Drupal begins with enabling the Blog module.

## Enabling your blog

To enable the Blog module, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules.**
- 2. Scroll down to the Blog module listed under the Core–optional section (see Figure 9-5).**



The screenshot shows the Drupal admin interface for managing modules. The left sidebar shows a navigation tree with 'Administrator' selected. The main content area is titled 'Modules' and shows a table of available modules. The 'Blog' module is listed in the 'Core - optional' section, with its status changed from 'Disabled' to 'Enabled'. Other modules listed include Aggregator, Blog API, and Captcha. The right sidebar displays recent comments, syndication links, who's new, and who's online.

Enabled	Name	Version	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	Aggregator	6.13	Aggregates syndicated content (RSS, RDF, and Atom feeds).
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Blog	6.13	Enables keeping easily and regularly updated user web pages or blogs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Blog API	6.13	Allows users to post content using applications that support XML-RPC, JSON APIs.

**Figure 9-5:**  
Enable the  
Blog mod-  
ule under  
the Core–  
optional  
section of  
the Modules  
page.

3. Click the check box next to the Blog module.
4. Select Save configuration at the bottom of the page.

The page will reload, and you will see the message “The configuration options have been saved.”

Now that the Blog has been enabled, you have access to a new content type called Blog entry.

## *Creating your first blog entry*

To create your first blog entry, follow these steps:

**1. Choose Create content.**

A link for blog entry appears both on the site navigation menu and in the main content area. Both take you to the same Create Blog entry form.

**2. Click on the Blog entry link.**

You see the form shown in Figure 9-6.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title 'Create Blog entry | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL in the address bar is 'http://drupalfordummies.com/node/add/blog'. The page content is as follows:

**Drupal For Dummies.com**

For Dummies | Contact Me

**Home » Create content**

**Create Blog entry**

Title:

Body:

Split summary at cursor

Recent comments

- I'm in favor  
4 weeks 3 days ago

Syndicate

Who's new

- lynn
- Lynn Beighley

Who's online

There are currently 1 user and 0 guests online.

Online users

- Lynn Beighley

Done

**Figure 9-6:** The Create Blog entry form.

3. Enter a title and body for your first blog entry.
4. When you are done, click Preview.
5. You will see the preview of your post. If you are happy with it, press Save.

By default, your blog posting is published to your site homepage. Browse to your homepage and take a look.

## Changing blog entry settings

Creating your blog entry probably feels very familiar to you. It's very much the same as creating a story or page. If you scroll down the Create Blog entry form page, you see the same optional sections (see Figure 9-7).

This is my first blog entry | Drupal For Dummies.com

http://drupalfordummies.com/node/19/edit

This is my first blog entry | Drupal...

**Input format**

**Revision information**

Create new revision

**Log message:**

An explanation of the additions or updates being made to help other authors understand your motivations.

**Comment settings**

Disabled  
 Read only  
 Read/Write

**Authoring information**

**Authored by:**  
Lynn Beighley  
Leave blank for Anonymous.

**Authored on:**  
2009-08-23 04:03:50 +0000  
Format: 2009-08-23 04:03:50 +0000. Leave blank to use the time of form submission.

**Publishing options**

Published  
 Promoted to front page  
 Sticky at top of lists

Save Preview Delete

drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010

**Figure 9-7:**  
Settings on  
Create Blog  
entry form.

- ✓ **Menu settings:** In general, you should not change the Menu settings. The Blog module creates a specific area where all blogs are stored. Using the Menu link title and Parent item creates a link to just this specific blog entry, not to your entire blog.
- ✓ **Input format:** Decide whether to allow full or filtered HTML.
- ✓ **Revision information:** If you want to make changes just to this blog entry, but want to keep the old version, use Create new revision.
- ✓ **Comment settings:** Decide if you want to allow comments. This applies to just this blog entry, not all of them.
- ✓ **Authoring information:** Your name and the time and date are automatically populated. If you have several people contributing to the same blog, you can customize each entry here.
- ✓ **Publishing options:** This controls where this single blog entry will appear.

With the possible exception of Revision information, it's a bad idea to use these settings very often. Blog entries should be consistent, and when you change the settings for one, you will have an entry that no longer fits in with the others. Instead, you should change the overall configuration of your blog. In the next section, I show you how to apply some of these options to the entire blog, not just a single entry.



You can't change the Input format for your entire blog. You are stuck with managing it by blog entry. Since blog entries are best created by trusted people in administrator or story editor roles, you probably don't need to be restrictive in the content you allow, so the Full HTML setting is generally acceptable.

## *Configuring your blog*

There are a number of other blog configuration tasks you should know about. Some accomplish the same things as the settings on the Create Blog entry page, only they apply to every entry in your blog. And some, like creating a link directly to your blog and adding it to a menu, help visitors locate your blog.

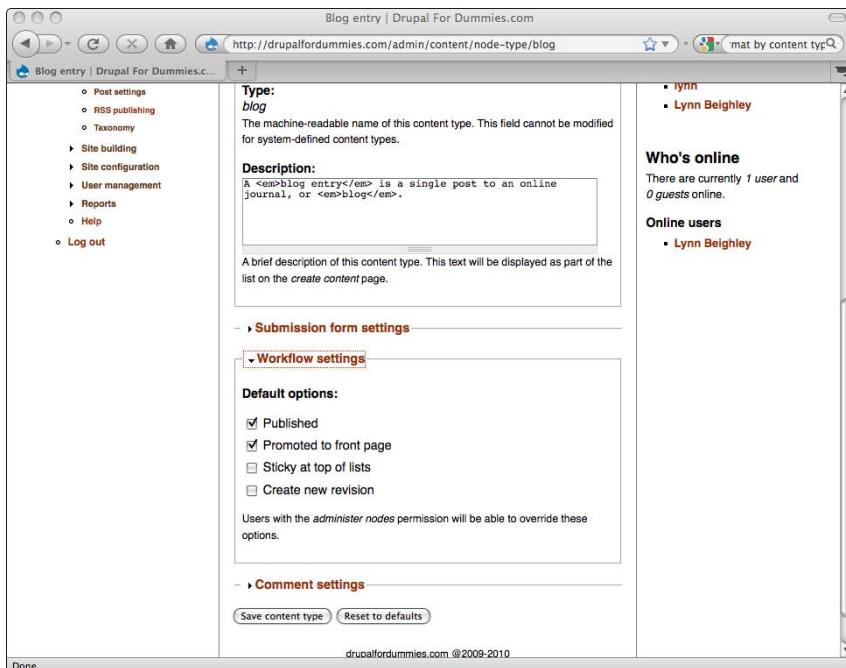
### *Removing blog postings from the home page*

You may prefer not to clutter up your home page with blog entries, especially if you post frequently. To control where your blog postings show up, follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→Content management→Content types.
2. Click on the edit link on the Blog entry list item.

This takes you to a form that controls how your blog entries behave.

3. Scroll down and expand the Workflow settings (see Figure 9-8).



**Figure 9-8:**  
The Workflow section of the Blog entry settings form.

4. To remove future blog postings from the front page, uncheck the Promoted to front page check box.

5. Press Save content type.



Did you notice the Reset to defaults button at the bottom of the Blog entry settings form? If you ever make changes and you don't like them, but don't remember the original settings, click this to reset the form to the original settings. Don't be afraid to experiment with all the settings on this form as you set up your site; you can always reset them if you don't like the results.

Although you have made sure new blog postings won't make it to the front page, the blog entry you created earlier is still there. This is easy to fix. Follow these steps:

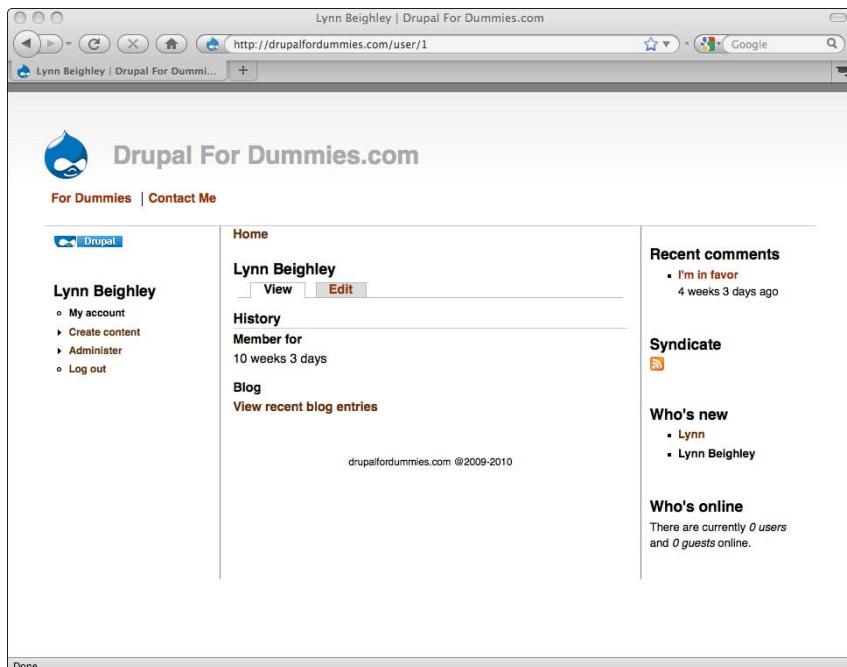
1. Browse to the front page of your site. You will see your first blog post.
2. Click on the title of the entry.
3. Click on the Edit tab.
4. Scroll down to Publishing options and expand this section. Uncheck the Promoted to front page check box.
5. Click Save. Your blog post is no longer on the front page.

### Browsing directly to the blog

You have removed your post from the front page, but it still exists. As things stand now, though, you have no easy way to get to it. But Drupal puts all the blogs on your site in the same place, and it's easy to get to. The first blog you create is located under your site under the directory/blog/1. For example, mine is at <http://drupalfordummies.com/blog/1>.

You can also find your blog by choosing My account. You see your account settings and a link to View recent blog entries (see Figure 9-9). Clicking this link takes you to your main blog page. In my case, this is <http://drupalfordummies.com/blog/1>.

The Blog module creates one blog per authorized user with the appropriate permission settings. This means that you, as the administrator, can create a single blog with as many blog entries as you wish. Your blog is associated with your user name. Later in this chapter, I show you how to allow other authorized users to create blogs, but for now, I focus on the single blog I have created.



**Figure 9-9:**  
A link to  
your blog is  
under the  
My account  
link.

### ***Creating a link to your blog***

If you click on the link to your blog under your My account page, you are taken to the blog's main page. Copy the URL from your browser's navigation bar.

To add a link to your blog to the Primary links menu, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Menus.**
- 2. Locate and click on the menu to which you want to add your blog.**
- 3. Click on the Add item tab.**
- 4. In the Path field, enter the URL of your blog.**

In my case, it is `http://drupalfordummies.com/blog/1`.

- 5. In the Menu link title, enter the text you want for your link.**

In my case, I enter **Lynn's Drupal Blog**. The rest of the settings are optional and have been discussed earlier.

Entering a description is a good idea. When visitors to your site move their mouse cursor over the link, they see this text. It also provides search engines a little more information about your site and can improve your ranking in search results. Every little bit helps!

- 6. Click Save.**

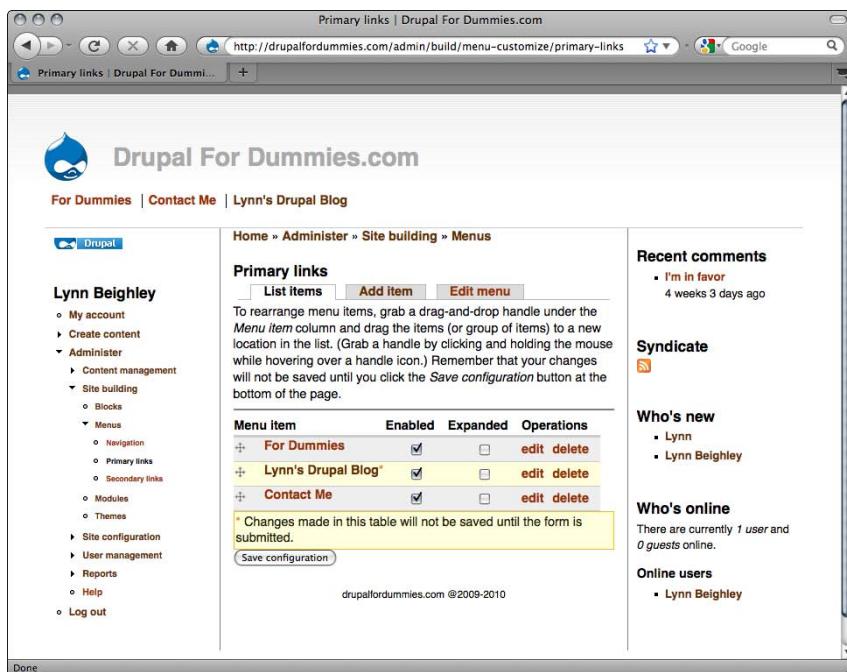
You are now back on the List items page.

Before you leave this page, drag your new link to your blog where you want it. I moved mine beside the Contact Me link, so that it appears to the left of Contact Me (see Figure 9-10).

In this figure, even though I have reordered by links, I have not yet pressed the Save configuration button, so the Primary links menu, shown across the top of the page, doesn't reflect the new order. Only after I press the Save configuration button will the Primary links menu will be in the new order:

- ✓ For Dummies
- ✓ Lynn's Drupal Blog
- ✓ Contact Me

**Figure 9-10:**  
The Primary  
links List  
items tab  
before  
saving the  
configuration.



## Adding more entries

There are two ways to add more entries to your blog. The first is the same technique you used above to create your first entry—that is, by choosing Create content→Blog entry.

The second is by clicking on the Post new blog entry link on your blog page. This link will be visible to you only when you are logged on and viewing your own blog.

## Editing and deleting blog entries

Editing a blog entry is much the same as editing a story or page. When you are logged on and viewing one of your blog entries, you will see an Edit tab. Click on this and make your desired changes, and then press Preview or Save when you are satisfied with the changes.

To delete an entry, click on its Edit tab and choose the Delete button.



You can also edit and delete your blog entries by choosing Administer→Content management→Content and locating the entry you wish to change in the list. Don't forget to use the filtering options in the *Show only items where* section if you have a lot of content.

## *Creating multiple blogs*

I mentioned that blogs are associated with user accounts; that is, one user can have one blog. By default, only the administrator can set up a blog. But if you want to allow a trusted group of users to create their own blogs, you can. Follow these steps to allow users in the story editors group to create blogs:

- 1. Choose Administer→User management→Users.**

Locate the user you wish to allow to create a blog in the list.



Don't forget to use the filtering options in the *Show only users where* section if you have lots of users. You can also sort your user list by Username by clicking on the column heading Username. Click again to sort in reverse order.

- 2. Click the Edit link next to the username.**

This opens the My account page for that user.

- 3. Click the Edit tab. Scroll down to the Roles section (see Figure 9-11).**

- 4. Click the check box for story editors.**

- 5. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click Save.**

You still need to give all of your story editors permission to create blogs.

- 6. Choose Administer→User management→Permissions.**

- 7. Under the blog module heading, select the story editors check boxes for create blog entries, delete own blog entries, and edit own blog entries (see Figure 9-12).**

- 8. Click Save permissions.**

The screenshot shows the 'Edit' tab of the user profile for 'Lynn'. The 'Account information' section contains fields for 'Username' (Lynn) and 'E-mail address' (lynneightley@gmail.com). Below these are fields for 'Password' and 'Confirm password'. A note says, 'To change the current user password, enter the new password in both fields.' Under 'Status', there are radio buttons for 'Blocked' and 'Active' (selected). In the 'Roles' section, two checkboxes are checked: 'authenticated user' and 'story editors'. To the right of the main content area, there are several sidebar modules: 'Recent comments' (I'm in favor, 4 weeks 3 days ago), 'Syndicate' (RSS icon), 'Who's new' (Lynn, Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (1 user and 0 guests online), and 'Online users' (Lynn Beighley).

**Figure 9-11:**  
Assign the  
story editor  
role to a  
user.

The screenshot shows the 'Permissions' page under 'User management'. On the left is a sidebar with links like 'Create content', 'Administrator', 'User management' (selected), 'Reports', and 'Log out'. The main content area displays a table of permissions for the 'story editors' role across various modules. The table has columns for 'Permission', 'anonymous user', 'authenticated user', and 'story editors'. For each module, there are checkboxes indicating whether the permission is granted to anonymous users, authenticated users, or story editors. For example, in the 'block module', 'administer blocks' is checked for story editors. In the 'blog module', 'create blog entries' is checked for story editors. In the 'comment module', 'access comments' is checked for story editors. In the 'filter module', 'administer filters' is checked for story editors.

**Figure 9-12:**  
Permissions  
settings to  
allow story  
editors  
to create  
blogs.

Any user with the role of story editor can now create a blog. He will see the Create content link in the navigation menu.



The link to the new blog created by a story editor can be found under that user's My Account page. If you are logged on as the administrator, you can get to that page by choosing Administer→User management→Users. Locate the user in the list and click his username. You will see the link to his blog.

## *Installing the Forum Module*

Forums are great for creating a user community. People can get help from others, provide you with feedback about your content, and simply socialize. Your forum can be as tightly or loosely controlled as you wish. You can control the categories allowed on your forum. To see an example of a forum, browse to <http://drupal.org/forum>.

Just like setting up a blog, creating a forum begins by enabling the Forum module.

### *Enabling your Forum module*

To enable the Forum module, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules.**
- 2. Scroll down to the Forum module listed under the Core–optional section (see Figure 9-13).**
- 3. Click the check box next to the Forum module.**
- 4. Make sure that the Comment module and Taxonomy module (near the bottom of the Core – optional section) are also enabled.**
- 5. Select Save configuration at the bottom of the page.**

The page will reload and you will see the message “The configuration options have been saved.”

You might notice that under the Create content link, there is a new link to create a Forum topic. You can't actually create forum content until you set up your forums.

**Figure 9-13:**  
Enable the Forum module under the Core–optional section of the Modules page.

Enabled	Name	Version	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	Aggregator	6.13	Aggregates syndicated content (RSS, RDF, and Atom feeds).
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Blog	6.13	Enables keeping easily and regularly updated user web pages or blogs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Blog API	6.13	Allows users to post content using applications that support XML-RPC blog APIs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Book	6.13	Allows users to structure site pages in a hierarchy or outline.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Color	6.13	Allows the user to change the color scheme of certain themes.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Comment	6.13	Allows users to comment on and discuss published content. Required by: Forum ( <b>disabled</b> ), Tracker ( <b>disabled</b> )
<input type="checkbox"/>	Contact	6.13	Enables the use of both personal and site-wide contact forms.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Content translation	6.13	Allows content to be translated into different languages. Depends on: Locale ( <b>disabled</b> )
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Database logging	6.13	Logs and records system events to the database.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Forum	6.13	Enables threaded discussions about general topics. Depends on: Taxonomy ( <b>enabled</b> ), Comment ( <b>enabled</b> )
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Help	6.13	Manages the display of online help. Adds language handling functionality and enables the translation of the user interface to languages other than
<input type="checkbox"/>	Locale	6.13	

## Organizing the Forum module

Take a look at a section of the drupal.org forum shown in Figure 9-14.

In this figure, there are three major headings: General, Services, and Newsletters. These groupings are called *containers*.

Inside each container are the actual *forums*. For example, under Services, the forums are *Hosting support* and *Paid Drupal services*.

If you click on one of these forums, you are presented with a list of *topics*.

So containers hold forums, and forums hold topics. But to confuse the issue, containers are optional. If you wish, you can create forums and not put them in containers at all. As an example, look at Figure 9-14 again. Imagine that all the containers (General, Services, and Newsletters) are missing. Instead, the page consists of a list of forums.



To help you decide whether you need containers, consider how many forum topics you want and whether they can be easily categorized. If you are creating only three topics, for instance, you probably don't need containers.

The screenshot shows a web browser displaying the drupal.org forum at <http://drupal.org/forum>. The page is titled 'Forums | drupal.org'. On the left, there's a sidebar with links like 'Translations', 'General', 'Services', and 'Newsletters'. The main content area is divided into several containers:

- Translations**: A container for translating the Drupal user interface.
- General**: A container for news and announcements and other general community discussions. It includes a note: 'Important: no support questions here!'. Topics include 'News and announcements' (1678 posts), 'General discussion' (23643 posts), 'Drupal showcase' (4398 posts), and 'Events' (330 posts).
- Services**: A container for paid or for-pay Drupal services. Topics include 'Hosting support' (914 posts) and 'Paid Drupal services' (6161 posts).
- Newsletters**: A container for the Drupal newsletter. It notes: 'The Drupal newsletter is a quarterly publication covering the latest Drupal news. News'.

On the right side, there's a sidebar titled 'New forum topics' containing a list of recent forum posts. At the bottom of the page, there's a 'Done' button.

**Figure 9-14:**  
Part of the  
drupal.org  
forum.

## Configuring your Forum module

In this section, I show you how to create containers and then how to create forums both with and without containers. Finally, I show you how to add existing forums to new containers, move forums to different containers, and remove containers.

### *Creating containers*

To create a forum with containers, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Content management**→**Forums**.

This opens the List tab of the Forum settings page. Because you don't yet have any containers or forums, you see the message "There are no existing containers or forums."

2. Click on the **Add container** tab.

This opens the Add container form, shown in Figure 9-15.

3. Enter a title for your first container.

In my case, I enter **Drupal Help**.

**Figure 9-15:**  
Add container form.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Forums | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/content/forum/add/container>. The page title is 'Home > Administer > Content management > Forums'. On the left, there's a sidebar with user info ('Lynn Beighley') and a navigation menu under 'Administrator' including 'Content management', 'Comments', 'Content', 'Content types', 'Forums', 'Post settings', 'RSS publishing', 'Taxonomy', 'Site building', 'Site configuration', 'User management', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Log out'. The main content area has tabs: 'List', 'Add container' (which is active), 'Add forum', and 'Settings'. A note says: 'By grouping related or similar forums, containers help organize forums. For example, a container named "Food" may hold two forums named "Fruit" and "Vegetables", respectively.' Below this are fields for 'Container name:' (Drupal Help) and 'Description:' (Description and guidelines for forums within this container). There's also a 'Parent:' dropdown set to '<root>' and a 'Weight:' input field with value '0'. A note says: 'Containers are usually placed at the top (root) level, but may also be placed inside another container or forum.' At the bottom is a 'Save' button. The right sidebar includes sections for 'Recent comments', 'Syndicate', 'Who's new' (Lynn, Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (1 user, 0 guests), and 'Online users' (Lynn Beighley). The footer says 'drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010'.

#### 4. Enter a description of this container.

This text will show up under the container title. Look back at Figure 9-14. One of the containers is named Services, and the description is the text under it, “Paid or for pay Drupal services.” The description is optional.

#### 5. Click Save.

#### 6. Add more containers by repeating Steps 2 through 5 until you have all the containers you need.

For this example, I created three containers: About the Book, Drupal Help, and Drupal Sites.

When you finish, all your containers will show up under the Administer→Content management→Forums→List tab. From this page, you can:

- Re-order your containers by dragging them in the list.
- Edit container information by clicking Edit.
- Delete a container by clicking Edit and then the Delete button.



### ***Creating forums***

To create a new forum, follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→Content management→Forums.

This opens the List tab of the Forum settings page.

2. Click on the Add forum tab.

This opens the Add forum form, shown in Figure 9-16.

3. Enter a title for your forum.

If you are using containers, the topic should fit under one of these. In my case, I create a forum called *Look at my site*. This will be a forum where visitors to my site can post the Drupal sites they build and get comments and praise.

The screenshot shows the 'Add forum' form in the Drupal administrative interface. The URL in the browser is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/content/forum/add/forum>.

**Left sidebar (User menu):**

- Drupal
- Lynn Beighley
  - My account
  - Create content
  - Administrator
  - Content management
    - Comments
    - Content
    - Content types
    - Forums
    - Post settings
    - RSS publishing
    - Taxonomy
  - Site building
  - Site configuration
  - User management
  - Reports
  - Help
  - Log out

**Main Content Area:**

**Forum name:**

Short but meaningful name for this collection of threaded discussions.

**Description:**

Description and guidelines for discussions within this forum.

**Parent:**

Forums may be placed at the top (root) level, or inside another container or forum.

**Weight:**

Forums are displayed in ascending order by weight (forums with equal weights are displayed alphabetically).

**Buttons:**

- 
- 

drupalfordummies.com @2009-2010

**Right Sidebar (Widgets):**

- Recent comments**
  - I'm in favor
  - 4 weeks 3 days ago
- Syndicate**
- Who's new**
  - Lynn
  - Lynn Beighley
- Who's online**

There are currently 1 user and 0 guests online.
- Online users**
  - Lynn Beighley

**Figure 9-16:**  
Add forum  
form.

**4. Enter a description of this forum.**

This description will appear on the forum page. The description is optional, but it does help your visitors understand what should be posted in this forum.

**5. If you are using containers, choose the appropriate one from the Parent drop-down box. Leave this selection unchanged if you are not using containers.**

In my case, I choose a container named *Drupal sites*.

**6. Click Save.****7. Add more forums by repeating Steps 2 through 7 until you have all the forums you need.*****Changing forum and container organization***

After you create your forums (and optionally, your containers), you can move forums from one container to another or take them out of containers entirely. There are two ways to change the container a forum is in. To do it the first way, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Content management→Forums→List tab.**
- 2. Click on the edit link next to the forum you want to change.**
- 3. Change the Parent drop-down box to the new container or select <Root> to leave the forum out of all containers.**
- 4. If you wish, modify the name or description of this forum to be more appropriate for the new container.**
- 5. Click Save.**

The second way of moving forums around is a bit easier but doesn't give you the chance to change the forum name or description. To use this method, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Content management→Forums→List tab.**
- 2. Click on the small cross icon to the left of the forum you want to change, and drag it under the new container.**
- 3. If you want to take it out of all containers, drag it to the top of the list.**



When you remove a container with forums in it, they don't get deleted. Instead, they are located outside of any containers.

## Viewing your forums

I imagine that you are ready to see the containers and forums you created. To view them, you need to create a forum topic. Follow these steps:

### 1. Choose **Create content**→**Forum topic**.

This opens the Create Forum topic page (see Figure 9-17).

The screenshot shows the 'Create Forum topic' page in a web browser. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/node/add/forum>. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with 'Create content' expanded, containing 'Blog entry', 'Forum topic', 'Page', and 'Story'. The main content area has a 'Subject:' field with placeholder text 'What do you think of my site?'. A 'Forums:' dropdown is set to 'Look at my site'. The 'Body:' rich text editor contains a message: 'Please visit my new Drupal site, <http://drupalfordummies.com>, and tell me what you think. Thanks!'. Below the body are several expandable sections: 'Input format', 'Revision information', 'Comment settings', 'Authoring information', and 'Publishing options'. The right sidebar includes a 'Recent comments' section with a single entry ('I'm in favor' posted 4 weeks 4 days ago), a 'Syndicate' section with an RSS icon, a 'Who's new' section listing 'Lynn' and 'Lynn Beighley', a 'Who's online' section stating 'There are currently 1 user and 0 guests online', and an 'Online users' section listing 'Lynn Beighley'.

**Figure 9-17:**  
Create  
Forum topic  
page.



By now, this form should seem very familiar. With the exception of the Forums drop-down list, it's the same as the story, page, or blog content creation forms. The settings I discuss in earlier chapters (including Menu settings, Input format, and Publishing options) apply to this forum topic post as well.

**2. Create a subject and body that make sense for posting in one of the forums you created.**

In my example, I create a post that shows off a new Drupal site.

**3. Choose the appropriate forum from the Forums drop-down list.**

I chose *Look at my site*.



You can tell the containers from the forums in this list. The forums all have a dash in front of their names to indicate they are underneath containers in the hierarchy.

You can choose a container from this list rather than a forum, but then your post would be out of place. It would show up under a container but outside of a forum. You should test this out and see the results for yourself.

**4. When you are finished, press Save.**

To see your containers and forums, browse to </forum> under your domain name. In my case, it is <http://drupalfordummies.com/forum> (see Figure 9-18).

**Figure 9-18:**  
The forum  
page with  
containers  
and forums  
shown.

After you are on your main forum page, you can see posted forum topics by clicking on forums that contain posts. In Figure 9-18, you can see that a post exists under the forum *Look at my site*.

To see the individual forum topic posts, click on the forum title. In my case, when I click on the forum *Look at my site*, I end up on the forum topic list shown in Figure 9-19.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/forum/4>. The page title is "Look at my site | Drupal For Dummies.com". The main content area displays a forum topic titled "What do you think of my site?". The topic was created 25 min ago by Lynn Beighley and has 0 replies. The sidebar on the left shows a user profile for Lynn Beighley with links to account settings, content creation, administrator tools, and log out. The sidebar also includes links for "For Dummies", "Lynn's Drupal Blog", "Forums", and "Contact Me". The right sidebar contains sections for "Recent comments", "Syndicate" (RSS feed), "Who's new" (Lynn, Lynn Beighley), and "Who's online" (1 user, 0 guests). The footer of the page shows the URL [@2009-2010](http://drupalfordummies.com).

**Figure 9-19:**  
An individual forum topic.



Although I went to the trouble of creating this topic by choosing Create content→Forum topic, the easy way to create new forum topics is to drill down into the forum and click the Post new forum topic link, shown in Figure 9-19.

Unlike containers and forums, forum topics exist to allow discussion. To view a forum topic and reply to it, click on the link to the topic. In Figure 9-19, clicking on the link *What do you think of my site* takes you to a page where you can comment on this topic.



By default, only the administrator can create containers and forums. Signed-in users can create forum topics and add a comment to a forum topic thread.

## Linking to your Forum module

Just like with the blog I created earlier in this chapter, there is no main link to the Forum module. To add a link to your main Forum module page to the Primary links menu, follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer → Site building → Menus.
2. Locate and click on the menu to which you want to add your forum link.

I chose Primary links menu.

3. Click on the Add item tab.
4. In the Path field, enter the URL of your main forum page.

In my case, it is `http://drupalfordummies.com/forum`.

5. In the Menu link title, enter the text you want for your link.

In my case, I enter *Forums*. Enter a description if you wish.

6. Click Save.

You are now on the List items page.

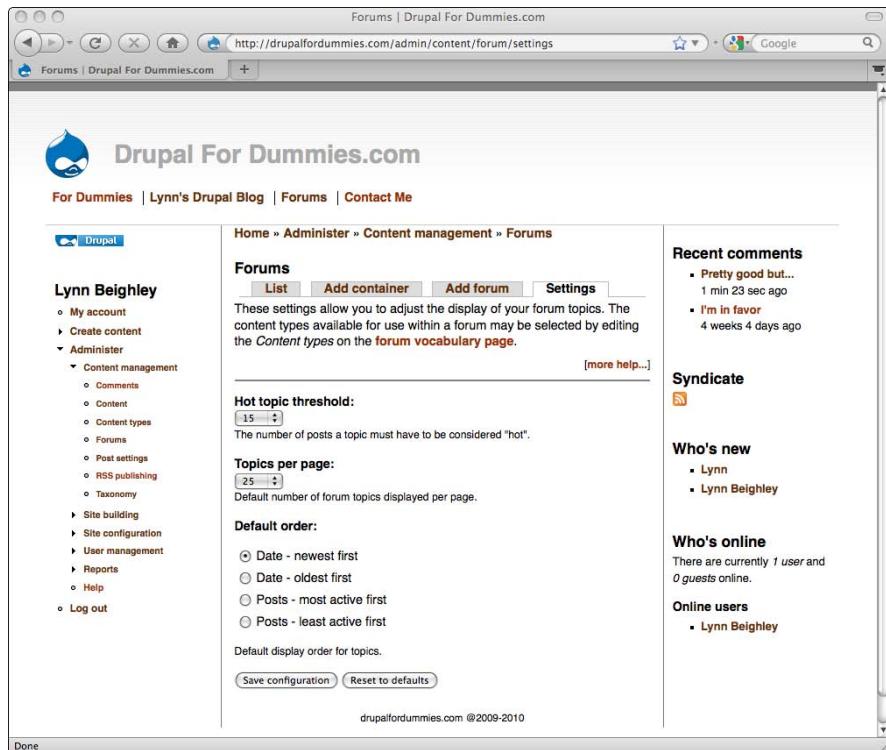
7. Arrange your links in the order you want them by dragging them in the list, and then click Save configuration.

## Changing forum topics settings

You have some control over the behavior of your forum topics. To access the forum topic settings, click the Administer → Content management → Forums → Settings tab (see Figure 9-20).

On this page, you can control the

- ✓ **Hot topic threshold:** When a topic reaches a certain number of postings, a small graphic is displayed, indicating that it is popular. This setting controls how many posts it takes to become a hot topic.
- ✓ **Topics per page:** You can limit the number of topics shown on a page here. If the total number of topics is greater, a Next link will appear.
- ✓ **Default order:** This is the order in which topics will appear on the page.



**Figure 9-20:**  
Settings  
for forum  
topics.

## Managing forum permissions

Registered users can comment on forum topics. But right now, you are the only one who can post forum topics. Because the point of having a forum is to elicit discussion from visitors to your site, you may want to allow other people to post forum topics. This is controlled by the permissions settings for the Forum module. Open the Permissions page by choosing Administer→User management→Permissions. Scroll down to the Forum module settings. These are:

- ✓ **Administer forums:** Grants permission to create, edit, and delete containers and forums.
- ✓ **Create forum topics:** User is permitted to create new forum topic.
- ✓ **Delete any forum topic:** Grants permission to delete all forum topics, not just ones created by this user.



- ✓ **Delete own forum topics:** User can delete only forum topics he created.
  - ✓ **Edit any forum topic:** User can edit all forum topics, not just his own.
  - ✓ **Edit own forum topics:** User can edit only forum topics he has created.
- If you trust your authenticated users not to abuse the privilege, allow them to create forum topics, delete own forum topics, and edit own forum topics.

## Managing the Comments Module

The commenting system used by the Forum module and all the other content types is contained in another module, called the Comment module. As things stand, authenticated users can comment on any content on your site that allows comments.



Every time you create content, be it a page, story, blog entry, or forum post, you can select whether to allow comments. It's located on each content creation page in a section called Comment settings. There you can decide if no comments are allowed, new comments are allowed, or existing comments can be read, but no new ones added.

### Moderating comments

Sometimes you might prefer to moderate comments. This means that comments people make aren't published. Instead, they are kept in a list for you to approve or delete. To turn on comment moderation, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer → User management → Permissions.**
- 2. Under the Comment module section, uncheck the *post comments without approval* check box under *authenticated user*.**
- 3. Click Save permissions.**

Now each time a registered user posts a comment, she will see the message *Your comment has been queued for moderation by site administrators and will be published after approval.*

This comment will not be published until you approve it. To go through the list of comments waiting for you to moderate, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer → Content management → Comments → Approval queue (see Figure 9-21).**

The screenshot shows the Drupal For Dummies.com website. The URL in the browser is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/content/comment/approval>. The main content area displays a table of comments that need approval. The table has columns for Subject, Author, Posted in, Time, and Operations. The operations column contains links for 'edit' and 'delete'. The 'Operations' column for the first comment shows 'edit' and 'delete' links. The 'Operations' column for the second comment shows 'edit' and 'delete' links. The 'Operations' column for the third comment shows 'edit' and 'delete' links.

Subject	Author	Posted in	Time	Operations
Color and content	Lynn	What do you think of my site?	08/23/2009 - 21:16	<a href="#">edit</a>
Pretty good but...	Lynn	What do you think of my Beighley site?	08/23/2009 - 20:25	<a href="#">edit</a>
I'm in favor	Lynn	Welcome to Beighley DrupalForDummies.com	07/22/2009 - 18:56	<a href="#">edit</a>

**Figure 9-21:**  
Approval  
queue with  
comments  
to be  
moderated.

2. Hold your cursor over the **Subject** line. The text of the comment will appear.
3. You can also click on the **comment link**. You can delete or edit this comment.
4. Click your browser's Back button to return to the Approval queue.
5. If you approve a comment, click the check box next to it.
6. Make sure **Update options** is set to *Publish the selected comments*.
7. Click **Update**.



You can also select multiple comments and delete them at the same time by clicking the check boxes for the comments you want to delete, setting the Update options drop-down to *Delete the selected comments*, and clicking Update.

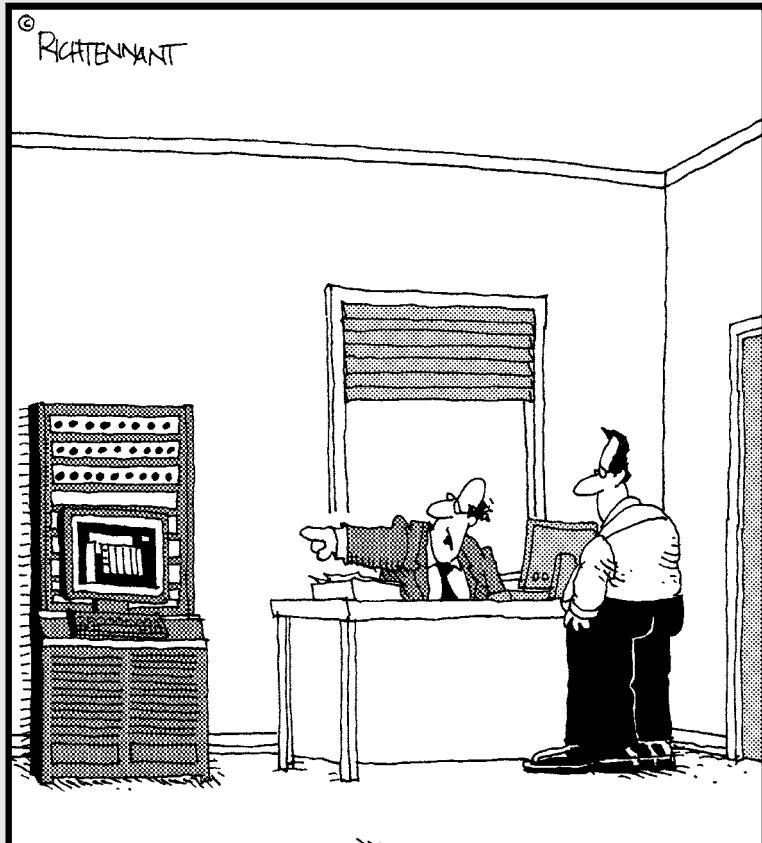


# Part III

# Bending Drupal to Your Will

The 5<sup>th</sup> Wave

By Rich Tennant



"We've got a machine over there that monitors our quality control. If it's not working, just give it a couple of kicks."

## *In this part . . .*

There has to be more to Drupal than what you've seen so far. And there is. The chapters in this part take you deeper into Drupal administration. You dive into all those hidden but important nooks and crannies of the administration menus. You turn on more modules to help you keep tight control of your site. And you learn how to customize existing themes to make it truly yours.

# **Chapter 10**

---

# **Advanced Administration**

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Getting new themes and modules
  - ▶ Maintaining Drupal
  - ▶ Monitoring your site
  - ▶ Setting up a cron
- 

**U**p to this point, if you've read the chapters in sequence, you have only touched the surface of administering your Drupal site. To make sure everything runs smoothly, you need to keep your software up to date. The Drupal community frequently comes out with updates. In this chapter, I show you how to keep your site protected by upgrading when necessary. Also, there are many administrative features you have not seen yet that extend your control over your site. You can monitor what visitors do when they come to your site, which can help you fine-tune your content.

Consider this chapter the next level in understanding how Drupal works.

## ***Adding New Themes and Modules***

Chapter 7 discusses how to change the default Drupal theme to a different one, also preinstalled. Chapter 9 shows how to add a blog and forum using modules that are also preinstalled.

One of the best things about Drupal is that developers are constantly contributing new themes and new modules. You can extend Drupal's functionality in incredible ways by adding new modules. You can create an incredibly professional-looking site in minutes by finding the right theme.

Follow these steps to add new contributed modules and themes to your site:

- 1. Locate a new module or theme you want to use on your site.**
- 2. Download the new module or theme to your local computer.**  
It will be a .zip or .tar.gz file.
- 3. Upload the new module or theme to a specific folder on the Web server where Drupal is running.**
- 4. Extract the new module or theme file.**
- 5. Delete the original .zip or .tar.gz file.**
- 6. Enable the new module or theme on your Drupal site.**
- 7. Customize your new module or theme as desired.**

The first step in extending Drupal is to find new modules and themes.

## Locating themes and modules

For new modules and themes, it's easy to head over to [drupal.org](http://drupal.org) and click on the Modules or Themes links on the top right corner of the page to browse around (see Figure 10-1).



**Figure 10-1:**  
Drupal.org  
has links  
to user-  
contributed  
modules  
and themes.



You can find especially popular modules and themes on drupal.org by clicking on the Usage statistics link under the Sort by block on the upper-right side of both the Modules and Themes pages. This lists the modules or themes in order of the most frequently downloaded to the least.

Chapters 16 and 17 contain links to some great sites to visit to find new modules and themes.

## Downloading modules and themes

After you find a module or theme you want, look for a link to download it. Most of the time the module or theme will download as a single compressed, .tar.gz or .zip file. Save this file to a directory you will remember.



You should take a look at the documentation about the new module or theme. This documentation is generally available from the page with the download link and may contain detailed help to get the new theme or module up and running.

## Installing modules and themes

Your module or theme comes as a single, compressed .zip file, but it actually consists of many files and folders. All of these files need to be located in a Web directory under your Drupal directory on your Web server.

You can upload the single .zip file to either the modules or themes directory under your Drupal installation on most ISPs. You can extract it after you have uploaded it to save you from having to upload a bunch of individual files.



In Chapter 2, when you install Drupal, I show you how to upload using a program called Fileman. Your ISP may have a different but similar program that handles file management. If you know how to use an FTP program, you may find that easier.

To upload the compressed file, follow these steps:

- 1. Locate the e-mail from your ISP that has your username, password, and login information. Browse to the ISP's site and logon.**
- 2. Find and click on the link to a file manager.**

You need a file manager so that you can select the .zip file and put it in the correct directory on your ISP's site. After you click the file manager, you will see a screen that displays the files on your ISP's Web server.

**3. You should see a single folder or directory named `html`, `www`, or `htdocs`. Click on its name to open it.**

There may be several directories, but the one for your Web site should be easy to spot. This is where all your Web pages belong and where you need to install Drupal.

**4. If you see a folder named Modules and one named Themes, click on the appropriate one.**

This means that Drupal is installed in the root directory of your site.

**5. If you didn't see the Modules and Themes directories, look for a directory named Drupal. Click on it.**

You should now see the Modules and Themes directories.

**6. If you downloaded a module, click on the Modules directory to enter it. If you downloaded a theme, click on the Themes directory.**

**7. Locate and click on the upload link on your file manager.**

You should see an upload form with a Browse button.

**8. Click Browse and find the module or theme `.tar.gz` or `.zip` file you downloaded, then click Upload.**

Your file is now on your site and in the correct folder. But you still need to extract it.

## *Extracting module or theme files*

The file extensions `.zip` or `.tar.gz` indicate that many files are compressed into a single file. File managers can extract your compressed file for you.

Following is an example of how it works. Your version may differ, so contact your ISP for help if you can't find the same functions on your file manager. Follow these steps to extract compressed files:

**1. Find the module or theme `.tar.gz` (or `.zip`) file you just uploaded to the Modules or Themes directory and select it. Click on the filename to open the file.**

You will see a list of files that are stored inside your zip file. They will all be selected.

**2. You should see an option to uncompress your files. Leave the selection box set to uncompress All and click the Go button.**

This will uncompress your single `.zip` file into a folder with the same name. You will now see both the compressed file (for example,

supercoolmodule.tar.gz) and the uncompressed files in a new directory (for example, a folder named supercoolmodule).

**3. Select the original .tar.gz or .zip file on your Web server and delete it.**

Be careful to delete only the new module or theme compressed file and nothing else.



Take a look inside the folder containing your new theme or module. If you see files named INSTALL.txt or README.txt, there may be more steps you have to follow for that specific module or theme. You need to read the instructions in that file. You may be able to view it through the file manager on your Web server. If not, the file manager can send a copy of the file to your desktop so that you can open it in Notepad (Windows) orTextEdit (Mac).

## *Enabling themes and modules*

After you have uploaded and extracted your new theme or module, Drupal will see it and it will show up in your theme list or module list.

For example, I downloaded the Acquia Slate from a link on the drupal.org site under themes. I then uploaded it to my Web server under the directory /themes. I extracted it and deleted the original acquia\_slate.tar.gz file.

Now I'm ready to enable it and use it on my site. To do this, I follow these steps:

**1. Browse to Administer→Site building→Themes.**

The themes are in alphabetical order, so my new one, Acquia Slate, is at the top of the list (see Figure 10-2).

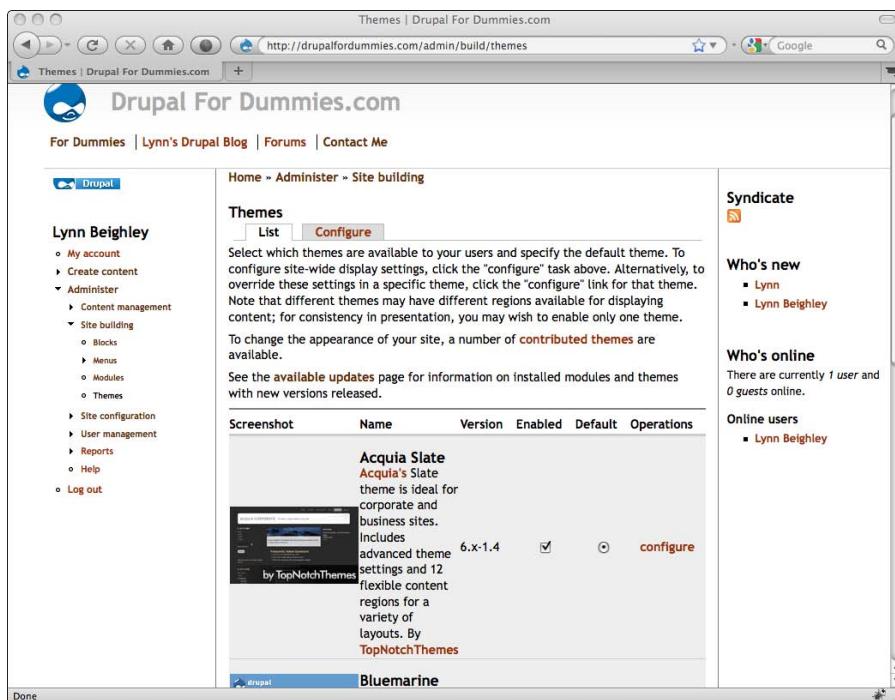
**2. Select the Enabled check box and select the Default radio button next to the new theme.**

**3. Choose Save configuration.**

My new theme is now being used.

You can activate a new module in exactly the same way, except you browse to Administer→Site building→Modules. Since you can run multiple modules at once, there is no Default radio button. Select the Enabled check box next to your new module and then choose Save configuration.

**Figure 10-2:**  
Enabling  
and  
activating  
a newly  
installed  
theme.



## Disabling themes and modules

To disable a module or theme, you need only select the Enabled check box on the Administer→Site building→Modules or Administer→Site building→Themes page.

## Keeping Drupal Up to Date

By now, you may be seeing a warning message on your site that says

*No information is available about potential new releases for currently installed modules and themes. To check for updates, you may need to run cron or you can check manually. Please note that checking for available updates can take a long time, so please be patient.*

Drupal is designed to automatically check for updates. You don't have to allow it, and by default, it may not be able to. You have two options. One is

to click on the link in that warning message above that says *check manually*. This tells Drupal to check for updates for the main Drupal software as well as any updates to installed modules and themes.

You may decide to check manually, but Drupal is designed to check for updates frequently, because there are frequent updates you need to be aware of and install. To save yourself from checking manually, you can set up an automated process to check for you.



Drupal is designed to work with a small program or command called *cron* that exists on some Web servers running a UNIX operating system. You may have permission to access through your control panel your ISP provides you. In general, it may be easier to follow the instructions below and install a module called Poormanscron that emulates a cron command.

## ***Setting up Poormanscron***

Here's your chance to put your module installation skills to use. To install the Poormanscron module, follow these steps:

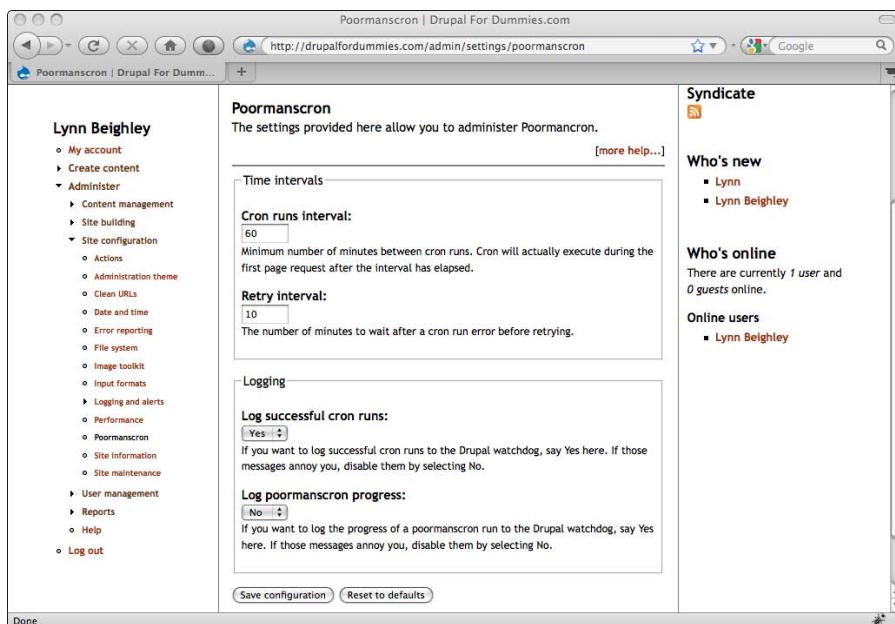
- 1. Begin by getting the most recent version of Poormanscron from <http://drupal.org/project/poormanscron>.**
- 2. Upload it to your Drupal modules directory.**
- 3. Extract it.**
- 4. Delete the `.tar.gz` file.**
- 5. Choose Administer → Site building → Modules. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click the Enabled button.**
- 6. Choose Save configuration.**

Now that you have installed and enabled Poormanscron, you won't see the cron warning message. But you may want to tweak some of the settings for this module. Choose Administer → Site configuration → Poormanscron. You see the settings for this module (see Figure 10-3).



Drupal uses the cron for more than just checking for updated software. It is also for syndicating information from your site at specific times and retrieving syndicated RSS feeds from other sites or any process that has to happen at specific times. As you add new modules, some of them will use a cron to operate correctly. The settings for Poormanscron apply to any module that depends on a cron.

**Figure 10-3:**  
Settings for  
Poorman  
scron.



These settings are

- ✓ **Cron runs interval:** This is how often Drupal will run. It won't actually run every 60 minutes (the default setting), but after 60 minutes, the first time someone visits the site it will run.
- ✓ **Retry interval:** If for some reason a cron job fails, this is how many minutes until it should try again.
- ✓ **Log successful cron runs:** You can keep track of each time your cron runs successfully. To see the log, choose Administer→Reports→Recent log entries.
- ✓ **Log Poormanscron progress:** This will post more specific feedback about what the cron is actually doing when it runs to the report at Administer→Reports→Recent log entries.

## Finding available updates

Drupal updates come out every 9 to 12 months. That applies to the main Drupal software, which includes the Core modules. But as you add more contributed modules and themes, the likelihood of needing to perform updates increases.

Updating a module or theme is an easier task than updating the Drupal software. Still, you need to know how to accomplish both. I start by showing you how to

find out what you need to update, then show you how to update themes and module. Finally, I go through how to update the Drupal software itself.

It all begins by discovering what is out of date. Fortunately, that part is easy.

Choose Administer→Reports→Available updates. This page shows you the status of your Drupal software as well as individual listings for every extra module and theme you have installed (see Figure 10-4).

Even better, when your software is out of date, links to the newer versions appear on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Available updates' page in a Drupal 6 environment. The main content area displays a table of installed modules and themes, each with its status (e.g., 'Up to date') and a green checkmark. The modules listed include Poormanscron 6.x-1.0, Acquia Slate 6.x-1.4, and several core Drupal components. The themes section also lists Acquia Slate 6.x-1.4. A sidebar on the right provides information about who is currently online, showing 'Lynn Beighley' as the only user.

**Figure 10-4:**  
Status of  
all installed  
modules  
and themes.

## Protecting Your Database

Before you update anything, you need to back up the database behind your Drupal site. By doing this, you safeguard all the work you have done on your site. Your database contains:

- ✓ All content you have put on your site.
- ✓ Settings for everything you have customized.
- ✓ All user information, including logons and passwords.

Updates are necessary but dangerous. Backing up your database is not difficult, and it's worth the few minutes it takes.

## *Backing up your database*

To back up your database, follow these steps:

1. Log on to your control panel, provided by your ISP.
2. Locate and click the phpMyAdmin icon.

You see the phpMyAdmin interface (see Figure 10-5).



Although it's extremely common, not every ISP has phpMyAdmin. If you don't have the phpMyAdmin application, contact your ISP and find out what resources they have provided for backing up your database manually.

3. Click the Export link.

This opens the Export database screen shown in Figure 10-6.

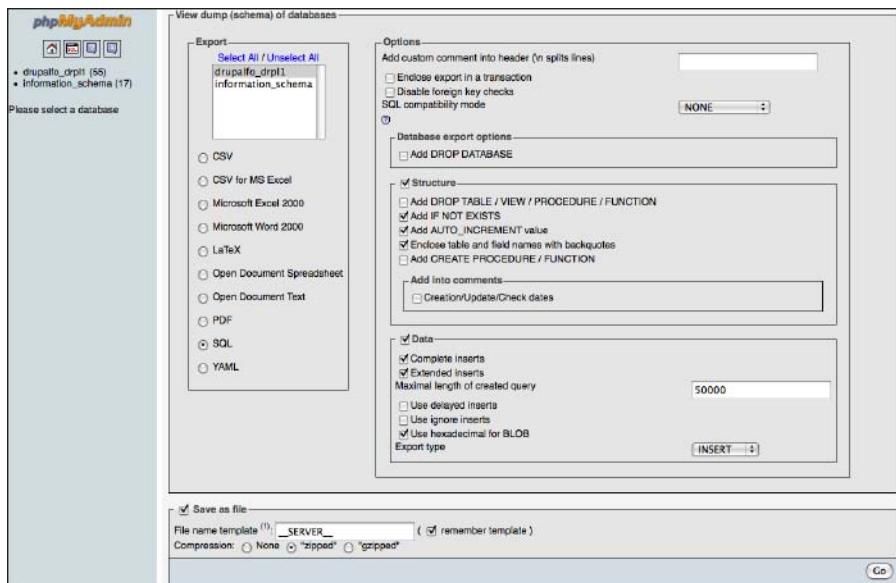
4. Under the Export section, select the Drupal database.

There may be two databases in your list. The Drupal database may be named with your username on your ISP site, or it may have Drupal in its name.



Chapter 2 shows how to create a database for Drupal. The database name you use for the database you create is the one to choose in this step.

**Figure 10-5:**  
The php  
MyAdmin  
interface.



**Figure 10-6:**  
The Export  
database  
screen of  
phpMy  
Admin.

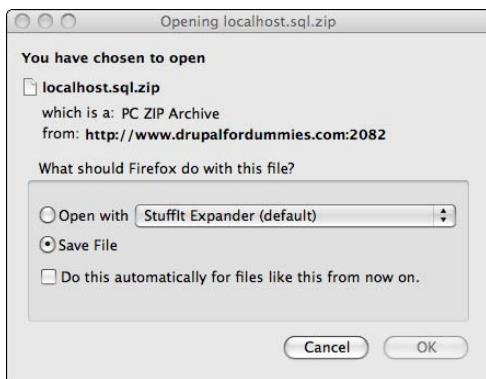
5. Under the database name, select the SQL radio button.
6. Under Options section, check these boxes: *Structure*, *Add IF NOT EXISTS*, *Add AUTO\_INCREMENT value*, and *Enclose table and field names with backquotes*.
7. Also under the Options section, check these boxes: *Data*, *Complete inserts*, *Extended inserts*, and *Use hexadecimal for BLOB Export type*.
8. At the bottom of this page, select Save as File.
9. For compression, choose “zipped.”
10. Click the Go button.

You may have to wait for a few minutes, but you will be prompted to save a file (see Figure 10-7). This file is your database backup file, which you will need if you ever have to restore your database.



By default, this file has a generic name, such as `localhost.sql.zip`. Rename this file so that later you will recognize what it is, and then save it in a location you will remember. You may want to use the date as part of the filename so you can always select the most recent backup if you do have to restore your database.

**Figure 10-7:**  
Download  
your  
database  
backup file.



## *Restoring your database*

Should you ever have to restore your database because you have lost your data, here are the basic steps for restoring it.



I highly recommend you consult your ISP's documentation for specific instructions on restoring a database. There's a good chance that you won't have the appropriate permissions, and the instructions below won't work for you. If you do have the appropriate permissions, follow these steps:

**1. Using the phpMyAdmin application, choose the Drupal database from the menu on the left.**

**2. Click the Operations tab.**

**3. Type a name into the Rename database to box and click Go.**

Your new database will have the same name as your old one, so you need to save your old one with a new name. You will delete this old database when you are done.

Your ISP may have restricted you from dropping databases. If this is the case, this step will fail. You need to contact your ISP and let them know that you need to restore your database and send them the backup file.

**4. Click the Operations tab.**

**5. Browse to the location of the database .zip file containing your Drupal database backup and select it. Click Go.**

Your database should now be restored.



## Updating Themes and Modules

Suppose I want to upgrade the module Author Pane I installed. The Available updates page in Figure 10-4 shows that it's out of date. I have the link to download the new version right there on that page. To upgrade, I need to follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules (or Themes). Scroll to the bottom of the page and deselect the Enabled check box next to the module or theme to be updated. Choose Save configuration.
2. Find the old module or theme to be upgraded on the Web server using some kind of file manager program.

This may be through a control panel on your ISP's site. If you are comfortable using FTP, it will also work. In my case, it will be located under my Drupal directory at /modules/authorpane.

3. Back up these old files.

The easiest way is to copy them to your desktop machine. The idea here is that you want to keep a copy just in case something goes wrong with your upgrade so you can restore the old files.

4. After you make a copy of these files, delete the ones on your Web server.

Be *extremely careful* that you are deleting only the files inside the folder of the module or theme you are upgrading.

5. Delete the now empty folder on your Web server. In my case, I delete the authorpane folder.

6. Copy the new .tar.gz for your module or theme to the appropriate folder as though you are installing it.

You are now following the steps you took when you installed your module in the first place.

7. Extract the new .tar.gz.

8. Delete the .tar.gz file.

9. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules. Scroll to the bottom of the page and select the Enabled check box.

10. Choose Save configuration.

There's one last step. You need to run the update.php file.



## *Run update.php*

Anytime you upgrade a module, or update your Drupal software, you need to run a program called `update.php`. To do this, log on as administrator and browse to the `update.php` file on your Web site. It will be located at `http://yourwebsitenamehere.com/update.php`. For example, mine is at `http://drupalfordummies.com/update.php`. You will see a page listing steps you need to follow (see Figure 10-8).

There are three steps to follow before clicking that Continue button.

✓ **Back up your database.**

See the section “Backing up your database,” earlier in this chapter, for instructions.

✓ **Back up your code.**

For this step, you make a copy of your entire Drupal directory on your Web server.



You can copy the code using a file manager application on the control panel at your ISP’s site. Or you can use an FTP program. The basic idea is to copy all of the Drupal code somewhere safe. Your best bet is to make a copy on your local computer that you can easily delete after you have confirmed that the update ran as expected.

✓ **Put your site in maintenance mode.**

Choose Administer→Site Configuration→Site maintenance and select Offline. Choose Save configuration.

Now you are ready to run `update.php`. Follow these steps:

**1. Browse to your site’s `update.php`. Choose Continue.**

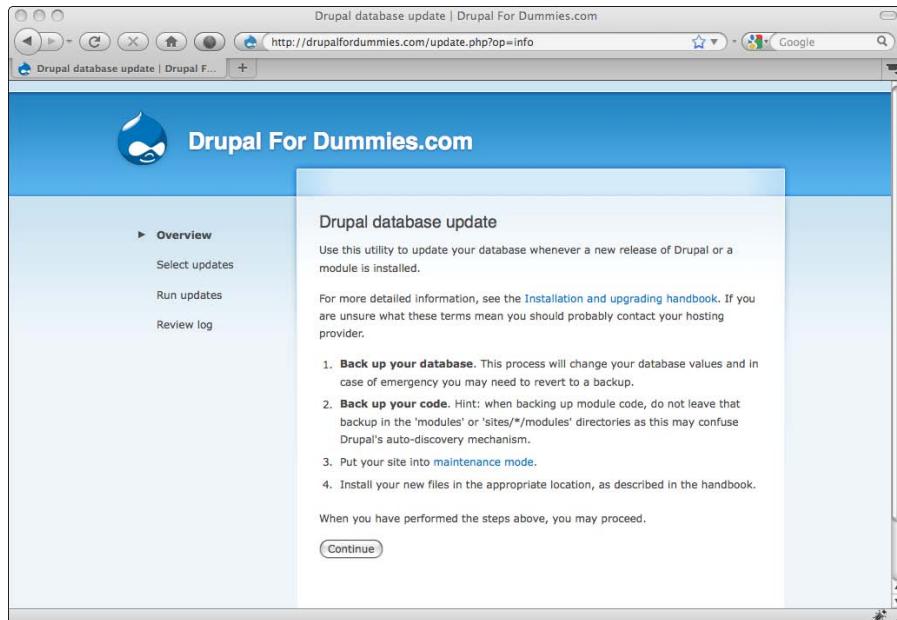
**2. Choose the Select versions menu to open it (see Figure 10-9).**

This screen shows you any available updates for the current version of Drupal you are using.

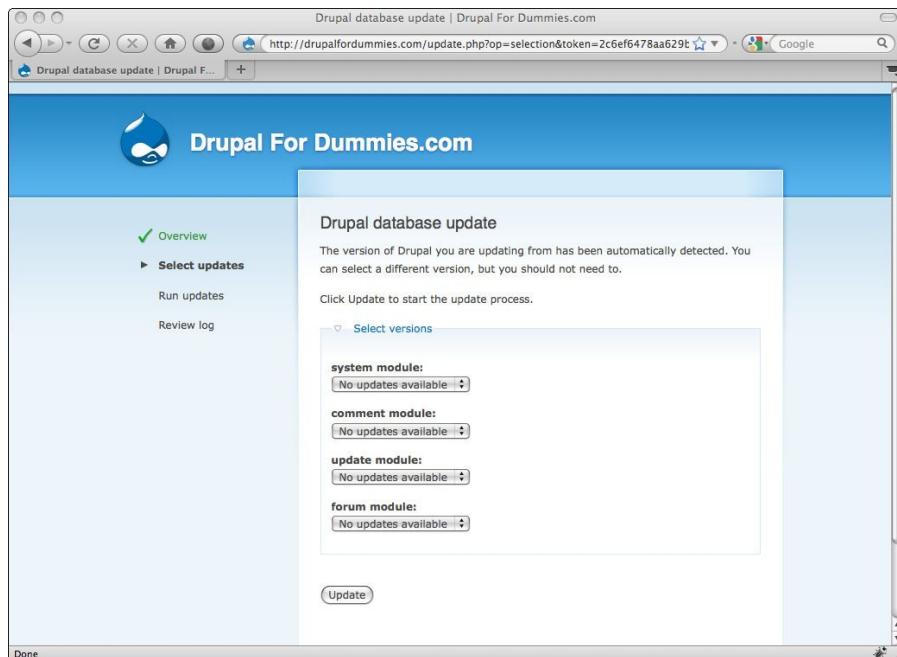
**3. Choose Update.**

Any updates you chose on the last screen will be made.

**4. Choose Administer→Site Configuration→Site maintenance and select Online. Choose Save configuration.**



**Figure 10-8:**  
Steps to  
follow  
before  
running  
update.php.



**Figure 10-9:**  
The  
update.php  
program  
finds  
available  
updates.

## Updating your Drupal software

You already know two of the big pieces involved in updating your Drupal software: backing up your database and running `update.php`. In this section, I put it all together for you.

Before updating, you need to decide which of these applies to you:

- ✓ You installed Drupal using Fantastico. You have not installed any contributed modules or themes.
- ✓ You installed Drupal using Fantastico. You have installed contributed modules or themes.
- ✓ You installed Drupal yourself by getting a copy from [drupal.org](http://drupal.org).

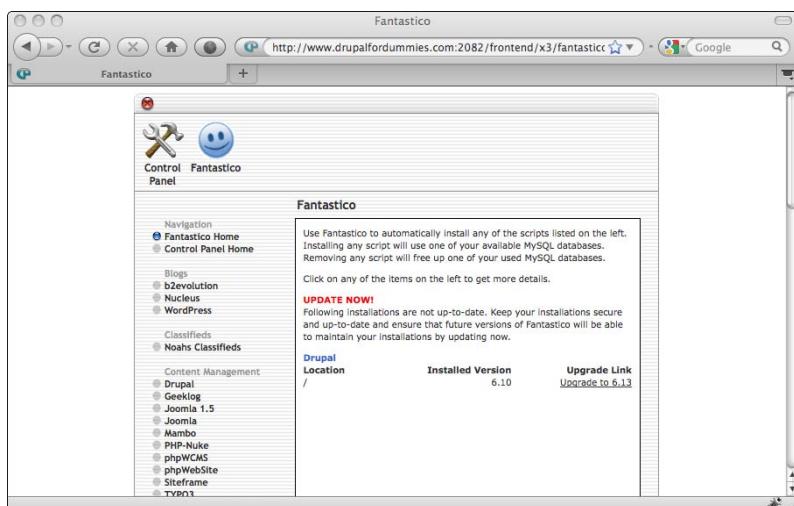
### *Installed Drupal with Fantastico, no additional modules or themes*

This is the simplest scenario. Because you haven't installed any additional modules, Fantastico can easily update your site for you.



There is often a delay between when a new Drupal update comes out and when Fantastico can upgrade for you. You may have to wait a few days and periodically check.

To find out whether you can upgrade, visit the control panel on your ISP and click Fantastico. If you can update your Drupal installation, you will see a message to that effect (see Figure 10-10).



**Figure 10-10:**  
Fantastico  
message  
indicating  
Drupal  
software  
upgrade.

After you click on the Update link, you will see this message:

*If you have modified the files, languages, themes or if you have added any third-party modifications to this installation of Drupal, it is possible that you may need to re-install your themes and/or reapply your custom changes after using Fantastico to upgrade. We take no responsibility for the integrity of custom modified installations after Fantastico upgrades them. We recommend that you make your own backup of your database and script directory before proceeding even though Fantastico will automatically make one before upgrading.*



Fantastico works well if you haven't done much with your site. After you begin customizing things, however, Fantastico may not be able to restore the changes. For this reason, you need to back up your database.

### ***Installed Drupal with Fantastico, added modules or themes***

After you add additional modules or themes, Fantastico may no longer be able to adequately manage updates to your Drupal software. Instead, you need to begin managing your updates manually. Follow the directions under the next section, Installed Drupal by yourself.

### ***Installed Drupal by yourself***

To update Drupal, follow these steps:

**1. Back up your database** (see the section "Backing up your database, earlier in this chapter).

**2. Copy your entire Drupal site to another location.**

Don't make a copy of your Drupal site and store it inside your Drupal site. Make sure it's outside of your entire Drupal directory, preferably not even on your Web server. You can always upload it back to the Web server later if you need to.

**3. Choose Administer → Site Configuration → Site maintenance and select Off-line. Choose Save configuration.**

**4. Choose Administer → Site Building → Modules and uncheck any contributed modules. Leave the Core module settings as they are.**

**5. Choose Administer → Site Building → Themes and choose one of the themes that was installed with Drupal originally, such as Garland.**

**6. Get the new version of Drupal from drupal.org.**

**7. Use a file manager or FTP program to copy the new files to your Drupal directory.**

Transferring files is very much the same process you followed when you installed Drupal in the first place. Take a look at Chapter 2 for specific instructions on getting your files on your Web server.





If you browse to your site right now, you will see the original installation script I discuss in Chapter 2 when you install Drupal. **Do not run this program.** You are updating, not installing, and running this can destroy information stored in your database.

8. **Browse to the `update.php` on your Web site and click through the program.**
9. **Choose Administer→Site Building→Themes, and then choose your desired theme.**
10. **Choose Administer→Site Building→Modules and enable any contributed modules you wish to use. Leave the Core module settings as they are.**
11. **Browse to the `update.php` on your Web site and click through the program again.** It's important to run `update.php` every time you install a contributed module. Because this is the first time this new Drupal codebase is using the modules, it treats them like a new installation.
12. **Choose Administer→Site Configuration→Site maintenance and select Online. Choose Save configuration.**

## Configuring Your Site

In previous chapters, I briefly mention many of the Drupal site configuration options. Now that you have the basic Drupal concepts down (you did read those other chapters, right?), many of these configuration options will make more sense. In this section, I take a closer look at a few of them.

### Triggering actions

An *action* is some event that happens in response to something. For example, when a new user registers on your site, he is sent an e-mail. The sending of that e-mail is considered an action. The Actions section under Administer→Site configuration shows you a list of available actions and allows you to create custom actions.

The missing piece here is a way to actually use these actions. Behind the scenes, Drupal has code built-in that *triggers* these actions; for example, in the code for new users registering is a trigger that fires off the e-mail action.

The way you can use actions without having to write programming to trigger them is to use the Trigger module. It is a Core-optional module that needs to be enabled to work.

Here's a basic example of how to create a trigger to display a custom message to a user who signs in. You must first create a custom action by following these steps:

1. Choose Administer → Site configuration → Actions.
2. From the *Make a new advanced action available* section, choose *Display a message to the user* and select Create.
3. In the next screen (see Figure 10-11), type this in the message box:

Hi %username, it's good to see you. Let's do lunch sometime.



The %username is a stand-in for the name of the user who just logged on. In other words, if a user with the username Elmer logs on, after you trigger this action, that user will see the message, *Hi Elmer, it's good to see you. Let's do lunch sometime.*

4. Click Save.

The other half of this operation is to set up a trigger to fire off this action when a specific user logs on.

**Configure an advanced action**  
An advanced action offers additional configuration options which may be filled out below. Changing the *Description* field is recommended, in order to better identify the precise action taking place. This description will be displayed in modules such as the trigger module when assigning actions to system events, so it is best if it is as descriptive as possible (for example, "Send e-mail to Moderation Team" rather than simply "Send e-mail").

**Description:**  
Display a message to the user

**Message:** \*

Hi %username, it's good to see you again.

The message to be displayed to the current user. You may include the following variables: %site\_name, %username, %node\_url, %node\_type, %title, %teaser, %body. Not all variables will be available in all contexts.

**Syndicate**

**Who's new**

- Lynn
- Lynn Beighley

**Who's online**

There are currently 1 user and 0 guests online.

**Online users**

- Lynn Beighley

**Figure 10-11:**  
Configure  
an  
advanced  
action page.

**5. Enable the Trigger module from Administer→Site building→Modules.**

**6. Choose Administer→Site building→Triggers.**

**7. Click the Users tab.**

The Triggers page has five tabs along the top. These correspond to the types of activities that happen on your site. Because you want something to happen when a user signs on, the trigger you want is under the Users tab (see Figure 10-12).

**8. Under the trigger *After a user has logged in*, select *Display a message to the user*.**

**9. Click the Assign button next to this box.**

Now when a user logs on, he will see the message, with his username substituted for the %username you put in the action.



To delete a trigger, click the *unassign* link.

Triggers | Drupal For Dummies.com

Triggers | Drupal For Dummies.com

Home » Administer » Site building » Triggers

**Triggers**

Comments Content Cron Taxonomy Users

Triggers are system events, such as when new content is added or when a user logs in. Trigger module combines these triggers with actions (functional tasks), such as unpublishing content or e-mailing an administrator. The Actions settings page contains a list of existing actions and provides the ability to create and configure additional actions.

Below you can assign actions to run when certain user-related triggers happen. For example, you could send an e-mail to an administrator when a user account is deleted.

[more help...]

Trigger: After a user account has been created

Choose an action Assign

Trigger: After a user's profile has been updated

Choose an action Assign

Trigger: After a user has been deleted

Choose an action Assign

Trigger: After a user has logged in

Name	Operation
Display a message to the user	unassign

Choose an action Assign

Trigger: After a user has logged out

No available actions for this trigger.

Trigger: When a user's profile is being viewed

Choose an action Assign

Syndicate

Who's new

- Lynn
- Lynn Beighley

Who's online

There are currently 1 user and 0 guests online.

Online users

- Lynn Beighley

**Figure 10-12:**  
The Users  
tab of the  
Triggers  
module.

## *Setting an administration theme*

As you customize the theme for your particular site, you may find it unsuitable for using when you administer your site. You can set a theme that will be used only when you log on as administrator. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→Site configuration→Administration theme.
2. Choose a new theme from the drop-down menu.
3. Optionally, choose to use the administration theme when creating or editing content. This means that when you choose Create content and create one of the content types, the administration theme is used.
4. Click Save configuration.

## *Creating clean URLs*

Drupal automatically creates URLs for the content you add to the site. If this option is off, the URLs will not be as simple and will contain ? and = characters. For example, a URL without this setting might look like this:

`http://drupalfordummies.com/?q=node/21`

And with clean URLs, it looks like this:

`http://drupalfordummies.com/node/21`

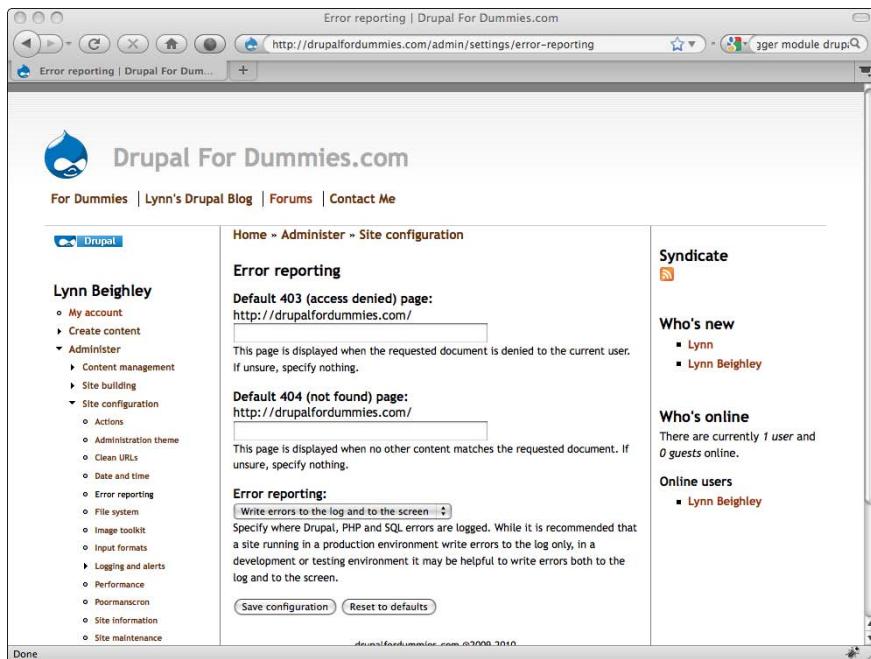
## *Using error reporting*

Sometimes visitors to your site will attempt to browse to a page that doesn't actually exist. This is known as a 404 error. Instead of displaying an ugly page that says Page Not Found, by default Drupal sends the visitor to the home page of your site.

If you have pages on your site that only logged-on users can see, and unregistered visitors try to go to one of those pages, Drupal redirects them to the home page of your site.

The settings that control this behavior are found at Administer→Site configuration→Error Reporting (see Figure 10-13).

**Figure 10-13:**  
Error  
reporting  
settings.



On this form you can change what pages visitors are sent to in the two scenarios above.

The third setting on the page, Error reporting, controls where Drupal writes reports about errors that occur on the site. As you develop your site, it's fine to let the messages show up on the site, but once you start allowing users to register and move out of development, you should change this setting to *Write errors to the log*.

To see logged error messages, choose Administer→Reports→Recent log entries. Clicking on Filter log messages allows you to sort through the messages and locate precisely the ones you are interested in. On the left are the types of errors and on the right are the levels of severity.

## **Chapter 11**

---

# **Customizing Themes**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Understanding theme structure
  - ▶ Modifying a theme
  - ▶ Installing your theme
  - ▶ Customizing your site appearance
- 

**1**

In this chapter, I take you through the anatomy of a simple theme. I show you how to change things to make your site more distinctive. A single chapter on creating a custom Drupal theme can't possibly cover all the details, but you can make a surprising number of changes to a site by taking an existing theme and making a few relatively small changes to it.

If you are a bit familiar with CSS or HTML, you're in luck. Understanding a little PHP code would be great, but if you don't know any of these, you can still modify an existing theme and get great results.

## ***Dissecting a Theme***

Before you begin changing a theme, you need to know how a theme is structured. In this section, I show you the basic structure of a Drupal theme. I use the Bluemarine theme because it contains all of the essential parts of a theme.

To better follow the discussion, you need to enable the Bluemarine theme. You also need to activate the primary menu, which is not visible by default with this theme. Follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Themes.**
- 2. Check the Enabled box and select the Default radio button next to the Bluemarine theme.**
- 3. Click Save configuration.**
- 4. Choose Administer→Site building→Blocks.**

**5. Find the Primary links item in the list and drag it to the top of the Right sidebar section.**

**6. Click Save blocks.**

You can use FTP or your ISP's file manager to look in the themes directory under Drupal and see the files that make up each theme. Look at the bluemarine folder in the themes directory (see Figure 11-1).



**Figure 11-1:**  
The  
Bluemarine  
theme files.

## Theme file types

There are four types of files in the Bluemarine theme:

- ✓ **CSS:** Stands for Cascading Style Sheet. The information in these files controls all the colors, font sizes, font styles, margin widths, and much more.
- ✓ **INFO:** This is a very small text file containing module-specific information.
- ✓ **PHP:** These files contain lots of HTML code and some PHP code. They are responsible for displaying all the content that appears on the various content type pages like comments and blocks.
- ✓ **PNG:** These are image files.

## Theme code files

This chapter focuses on showing you how to modify and customize an existing theme. To do that, you need to understand what each file in the theme controls. Bluemarine contains eight files containing code:

- ✓ **style-rtl.css:** Unless you are creating a site for a language that is read from right to left, you can ignore this file. This is used to help make right-to-left running languages more readable.



When you duplicate this set of files to make your own version, just copy this file as-is and include it with no changes.

- ✓ **style.css:** This is the file to which you have to pay the most attention. This controls practically everything to do with the appearance of your site.

This chapter takes a close look at the contents of this file.

- ✓ **bluemarine.info:** This file contains the information Drupal needs about this theme. It's primarily used on the page at Administer→Site building→Themes. It will need a few simple tweaks to modify.

- ✓ **block.tpl.php:** This file controls all the content that appears in the blocks of the Bluemarine theme. You can see the blocks by choosing Administer→Site building→Blocks (see Figure 11-2). Bluemarine uses five blocks: header, left sidebar, right sidebar, content, and footer.

- ✓ **box.tpl.php:** This template places a box around a few elements of your site.

You don't see boxes very often and won't need to change the appearance of boxes through this template.

- ✓ **comment.tpl.php:** The comment template pulls in and structures an individual comment. It can optionally include a user photo and signature block. Figure 11-3 shows comments in the Bluemarine theme.



**Header**

**Blocks**

**Left sidebar**

Block	Region	Operations
Powered by Drupal	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
Navigation	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
User login	Left sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>

**Right sidebar**

Block	Region	Operations
Who's new	Right sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>
Who's online	Right sidebar	<a href="#">configure</a>

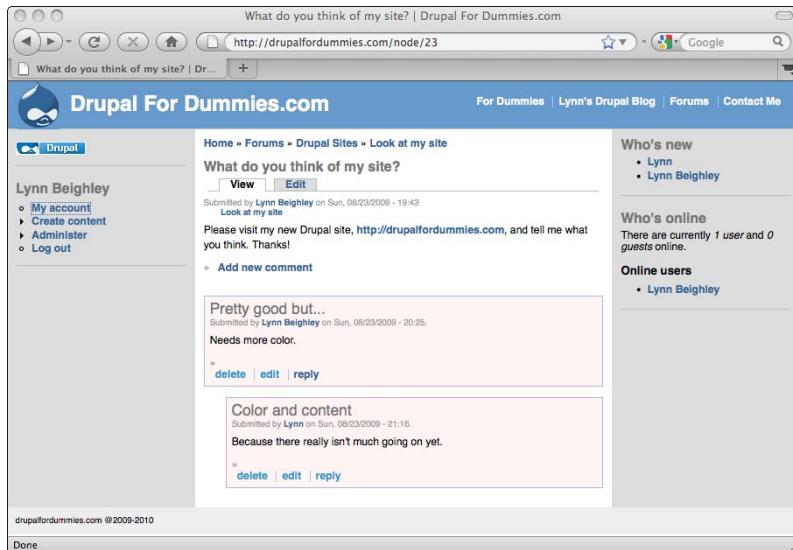
**Content**

No blocks in this region

**Header**

**Figure 11-2:**  
Blocks  
used in  
Bluemarine.

**Figure 11-3:**  
Comment  
layout in the  
Bluemarine  
theme.



- ✓ **node.tpl.php:** The node template controls the structure of content. All your stories and blog posts are contained in nodes, for example.
- ✓ **page.tpl.php:** The page template is the biggest one. It builds a complete page, including menus, all the blocks, and all the content. This defines where everything goes on the page. If, for example, you wanted the content in the left sidebar to shift to the right, this is the file you would change.

## Theme image files

Bluemarine only has two image files:

- ✓ **logo.png**, which is the Drupal logo in the upper left-hand corner of this theme
- ✓ **screenshot.png**, which is used on the page at Administer→Site building→Themes to give you a preview of the theme

## Creating Your First Theme

It's far easier to duplicate and rename the Bluemarine theme and use it to build your first theme than to build one from scratch. The first step is to make a copy of the Bluemarine directory on your computer.

To get a copy of Bluemarine, browse to <http://drupal.org/project/bluemarine> and download it. The actual file downloaded and used in this chapter is `bluemarine-7.x-1.x-dev.tar.gz`.



You can also get a copy of the Bluemarine theme by using FTP or your ISP's file manager. Navigate to the themes directory under Drupal and copy the entire Bluemarine directory to your desktop computer.

To edit the files in the Bluemarine theme, you need some sort of text editor:

- ✓ On Windows, you can use the NotePad application, a simple editor.
- ✓ On the Mac,TextEdit will work, although be sure to choose Format→ Make Plain Text.

You need to *extract* Bluemarine:

- ✓ Try double-clicking the `bluemarine.tar.gz` file to expand it. This should create a folder named `bluemarine` containing all the theme files.
- ✓ If that doesn't work, you may need a program such as the free StuffIt expander to extract your files. You can find this program at <http://my.smithmicro.com>.

To create your own version, follow these steps:

- 1. Rename the folder to a distinctive name you want to use for your theme.**  
I choose `drupalfordummies`.
- 2. Open this folder and locate the `bluemarine.info` file. Rename this file with your new theme name.**

In my case, I use `drupalfordummies.info`.

Make sure you rename the info file. Don't copy it with a new name. You only want one info file in your theme directory, and the name needs to match the name of your theme.

- 3. Open the info file in a text editor (see Figure 11-4).**



**Figure 11-4:**  
The  
contents  
of the  
.info file.

```
drupalfordummies.info
; $Id: bluemarine.info,v 1.2 2009/03/11 15:36:11 johnalbin Exp $
name = Bluemarine
description = Tableless theme with a marine and ash color scheme.
core = 7.x
engine = phptemplate
; Information added by drupal.org packaging script on 2009-03-11
version = "7.x-1.x-dev"
core = "7.x"
project = "bluemarine"
datestamp = "1236802317"
```

**4. Change the first line of this file from**

*; \$Id: bluemarine.info,v 1.2 2009/03/11 15:36:11 johnalbin Exp \$*

**to simply**

*;\$Id\$*

**5. Change the name = Bluemarine line to use your theme name.**

In my case, I change it to *name = Drupal For Dummies*.

This will be the name that shows up on the module selection page. It can contain spaces.

**6. Change the description text to describe your theme.**

I change mine to *description = Yellow and black theme*.

**7. The last two lines should read:**

```
core = 6.x  
engine = phptemplate
```

**8. Delete the rest of the line of this file.**

It should only contain the five lines mentioned earlier.

**9. Save this file.**

## Installing Your Theme



You haven't made any actual changes to the appearance of the theme yet, but it would still be a good time to get your theme installed to make sure the info file is correctly configured. Use FTP or your ISP's file manager program to move the folder containing your new theme into the Drupal themes directory on your Web server. In my case, this means I copy the entire `drupalfordummies` folder with all my theme files into the themes directory.

You may find it easier to zip your theme folder, transfer it to your Web server's theme directory, extract it, and then delete the original zip file.

If you have correctly changed the theme folder name, the name of the info file, and the information inside the info file, you will see your theme in the list when you choose Administer→Site building→Themes (see Figure 11-5).

You see your theme, your themes description, and a thumbnail for your theme.

You should enable and set your theme as default. This will make it easier for you to see the changes to your theme as you make them.

The screenshot shows the Drupal admin interface for managing themes. The left sidebar has a 'Drupal' logo and a navigation menu with items like 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator', 'Content management', 'Site building' (which is expanded to show 'Blocks', 'Menus', 'Modules', 'Themes', and 'Triggers'), 'Site configuration', 'User management', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Log out'. The main content area is titled 'Themes' and has tabs for 'List' and 'Configure'. A note says: 'Select which themes are available to your users and specify the default theme. To configure site-wide display settings, click the "configure" task above. Alternatively, to override these settings in a specific theme, click the "configure" link for that theme. Note that different themes may have different regions available for displaying content; for consistency in presentation, you may wish to enable only one theme.' Below this, it says: 'To change the appearance of your site, a number of contributed themes are available. See the available updates page for information on installed modules and themes with new versions released.' A table lists four themes:

Screenshot	Name	Version	Enabled	Default	Operations
	<b>Bluemarine</b> Table-based multi-column theme with a marine and ash color scheme.	6.13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">configure</a>
	<b>Chameleon</b> Minimalist tabled theme with light colors.	6.13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">configure</a>
	<b>Drupal for Dummies</b> Yellow and black theme.		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">configure</a>
	<b>Garland</b> Tableless, recolorable, multi-column, fluid width theme (default).	6.13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<a href="#">configure</a>

The right sidebar shows 'Who's new' (Lynn, Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (1 user online), and 'Online users' (Lynn Beighley).

**Figure 11-5:**  
Your new  
theme  
shows up  
in the list of  
themes.

Because Bluemarine doesn't display the primary links menu by default, your theme doesn't either. To display your primary links, follow these steps:

1. With your theme enabled and set as default, choose Administer→Site building→Blocks.
2. Find the Primary links item in the list and drag it to the top of the Right sidebar section.
3. Click Save blocks.



Right now, your primary links are titled *Primary links* on your site. If you want to remove that title, choose Administer→Site building→Blocks. Click on the configure link next to Primary links. In the Block title field, type `<none>` and press Save block. That's it.

## Changing Your Theme's Code

At this point, you can enable your new theme and set it as the default. It looks exactly like Bluemarine because you haven't changed anything yet. You can now make changes to your theme.



There's simply not room in this book to cover the ins and outs of CSS coding. The point of this chapter is to show you the possibilities and a few of the simpler, although still dramatic, changes you can make to customize your site.

## *Naming colors*

To change the colors used by your theme, you need to understand how colors are used in CSS code.

Colors are described using numbers, rather than names. For example, the header block of the Bluemarine theme is a light blue color. But instead of saying "light blue" in the code (which you will see in a moment), the value #06090C is used instead.



This kind of number is known as an RGB value. RGB stands for Red-Green-Blue. The number #6699CC represents how much red (66), green (99), and blue (CC) to use. To make things even more complicated, these numbers are in hexadecimal notation.

Sometimes you will see only three digits, such as #69C. This one is the same as #6699CC. If you ever see a three-digit version, realize that it's simply leaving out duplicate numbers.

Don't let this throw you. You don't have to come up with these numbers; you can use a tool to help you. Here are some Web sites that show you colors and the numbers that correspond with them:

```
http://www.colorschemer.com/online.html
http://htmlhelp.com/cgi-bin/color.cgi
http://www.yellowpipe.com/yis/tools/hex-to-rgb/color-converter.php
```



Two colors you will see often are black (#000 or #000000) and white (#fff or #ffffff). Also, when you see letters, it doesn't matter if they are upper or lower case. So #fff is the same thing as #FFFFFF.

## *Changing colors*

In my case, I want to begin with the colors used by my theme. To do this, I will open the `style.css` file on my desktop computer, make the changes, and then using FTP or the ISP's file manager, upload the altered `style.css` to my `Drupal/themes/drupalfordummies` folder on my Web server. This will write over the old version, and my changes will show up on my site. To begin, follow these steps:

1. Open the version of `style.css` on your desktop with a text editor.
2. About halfway through the file, locate the lines:

```
#header {
    padding: .2em;
    background-color: #69c;
}
```

### 3. Change the value #69c to a different RGB value.

I'm using a yellow color, #FFFFE01, so the background-color line now reads

```
background-color: #FFFFE01
```

### 4. Save the style.css file.

### 5. Use the file manager or FTP to upload this file to your Web server under the right theme folder, the folder containing your new theme.

I put mine under my Drupal themes/drupalfordummies directory.

### 6. You may get a warning that the file already exists. Go ahead and overwrite the existing style.css file.

### 7. Reload your Web site. You should see the new header color.



If you don't see the change in the header color, make sure your theme is the currently selected default theme at Administer→Site building→Themes.

I now have a problem. The bright yellow color makes it difficult to read the header text on my site (see Figure 11-6). I want to change my header text to black so it's more readable.

**Figure 11-6:**  
Web site  
with new  
header  
color.

To change the font color, I change the RGB value from white (which is #fff) to black (which is #000000) in the `style.css` file. The section I need to change is this:

```
.site-name a:link, .site-name a:visited {  
    color: #fff;  
}
```

I simply change the value #fff to #000000. Then, as in the preceding example, I save the `style.css` file and copy it over the version on my Web server in the `themes/drupalfordummies` directory.

## *Understanding the style.css file*

By now, I hope you are getting the idea that the `style.css` file contains the values for all the colors on your site. The key to customizing your site's colors is to understand how this file is structured and to know what all the colors in this file stand for.

Everything in this file is divided into chunks of code. Each chunk consists of some names or labels, an open curly bracket, lines of code called rules, and a closing curly bracket. For example, the body section of the file looks like this:

```
body {  
    margin: 0;  
    padding: 0;  
    color: #000;  
    background-color: #fff;  
}
```

For the moment, you only need to notice that this is the body section, and it has a background color defined in it, #fff.

### *Changing colors*

Now that you know how to change `style.css` and upload it to your Web server, you can experiment. If you see a color setting and don't know what it controls, change it to a crazy color, such as hot pink (#FF00FF). When you reload your site, you will see what changes.

Here's a rundown of a few major color settings in this file that you may want to change:

✓ **body { background-color: #fff; }**

Controls the color behind the main content area. Currently set to white.

**✓ `a:link { color: #39c; }`**

This is the color of Web links on your site. It's a bluish color. For my site, I change it to #1F638A.

**✓ `a:visited { color: #369; }`**

This is the color of a Web link a visitor sees after he has clicked on it. Mine is #1F638A, the same as the link color.

**✓ `a:hover { color: #39c; }`**

The color of a link when a cursor is over it. I use #1F638A, the same as the link color.

**✓ `body { background-color: #ddd; }`**

A second block that is setting the main background color. This sets it to a gray color (#CCCCCC).



You may have noticed that there already was a bit of code labeled *main* with a background color. In CSS code, you may have multiple rules that set the same color for some part of your site. *The last one is the one that shows up on a page*. In this case, the second body tag has the color that actually shows up on the page.

**✓ `#main { background-color: #fff; }`**

This controls the color behind your main content area.

**✓ `#sidebar-left, #sidebar-right { background-color: #ddd; }`**

The left and right sidebars are set to a gray color.

**✓ `#header { background-color: #FFFE01; }`**

This is the main header background color that I changed to a yellow color earlier.

**✓ `.site-name a:link, .site-name a:visited { color: #000000; }`**

This is the site name in the header which I changed to a black color.

**✓ `.site-name a:hover { color: #369; }`**

When a cursor is moved over the site name, it changes to this color. I change mine to match my link color, #1F638A.

**✓ `#mission { background-color: #369; color: #fff; }`**

The mission statement appears just below the header and has two color settings. The first is for the background color; the second is the color of the text in it. I change mine to black for the background (#000000) and leave the text white.

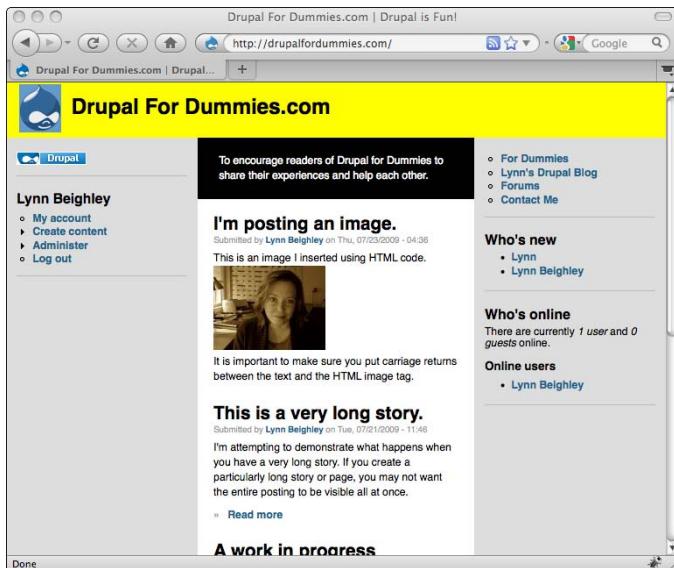
✓ **#footer { background-color: #eee; }**

This is the footer color. I change mine to the same yellow as the header, #FFFE01.

✓ **.title, .title a { color: #777; }**

These are the titles above various sections of your site. In my case, this affects *Who's new* and *Who's online* in the right sidebar and the user-name in the left sidebar. I change mine to black.

Although it may be difficult to tell from a gray scale image in this book, my site is starting to look a bit more customized (see Figure 11-7).



**Figure 11-7:**  
Changes  
to the site  
colors make  
the text  
stand out.

### Changing fonts

The `style.css` file also contains the rules for the color, style, and size of fonts. Here's a rundown of some of the coding used to control the appearance of fonts that you see in `style.css`:

- ✓ **font:** This tag appears only once in `style.css` and specifies the font to use for the entire site.
- ✓ **font-size:** Controls how large or small the text is.
- ✓ **font-weight:** Used to set text to bold.
- ✓ **font-style:** Primarily used to set text to italic.

✓ **text-decoration:** Controls whether a link is underlined.

✓ **color:** Can sometimes set the color of text.

Here are a few major text settings in `style.css` that you may want to change:

✓ **body { color: #000; font: 76% Verdana, Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif; }**

There are two things going on here. The first, color, controls the text color for the entire site, setting it black. If no other rules change it later in this file, it shows up as black on the site. This controls the color of all the content text all over the site.

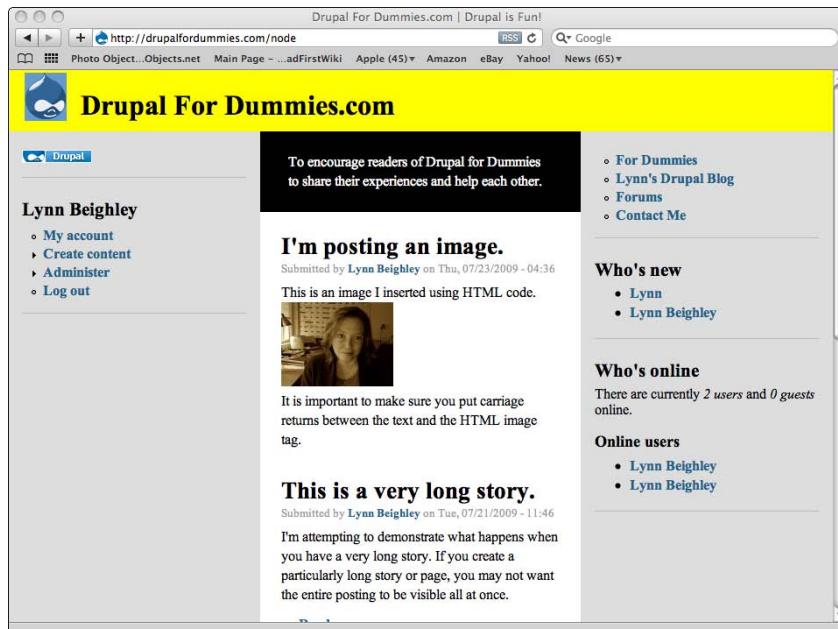
The font setting, 76% Verdana, Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif, is setting both the text size and font. If I want to use a different font and larger text, I can change this line to read:

```
font: 100% Times New Roman, Georgia, Serif;
```

This changes the font for the entire site, as you can see in Figure 11-8.

The font is larger and is now Times New Roman instead of Verdana. I prefer the smaller font size and Verdana for the style, so after experimenting, I change this line back to:

```
font: 76% Verdana, Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif;
```



**Figure 11-8:**  
Using the  
Times New  
Roman,  
Georgia,  
Serif font  
family set  
to 100%.

✓ **a { text-decoration: none; font-weight: bold; }**

The text-decoration controls whether links on your site are underlined. In this case, they are not. The font-weight makes the site links boldface.

✓ **a:hover { text-decoration: underline; }**

When you move your mouse cursor over one of the links on the site, the underline appears. When you move your cursor off, it disappears. Any time you see *hover*, it's referring to the cursor being moved over something.

✓ **.site-name { font-size: 2em; }**

An em is a unit of size, and this line is setting the size of the site name. If I change it to 6em, it becomes absurdly large (see Figure 11-9).

✓ **#mission { color: #fff; }**

I changed the mission text to white and the background to black. But I also want to italicize the words. To do this, I add this line between the curly brackets:

```
font-style: italic;
```



When changing CSS code, be careful to keep the punctuation marks exactly as they are. For example, each line in the block of code ends with a semicolon.



**Figure 11-9:**  
Site header  
text size set  
to 6em.

## Using graphics

You should now be able to change any color on your site. But suppose you want to use an image as a background for one of the areas. For example, say you want to use a background image for the left and right sidebars. You still want the text on top, but instead of gray, you want faint, diagonal pinstripes.

Follow these steps:

1. **Use FTP or your ISP's file manager to copy your background image to your Web server. Put it in your theme's directory.**

For example, I have a background image called `stripes.gif`. I upload it to my Drupal site under `themes/drupalfordummies`.

2. **Open a copy of `style.css` in a text editor.**

3. **Locate this section of code:**

```
#sidebar-left, #sidebar-right {  
    width: 16em;  
    padding: 1em;  
    margin-right: -18em; /* LTR */  
    background-color: #ddd;  
}
```

4. **Add the following line inside the curly brackets:**

```
background-image:url('stripes.gif');
```

5. **Save and upload your file.**

Now when you look at the site, the stripes show up on the sidebars (see Figure 11-10).

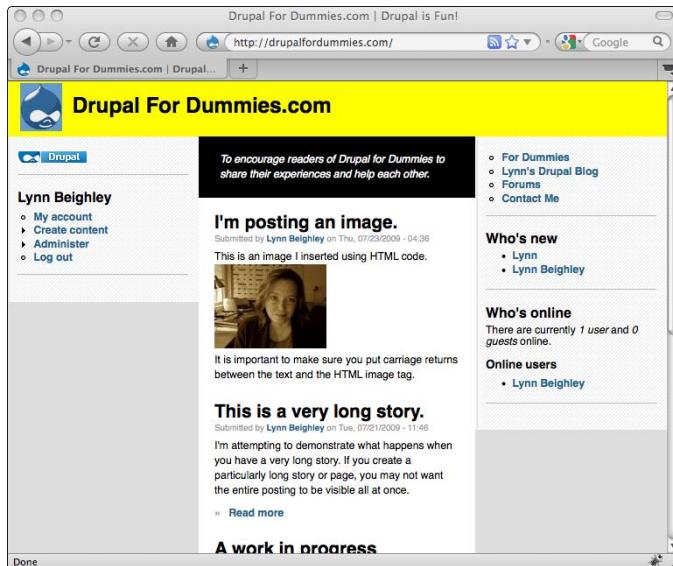
Unfortunately, the bottom parts of the sidebars don't have the background. Only the portions of the sidebars with actual content blocks are filled in. You need one more line of code.

6. **In the body section of `style.css`, add the same line of code:**

```
background-image:url('stripes.gif');
```

7. **Save and upload your file.**

Your background is now visible all the way to the bottom of the page.



**Figure 11-10:** The stripe background fills up the top portion of the sidebars.

## Changing the logo image

The logo on the site still leaves something to be desired. You can easily replace it with one that looks better. There's no coding involved. To change the logo, follow these steps:

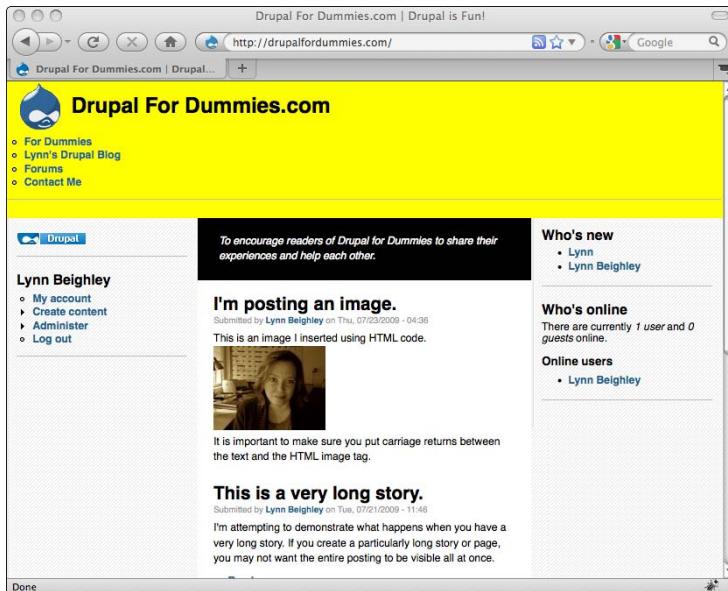
1. Choose Administer ➤ Site building ➤ Themes. Click on the configure link next to your theme.
2. Scroll down to the Logo image settings. Click Browse to select and upload your new logo.
3. Click Save configuration.

Your logo will now appear.

## Editing templates

You can make lots of changes with `style.css`, but the template files allow you to change the structure and order of things. For example, this theme allows me to put my primary menu in the header block, but the layout isn't appealing (see Figure 11-11).

I really want my primary links to appear horizontally in the header. This theme doesn't allow me to do this using blocks, so I need to modify my page template and add code for the primary menu.



**Figure 11-11:**  
Primary  
links in  
the  
header  
block.



The code you are about to use may seem confusing, but don't panic. The point is that you are slightly altering and moving lines of code around, not really writing new code. Drupal handles the hard part; you just need to shuffle things around a bit.

Follow these steps:

1. Open `page.tpl.php` in a text editor.
2. Locate this code near the beginning of the file:

```
<?php if ($site_name) { ?><h1 class='site-name'><a href=<?php print $front_page ?>" title=<?php print t('Home') ?>"><?php print $site_name ?></a></h1><?php } ?>

<?php if ($site_slogan) { ?><div class='site slogan'><?php print $site_slogan ?></div><?php } ?>
```

I will add code between these two lines.

3. Carefully type this line of code between the two preceding lines:

```
<?php if (isset($primary_links)) { ?><?php print theme('links', $primary_links, array('class' => 'links', 'id' => 'navlist')) ?><?php } ?>
```

**4. Save and upload this file to the folder containing your theme on your Web server.**

**5. Reload your Web site.**

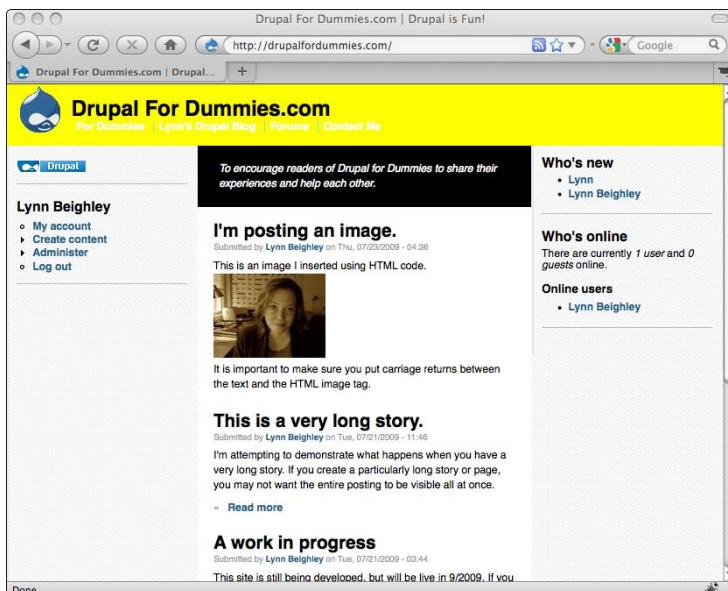
The links are there, but unfortunately, they are difficult to read. I need to change the font color (see Figure 11-12).

The link color is controlled in the `style.css` file so that file needs to be edited.

**6. Open the `style.css` file in a text editor.**

**7. Locate this block of code:**

```
#navlist a {
    font-weight: bold;
    color: #fff;
}
```



**Figure 11-12:**  
Primary  
links are  
difficult to  
read in the  
header.

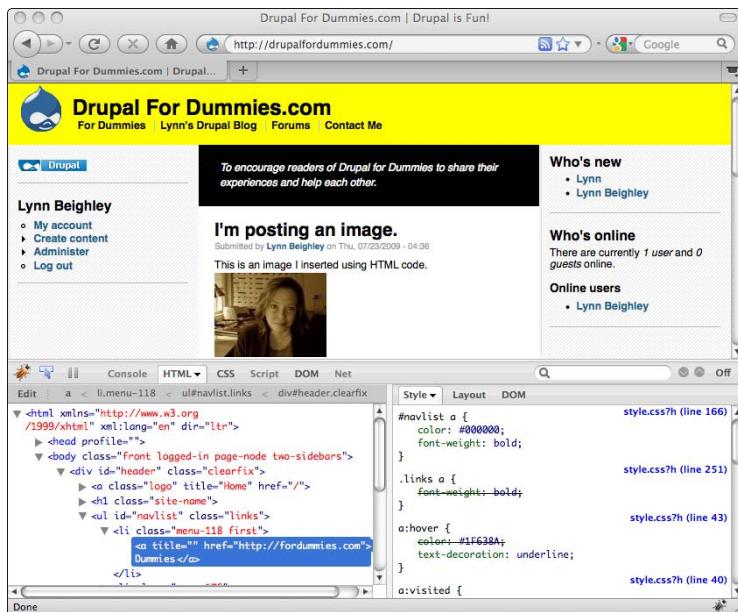
**8. Change the color value from white (#fff) to black (#000).**

**9. Save and upload this file to the correct theme folder under your Drupal themes directory.**

Now your links appear in black in the header.



Trial-and-error is one way of figuring out what styles in the `style.css` belong to what elements on your site. But there's an easier way. I recommend you use the Firefox Web browser and install the add-in called Firebug. This opens a pane in the Web browser and shows you what styles are used by elements on your Web page. In Figure 11-13, you see which line in `style.css` is controlling the appearance of the primary links in the header. On the bottom right of the browser, you can see that the `navlist` block is responsible for the color. Learn more about Firebug at <http://getfirebug.com/>.



**Figure 11-13:**  
Firefox  
browser  
with  
Firebug.

## Creating a Screen Shot

Now that you've customized your theme, you should take a screen shot that will show up on the Administer→Site building→Themes page. A screen shot is a small image that gives an idea of what your theme looks like. It needs to be 150 x 90 pixels in size.



There are lots of other details and modifications. <http://drupal.org/theme-guide> is an extremely thorough guide.



# Part IV

# Taking Drupal to the Next Level

The 5<sup>th</sup> Wave      By Rich Tennant



"I've had a lot of experience running nonprofit organizations. Back in the '90's I ran several Internet start-up companies."

## *In this part . . .*

**B**uilding a basic site in Drupal is child's play to you now. Blogs? Simple. Forums? A piece of cake. Controlling user permissions? Pshaw.

You yearn for more features. You want to do more. The chapters in this part show you how to set up an image gallery, build your own online storefront, and even display your Twitter and Facebook updates. And lots more.

## **Chapter 12**

---

# **Creating a Robust Web Site**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Determining the purpose of your site
  - ▶ Adding user polls
  - ▶ Enhancing user profiles
  - ▶ Enabling visitors to search your site
  - ▶ Adding a contact form
- 

To create something more than a generic Web site, you must take a close look at what you want to accomplish and discover what specific modules and techniques suit your needs. This chapter will help you figure out the purpose of your site and show you some steps you can take to ensure that your site is effective and your message is getting across to your audience.

## ***Planning Your Drupal Site***

To figure out which Drupal modules features to add to your site, you need to have a clear idea of its purpose. Knowing this will help you pick the right features for your site.

### ***Getting a clear picture of your site***

Understanding the purpose of your site is the first step in creating it. Your site probably falls under one or more of these categories:

- | ✓ **Blog:** Blogs allow you to share your view of the world or some particular topic. They're also good advertising tools for getting news out about a company. They're often one part of a larger site.

- ✓ **Brochure:** These sites are largely static advertisements or information about a business or service.

An example of a brochure site can be seen at [www.thealamo.org](http://www.thealamo.org). While this site does have a calendar and gift shop, the main purpose is to serve as a brochure with rarely modified information (see Figure 12-1).

- ✓ **Community:** These sites exist to attract people with something in common. They typically encourage discussion of a topic with forums. [Drupalfordummies.com](http://Drupalfordummies.com) falls under this category.
- ✓ **Image gallery:** Now that most people have digital cameras, photography has never been more popular. You may wish to build a site or portion of a site devoted to showcasing your images. Chapter 13 covers creation of an image gallery in depth.
- ✓ **Information or news:** You want to send out frequent news updates about a topic. You may also wish to aggregate information from other Web sites. Chapter 14 shows how to pull content from other Web sites with a technology called RSS.
- ✓ **Storefront:** You have a product to sell and need an online shopping cart system to allow site visitors to order your goods. Chapter 15 shows how to build a storefront using the Ubercart module.



Your site may fall under several of these categories. For example, you might want to sell things and also blog about your company to let your visitors know about sales or new products. Or you may want to create a community site that allows members to post images.



**Figure 12-1:**  
The Alamo  
Web site is  
primarily a  
brochure  
site.

## Knowing your audience

As you create your site, keep your audience in mind. People visit Web sites for a variety of reasons, and the content of your site should be presented in a way to attract the visitors you want.



There are lots of good books about Web site interface design and designing for particular audiences. One book that provides a very quick and entertaining overview of the most important principles of site design and great insight into how visitors to a site will probably react to it is *Don't Make Me Think*, by Steve Krug.

Types of visitors to your site include:

- ✓ **The random visitor:** Some people will visit your Web site by accident. A compelling main page may draw them into your site, but in general these visitors won't be inclined to buy your products, join your community, or be interested in your services.
- ✓ **Researcher:** These folks found you by using a search engine. Your site was in their search results and may or may not be what they're looking for.



To boost the number of satisfied researching visitors to your site, focus on optimizing your site for search engines. This is a practice called search engine optimization (SEO) and it focuses on making sure the content on your site is presented in ways that search engines, such as Google, will find and index it. SEO is an entire subject worthy of its own book, but I recommend a Drupal module in Chapter 16 that is a good starting place.

- ✓ **Direct user:** This is your main user base, visitors who arrive at your site knowing what they will find there. A friend or a link on another site may refer them to your site. These are the users you most want to please with your site layout. If your site is a community site, for example, you should make the link to your forums prominent on your main page. Or if you have a storefront, you might want to feature your most popular products on your main page.



You may also have to consider the technology your site visitors have available to them. For example, you may be creating a site that will be frequented by people with older computer equipment and slower connections. You may want to limit your use of Flash movies and large images to allow your site to load faster.

You should also consider the demographics of your audience. Perhaps you are trying to build a community for mothers, for example. That site would be very different from one built for video gamers.



Take your site design cues from sites that are successful. I'm not suggesting you steal designs from other sites, but you can definitely learn something by studying how they use their primary links, or how much, or little content they provide on their pages.

## *Choosing your features*

Your choice of features depends on the purpose of your site, as well as your user base. Here's a sampling of site types and site features to consider:



✓ **Blog:** Obviously, if you have a blog site you need the Blog module. But you may want to provide a page about yourself, a contact form, and a page with archives of previous blogs.

Consider adding advertising blocks to your site as the number of visitors to your sites increases.



If your site consists of blogs about a set of topics, you might want to create a submenu with links to these topics. A good example (and also a site that sometimes offers Drupal tips) is [www.smashingmagazine.com](http://www.smashingmagazine.com) (see Figure 12-2).

Blogs don't have to be the voice of a single author. Multiple users can have blogs. You may want to build a site that features a number of blog writers.

**Figure 12-2:**  
Smashing  
Magazine is  
an example  
of a  
blog site.

✓ **Brochure:** Brochure sites are largely informational, and the information on these sites doesn't change very often. Generally, they contain

- A main page
- A contact page
- Directions
- Sub pages containing more information

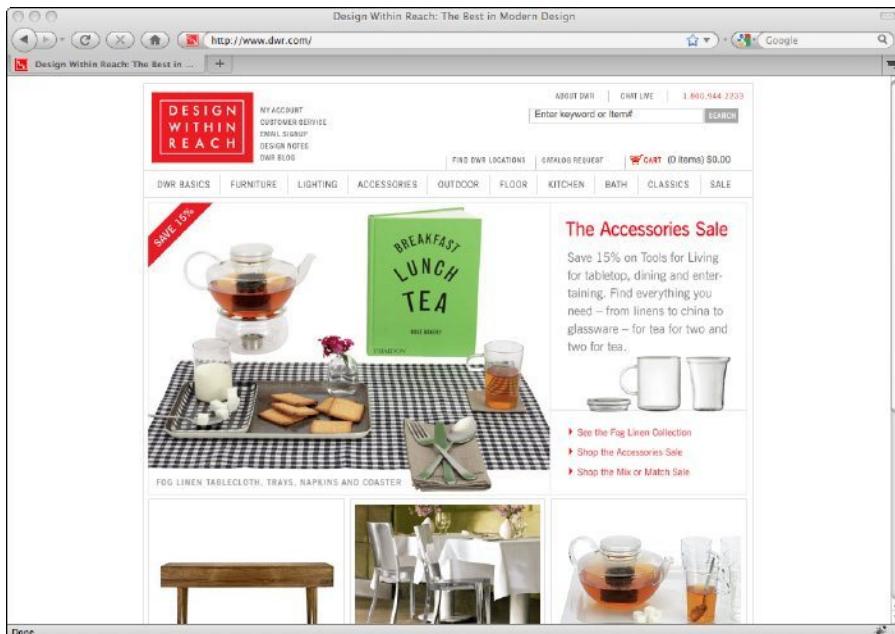
A good example of a brochure site is the National Park Service's Grand Canyon site ([www.nps.gov/grca](http://www.nps.gov/grca)). It almost looks like a printed brochure that has been turned into a site. Very little information on this site ever changes.

✓ **Community:** A Web site for which its members provide the content is considered a community site. Community sites are often sponsored by a company and used to advertise, while providing a valuable resource for users of a product or participants in some activity. Most community sites are part of a larger site and primarily consist of forums. You will often see advertisements and company branding, as well as links back to the other sections of the site, as shown on the community forums at Frommer's, a travel publishing company (see Figure 12-3).

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Frommers.com Community Forums'. The URL in the address bar is <http://www.frommers.com/community/forums-main.html#usa>. The page features a red header with the 'Frommer's' logo and navigation links for HOME, DESTINATIONS, HOTELS, TRIP IDEAS, DEALS & NEWS, TIPS & TOOLS, COMMUNITY, STORE, and BOOK A TRIP. Below the header is a 'WORLD' section with a MasterCard logo and a link to 'PRICELESS.COM/WORLD'. A search bar is located in the top right corner. The main content area is titled 'Forums' and includes a sidebar with links for Asia, Australia & the South Pacific, Caribbean & the Atlantic, Central & South America, Europe, Middle East & Africa, North America (Canada, Mexico, United States), Community Information, Trip Ideas, Tips, Tools & Deals, and a 'Travel Light' advertisement. The main forum area has a 'SEARCH FORUMS' bar and a 'Recent Posts' section for the 'ASIA' category, showing posts from users zephyr811, breaktime, rxstacey, and carla.nightingale. There are also sections for 'AUSTRALIA AND THE SOUTH PACIFIC' and 'PLUS KIDS UP TO 17 STAY FREE!' from Palace Resorts.

**Figure 12-3:**  
Frommer's  
community  
forums.

- ✓ **Image gallery:** Image galleries abound on the Web. They may contain images from a single source, or they can allow registered users of a site to contribute them. You've probably seen Flickr.com, a site that combines both image gallery and community Web site features. An image gallery can be extended to become a media gallery, offering videos, podcasts, or PDFs. The idea behind the site is to serve as a repository for files, allowing them to be previewed online, and under certain conditions, downloaded by visitors to the site. These sites need a form to allow files to be uploaded to the site.
- ✓ **Information or news:** These sites are almost the opposite of community sites because their content frequently changes. The focus is on publishing blurbs that visitors click on to read the full story. An example of this sort of site is [www.news.google.com](http://www.news.google.com). Every time you visit the page, the news headlines have changed. News sites are typically very busy and don't have many other features beyond the headline links. New headlines may also be accompanied by thumbnail images.
- ✓ **Storefront:** From brick and mortar stores, like PetSmart and Target, to online-only retailers such as Amazon.com, storefront sites abound on the Web. Storefronts exist to sell, and usually focus on doing that. You don't see many bells and whistles on shopping sites. As you can see in Figure 12-4, they have links to the products prominently displayed, a link to a shopping cart, and often a search box to help visitors quickly find products they are seeking.



**Figure 12-4:**  
Storefront  
Web site  
for Design  
Within  
Reach.



Search boxes are great additions to most types of sites. They don't take up much room, and they save visitors to your site lots of frustration when they are looking for one particular subject, item, or article. Drupal has a preinstalled module for adding one to your site. I show how to enable and set it up in the next section.

## *Additional Modules to Install*

Drupal comes with many preinstalled modules worth enabling. There are also many more contributed modules. You can also download and add many more contributed modules to your Drupal program that extend the features of your site. First I show you a few more preinstalled modules, and then I take you through the process of locating and installing third-party modules.

### *More preinstalled modules*

In this section, I take a closer look at four preinstalled modules that can add useful features to your site. The first is the OpenID module that allows people who already have accounts on other sites to log in to yours without registering. The second is the Poll module, which lets you set up questions for your registered users to vote on. The Profile module allows your users to have more robust profile pages, complete with images. Finally, the Search module allows you to place search boxes on pages of your site for visitors to easily locate content.

#### *OpenID module*

So many sites expect users to create accounts. The idea behind OpenID is to allow a user who has already registered on a major Web site (for example, google.com) to log in to your site using his google.com account information instead of creating a new account on your site. OpenID supports a number of major Web site logins. A user can also create a master login at [www.openid.net](http://www.openid.net) that will allow him to log in at any site that allows OpenID.



If you turn on the OpenID module, you open your site up to users you haven't personally verified. This doesn't matter if your site is mainly informational or if you want a large user base. But if you allow your users lots of privileges, such as posting unmoderated content to message boards, you may not want to use this module.

To activate the OpenID module, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Site Building**→**Modules**.

**2. Check the box next to OpenID.**

**3. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click Save Configuration.**

The next time a visitor arrives at your home page, he will see the normal login form and a link to use an OpenID login. If he clicks that link, the login form changes to prompt for his OpenID (see Figure 12-5).

### **Poll module**

Polls are great for community sites because they get people involved. You can also get valuable information if you use them to query your users about directions your site should take. To activate the Poll module and set up a poll, follow these steps:

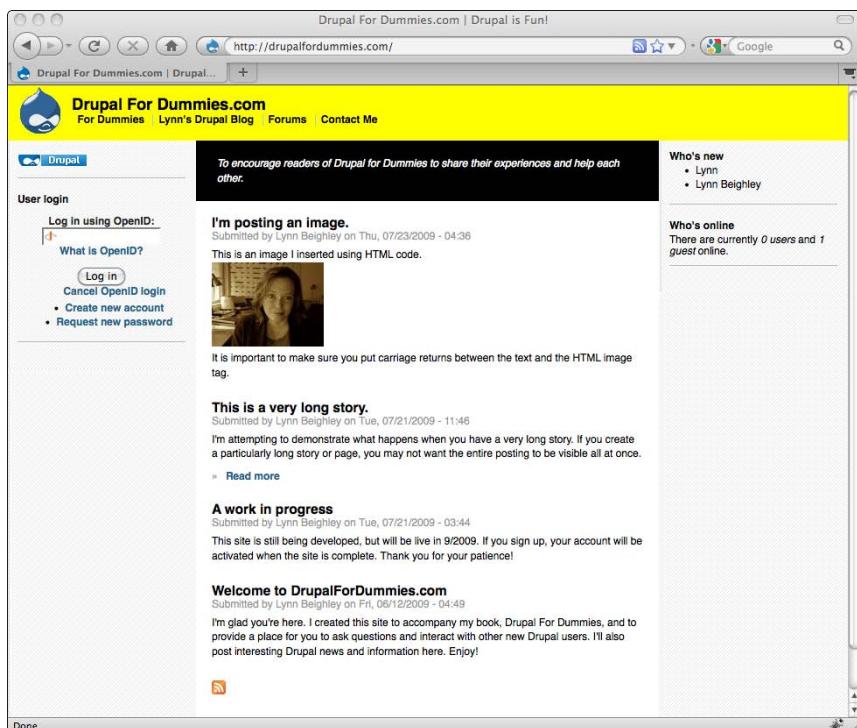
**1. Choose Administer→Site Building→Modules.**

**2. Check the box next to OpenID.**

**3. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click Save Configuration.**

**4. Choose Create Content→Poll to set up a new poll.**

Figure 12-6 shows the Create Poll form.



The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Drupal For Dummies.com | Drupal is Fun!' at the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/>. The page features a yellow header bar with the site's logo and navigation links for 'For Dummies', 'Lynn's Drupal Blog', 'Forums', and 'Contact Me'. Below the header, there's a 'User login' form on the left. It includes a 'Log in using OpenID:' section with a radio button labeled 'OpenID' and a 'Log in' button. Other options in this section are 'Cancel OpenID login', 'Create new account', and 'Request new password'. The main content area displays several blog posts. One post by Lynn Beighley titled 'I'm posting an image.' shows a thumbnail of a woman's face and some text explaining how to insert images. Another post by Lynn Beighley titled 'This is a very long story.' is described as being very long. A third post, 'A work in progress.', is noted as still being developed. On the right side of the page, there are 'Who's new' and 'Who's online' sections, both currently empty. The overall layout is clean and follows the standard Drupal design principles.

**Figure 12-5:**  
Login form  
with OpenID  
module  
enabled.

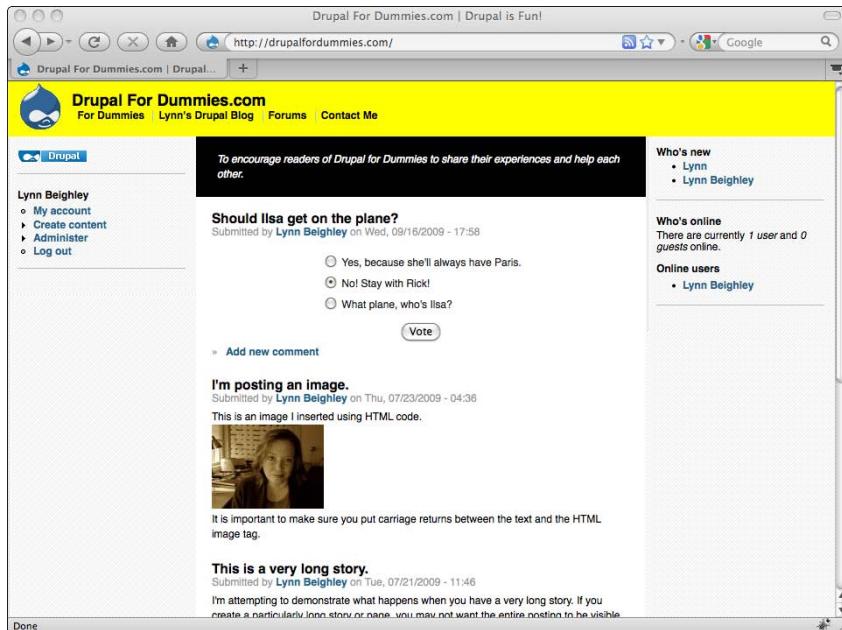
The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Create Poll | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/node/add/poll>. The page title is 'Create Poll'. The main content area is titled 'Create Poll' and contains a 'Question:' field with the text 'Should Ilsa get on the plane?'. Below it is a 'Choice' section with three options: 'Yes, because she'll always have Paris.' (Vote count 0), 'No! Stay with Rick!' (Vote count 0), and 'What plane, who's Ilsa?' (Vote count 0). There is a link 'Add another choice' and a 'Poll settings' section. Under 'Poll status', 'Active' is selected. Under 'Poll duration', 'Unlimited' is selected. A note says 'When a poll is closed, visitors can no longer vote for it.' Below the form are links to 'Menu settings', 'Revision information', 'Comment settings', 'Authoring information', and 'Publishing options'. At the bottom are 'Save' and 'Preview' buttons. The footer includes the text 'drupalfordummies.com @2009-2010' and 'Done'.

**Figure 12-6:**  
After enabling the Poll module, you can access the Create Poll form.

5. Enter a poll question in the Question field.
  6. Enter one of the possible answers in the first Choice field.
  7. Enter another possible answer in the second Choice field.
  8. If you want more than two choices, click the Add another choice button. Enter the new choice in the third Choice blank.
  9. Make sure the Poll status is set to Active.
- If this is set to Closed, the poll and the voting results will be visible, but no more voting will be allowed.
10. Click Preview to see your question. When you are happy with it, click Save.

The poll question will now be published on the front page of your site (see Figure 12-7).

**Figure 12-7:**  
Poll  
published  
to the front  
page.



After a user clicks a choice, he sees the voting results. He can also cancel his vote if he chooses.

The Create Poll form (refer to 12-6) also controls a few other poll settings.



✓ **Poll publishing options:** As with a new post, your poll shows up as the top item on your home page. This can be changed for an individual post by changing the Publishing options section of the Create Poll page. Uncheck the Promoted to front page box.

If you never want your poll to appear on the front page, you can control the behavior for all polls. Follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer → Content Management → Content types.
2. Click the edit link next to the Poll type and uncheck the Published check box under Workflow settings.
3. Click Save content type.

✓ **Comments about poll:** By default, your poll allows registered users to comment. You can change this by modifying the Comment settings section of the Create Poll page. Your choices are Disabled, Read only, and Read/Write.

✓ **Location of Poll:** You can control in which block your poll appears. Follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→Site building→Blocks.
- The item Most recent poll appears near the bottom of the page under the Disabled section.
2. Change the drop-down box or drag it to the block of your choice.
  3. Click Save blocks.

### *Profile module*

Another good choice for increasing the community feeling of a site is to enable the Profile module. This module allows a registered user to add additional information to his user profile. Enabling this module lets you configure the profile form to prompt the user for specific information. Figure 12-8 shows an example of a custom user profile form that users can fill out.

The information a user enters on this form will show up when anyone clicks on his username.

To set up the Profile module and create a form allowing registered users to add more information to their profile pages, follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→Site Building→Modules.
2. Check the box next to Profile.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/user/1/edit/Personal%20information>. The page title is "Personal information". The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with "My account" selected. The main content area contains fields for "About you" (text area with placeholder "I'm the author of Drupal for Dummies."), "Tell us more about yourself" (text area), "Drupal experience" (dropdown menu set to "Expert"), and "How would you classify your experience using Drupal?" (text area). On the right side, there are sections for "Who's new" (list of Lynn Beighley), "Who's online" (list of Lynn Beighley), "Online users" (list of Lynn Beighley), and a "Poll" section titled "Should Ilsa get on the plane?". The poll has three options: "Yes, because she'll always have Paris.", "No! Stay with Rick!", and "What plane, who's Ilsa?". A "Vote" button is present. At the bottom of the page, there is a footer with the text "drupalfordummies.com @2009-2010" and a "Done" button.

**Figure 12-8:**  
Profile form  
that asks for  
more user  
profile  
information.

3. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click Save Configuration.
4. Choose Administer → User Management → Profiles to set up a form for users to fill out.

You have to create all the form fields that your users will answer.

5. Click on the link multi-line text field under Add new field.

This opens a new form where you can name this text field and give your users instructions about what kind of information to enter. Figure 12-9 shows this form.

6. For Category, enter a general description of the kind of question this is.

This allows you to ask several of the same type of questions. For example, in Figure 12-8, the two questions asked in that form are both in the category *Personal information*.

7. For Title, enter the text you want the user to see next to the field.

This should tell the user what kind of information you want him to enter in this field.

**Figure 12-9:**  
Form to  
create a  
multi-line  
text field for  
a user  
profile form.

**8. In the Form name field, add a distinctive name with underscores instead of spaces.**

Drupal uses this to keep track of this field, but it will never be seen by you or the users filling out the form. I add the Title text to the word *profile* that was already in the blank and end up with *profile\_about\_you*.

**9. If the title of the field isn't clear enough, you can add more text to explain what sort of information to enter.**

**10. For Visibility, choose Public field, content shown on profile page but not used on member list pages.**

The Visibility setting controls where and to whom the information the user fills in will show up on your site:

- If you want to collect information from your users, but keep it private so only the administrator can see it, choose the first option, Hidden profile field.
- If you want the information visible on pages that list all the users, check the last option, Public field, content shown on profile page and on member list pages.
- Be careful with this option. If you're allowing the users to enter multiple lines of information, the list pages will be very cluttered.
- The third option, Public field, content shown on profile page but not used on member list pages, is generally your best bet.



**11. Click Save field.**

When users sign up or click on the My account link, they will see the Personal information tab. Clicking that tab will display any form fields you created under the Personal information category.

Figure 12-8 also shows a drop-down list users can choose from under Drupal experience. To create this, follow these steps:

**1. Choose Administer>User Management>Profiles.**

**2. Click on the link list selection under Add new field.**

Figure 12-10 shows the form that opens. It's very much like the form to create a multi-line text box, with the addition of a Selection options field.

**3. For Category, enter a general description of the kind of question this is.**

If you enter the category *Personal information*, this question will show up in the same tab on the My account page (refer to Figure 12-8) as the About you field that I created in the last example.

**4. For Title, enter the text you want the user to see next to the field.**

I enter *Drupal experience*.

**Figure 12-10:**  
Form to  
create a list  
selection  
field for a  
user profile  
form.

The screenshot shows the Drupal For Dummies user profile edit page. On the left, there's a sidebar with a navigation menu for 'Drupal' and 'Lynn Beighley'. The main content area is titled 'edit Drupal experience | Drupal For Dummies.com' and shows the 'Field settings' for a new field. The field is named 'profile\_experience'. The 'Category' is set to 'Personal information'. The 'Title' is 'Drupal experience'. The 'Explanation' field contains the text 'How would you classify your experience using Drupal?'. The 'Selection options' section lists several options: 'What's Drupal?', 'Beginner', 'Past user, want to learn more', 'Intermediate', and 'Expert'. A note below says, 'A list of all options. Put each option on a separate line. Example options are "red", "blue", "green", etc.' On the right side of the page, there are 'Who's new' and 'Who's online' sections, and a poll titled 'Should Ilsa get on the plane?' with three options: 'Yes, because she'll always have Paris.', 'Not Stay with Rick!', and 'What plane, who's Ilsa?'. There is also a 'Vote' button.

5. In the Form name field, add a distinctive name with underscores instead of spaces.  
I enter *profile\_experience*.
6. If the title of the field isn't clear enough, you can add more text to explain what sort of information to enter.
7. For Visibility, choose Public field, content shown on profile page but not used on member list pages.
8. Click Save field.

Now when a user browses to his My account page, he will see an Edit link with two options: Account and Personal information. Clicking on Personal information takes him to the form with the fields I just created.

By default, Drupal only allows administrators to see everyone's user profile. You need to allow registered users and, if you choose, anonymous users to see them by changing the permissions. To give registered users permission to view other people's user profiles, follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→User management→Permissions.

**2. Scroll down to the bottom of the page and check the check boxes next to access user profiles.**

You can choose to allow unregistered users to view them if you wish.

**3. Click Save permissions.**

Every username visible on your site will now link to that user's profile. Usernames show up in blog, comment, and forum postings. Figure 12-11 shows what an unregistered visitor to my site sees if he clicks on my username.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/user/1>. The title bar says "Lynn Beighley | Drupal For Dummies.com". The page content is as follows:

- Drupal For Dummies.com** (Logo)
- For Dummies** | **Lynn's Drupal Blog** | **Forums** | **Contact Me**
- User login** form with fields for **Username:** and **Password:**, and links for **Create new account** and **Request new password**.
- Home** link.
- Lynn Beighley** (Profile link).
- Personal information** section:
  - About you**: I'm the author of *Drupal for Dummies* and a Drupal enthusiast.
  - Drupal experience**: Expert.
  - History** section: Member for 14 weeks 2 days.
  - Blog** link: View recent blog entries.
- Who's new** sidebar: Lynn, Lynn Beighley.
- Who's online** sidebar: There are currently 0 users and 1 guest online.
- Poll** sidebar: Should Lisa get on the plane? (Options: Yes, because she'll always have Paris; No! Stay with Rick!).
 

No! Stay with Rick!	0%
Yes, because she'll always have Paris.	0%
Total votes: 0	
<a href="#">Older polls</a>	

**Figure 12-11:**  
User profile  
page with  
custom  
Personal  
information  
fields.

### *Enhancing Profiles with user images*

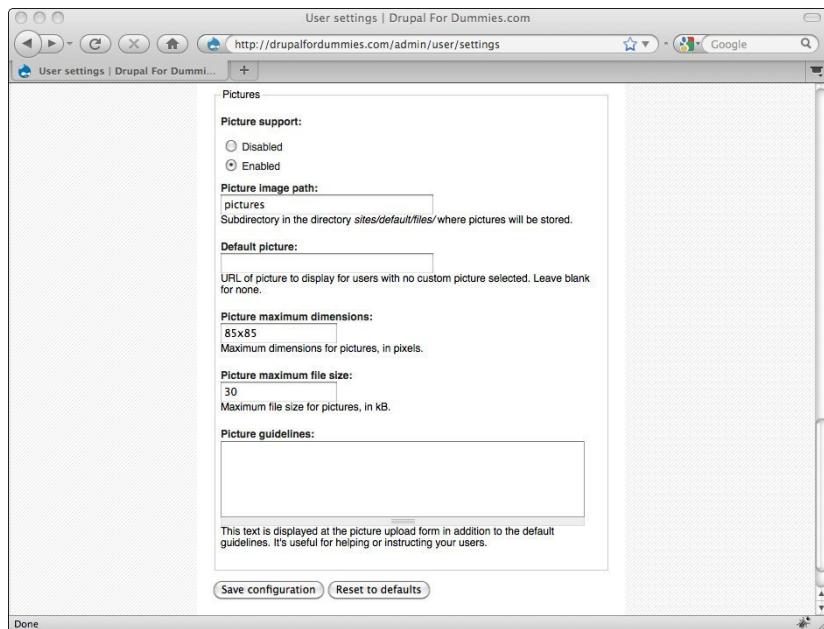
You can allow your registered users to upload an image that will show up on their profiles. To turn this on, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→User management→User settings.**
- 2. Scroll down to the Pictures section and select the Enabled radio button.**

More options will appear (see Figure 12-12).

You don't need to change any of these settings. The Picture image path controls where the user images will be stored under the Drupal directory on your Web server. The Picture maximum dimensions control the size of the profile image. It defaults to 85 pixels by 85 pixels. The Picture maximum file size defaults to 30k.

- 3. Click Save configuration.**



**Figure 12-12:**  
The Pictures  
settings to  
allow users  
to add pro-  
file pictures.

Now when a registered user chooses My Account→Edit, he will see a Picture section on the Edit form where he can select a photo to upload. This photo will appear on his user profile.

### ***Search module***

As you and your registered users add more content to your site, be it blog entries, forum posting, or news posts, visitors to your site will want to be able to find content of interest. Drupal has a Search module that displays a search box and returns a list of links to content that matches the search terms entered in the box.

To set up the Search module, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site Building→Modules.**
- 2. Check the box next to OpenID.**
- 3. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click Save Configuration.**
- 4. Choose Administer→Site Building→Blocks.** The entry Search form now appears in this list under Disabled.



### 5. Drag the Search form to the block of your choice.

You can drag the items in each block to control the order within the block. For example, you can drag the Search form item to the top of the Right sidebar section so it will appear near the top right of every page of your site.

### 6. Click Save blocks.

Your search form will now appear on your site. When users search for a word, links to content containing that word appear (see Figure 12-13).

The screenshot shows a Drupal-based website with a yellow header bar. The header includes the site name 'Drupal For Dummies.com' and a navigation menu with links for 'For Dummies', 'Lynn's Drupal Blog', 'Forums', and 'Contact Me'. Below the header is a left sidebar with a 'Drupal' logo and user links for 'Lynn Beighley': 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administer', and 'Log out'. The main content area displays a search form with tabs for 'Content' and 'Users', and a text input field 'Enter your keywords: activated'. Below the search form is a 'Search results' section with the heading 'A work in progress' and a note about account activation. A single search result is listed: 'Story - Lynn Beighley - 07/22/2009 - 18:58 - 0 comments'. To the right of the main content is a Right sidebar containing three blocks: 'Search this site:' with a search input field and button, 'Who's new' listing 'Lynn' and 'Lynn Beighley', and 'Who's online' showing '1 user and 0 guests online'. An 'Online users' block lists 'Lynn Beighley'. At the bottom of the page is a footer with the text 'drupalfordummies.com @2009-2010' and a 'Done' button.

**Figure 12-13:**  
Search form  
in Right  
sidebar  
and search  
results.

By default, the search form appears with both *Search* and *Search this site* printed above it. To get rid of *Search*, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Site building**→**Blocks**.
2. Click the **configure** link next to **Search form**.
3. In the **Block title**, enter the text `<none>`.  
You need to include the angle brackets.
4. Click **Save block**.



You can use this same technique to remove the title from any block component. For example, the poll in Figure 12-13 has the word *Poll* as a title. Because it's fairly obvious that it's a poll, I remove the title by choosing Administer→Site building→Blocks, where I click the configure link next to Most recent poll, enter <none> for the title, and click Save block.

## *Adding a Contact Form*

An important addition to most Web sites, especially ones offering products or services, is a contact form. This allows site visitors to ask for more information without having to locate an e-mail address on your site and send you a message.

Contact forms can also be constructed to allow certain types of messages to be sent to specific people on your staff. The contact form has a category drop-down box that allows visitors to select from a list of topics. For example, if you have a storefront and an employee in charge of shipping, you can create a contact form that, when submitted, sends the contents directly to the right person on your staff. The same contact form can be sent to your Web site administrator.

To create a contact form, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site Building→Modules.**
- 2. Check the box next to Contact.**
- 3. Scroll to the bottom of the page and click Save Configuration.**
- 4. Choose Administer→Site building→Contact form.**
- 5. Click the Add category tab.**

This opens the form, shown in Figure 12-14.

- 6. For category, enter a subject that you think someone would like to contact you about.**

I enter Website feedback. You'll have the chance to enter more categories later.

- 7. For recipients, enter the e-mail addresses, separated by commas, of everyone you want to receive the results of this form when a user submits it.**
- 8. If you want users to be sent a message after they submit the form, fill in the Auto-reply field.**
- 9. If you think the category, or subject, of this form is the most common one users will choose, set Selected to Yes. Click Save.**

You return to the Contact form list page.



To add more categories or subjects to your contact form, repeat Steps 1 through 9.

In my example, I add the category Product information.

The screenshot shows the Drupal admin interface for creating a contact form. On the left, there's a sidebar with links like 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator', 'Content management', 'Site building', 'Contact form', 'Menus', 'Modules', 'Themes', 'Triggers', 'Site configuration', 'User management', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Log out'. The main content area has a title 'Contact form' with tabs for 'List', 'Add category', and 'Settings'. Under 'Category:', the value 'Product information' is entered. In the 'Recipients:' field, 'lyn@drupalfordummies.com' is listed. The 'Auto-reply:' field contains the message 'Thank you for your comments. I will respond soon.'. Below these fields, there's a note about optional auto-replies and a weight dropdown set to '0'. A note also says that categories with lighter weights appear before heavier ones. There's a 'Selected:' dropdown set to 'No' and a note about setting it to 'Yes'. At the bottom, there's a 'Save' button and a 'Done' link. The right side of the screen shows a search bar, a 'Who's new' section with one user listed, a 'Who's online' section showing one user and zero guests, an 'Online users' section with one user listed, and a 'Poll' section asking 'Should lisa get on the plane?' with three options: 'Yes, because she'll always have Paris.', 'No! Stay with Rick!', and 'What plane, who's lisa?'. There's also a 'Vote' button.

**Figure 12-14:**  
Adding a category to a contact form.

You now have a contact form (see Figure 12-15).

To view yours, go to <http://yourwebsitename.com/contact>. For example, mine is located at <http://drupalfordummies.com/contact>.

The last step is to provide visitors to your site with a link to this form. To add a link to your Primary menu, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administrator**→**Site building**→**Menus**.
2. Click **Primary links**.

You will see a list of your current primary links. You need to add a new one for the contact form.

3. Choose **Add item**.

This opens the form, as shown in Figure 12-16.

This screenshot shows the contact form on the Drupal For Dummies website. On the left, a sidebar menu includes a 'Category' section with a drop-down menu containing 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator', and 'Logout'. The main content area contains fields for 'Your name', 'Your e-mail address', 'Subject', 'Category' (set to 'Website feedback'), and 'Message'. A checkbox for 'Send yourself a copy' is present, along with a 'Send e-mail' button. To the right, there's a search bar, a 'Who's new' section listing 'Lynn' and 'Lynn Beighley', a 'Who's online' section stating 'There are currently 1 user and 0 guests online', an 'Online users' section listing 'Lynn Beighley', and a poll titled 'Should Isla get on the plane?' with three options: 'Yes, because she'll always have Paris.', 'No! Stay with Rick!', and 'What plane, who's Isla?'. A 'Vote' button is also present.

**Figure 12-15:**  
Contact  
form with  
Category  
drop-down  
box.

This screenshot shows the 'Add item' tab of the Primary menu settings in the Drupal admin interface. The left sidebar lists 'Content management' under 'Site building', which includes 'Blocks', 'Contact form', 'Menus', 'Modules', 'Themes', 'Triggers', 'Site configuration', 'User management', 'Reports', 'Help', and 'Logout'. The main content area displays a form for adding a menu item. It includes fields for 'Path' (set to 'contact'), 'Menu link title' (set to 'Contact me'), 'Description', 'Enabled' status (checked), 'Expanded' checkbox (unchecked), 'Parent item' dropdown (set to '<Primary links>'), 'Weight' (set to 0), and a note about the weight limit. A 'Save' button is at the bottom. The right sidebar contains sections for 'Search this site', 'Who's new' (listing 'Lynn' and 'Lynn Beighley'), 'Who's online' (listing '1 user and 0 guests online'), 'Online users' (listing 'Lynn Beighley'), and the same poll from Figure 12-15.

**Figure 12-16:**  
The Add  
item tab of  
the Primary  
menu  
settings.

4. For Path, enter *contact*.
5. For Menu link title, enter the text you want to appear in your primary menu as the link to the contact form.
6. Click Save.



Your contact form will now be available to registered users.

If you want to make your contact form available to both registered and unregistered users, you need to change the permissions:

1. Choose Administer→User management→Permissions.
2. Locate the contact module and check the box next to *access site-wide contact form* under *anonymous user*.
3. Click Save permissions.



## Chapter 13

# Developing an Image Gallery

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Using the Image module
- ▶ Creating image galleries
- ▶ Attaching images to nodes
- ▶ Adding multiple images
- ▶ Creating gallery moderators

**T**hese days almost everyone is taking digital photos. Having an online image gallery, a place where you can showcase your photos, is a great way to share your personal experiences. You may wish to create a gallery as an archive just for yourself. Fortunately, you can create a gallery using the contributed Image module rather easily.

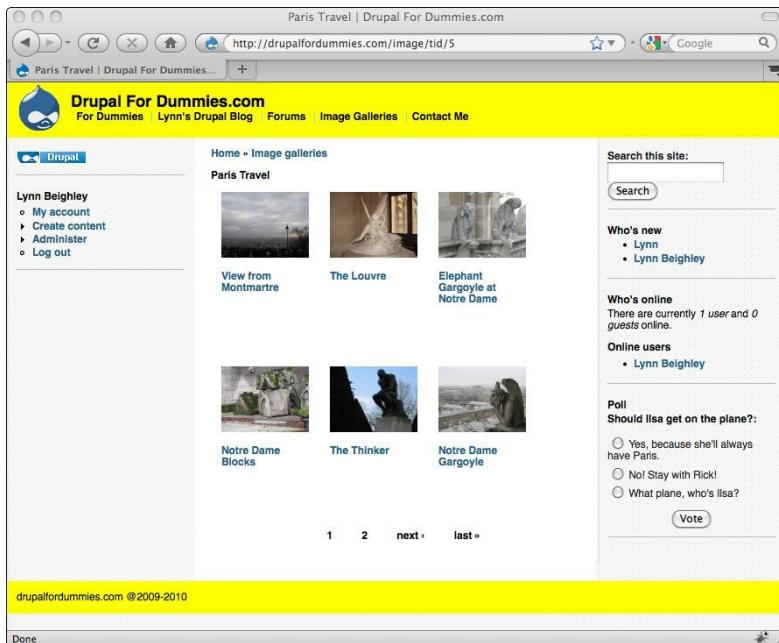
This chapter shows what a Drupal image gallery looks like, how to install the Image module, how to manage the gallery settings, how to allow others to help you manage your galleries, and how to create your own gallery or set of galleries.

## *Understanding Image Galleries*

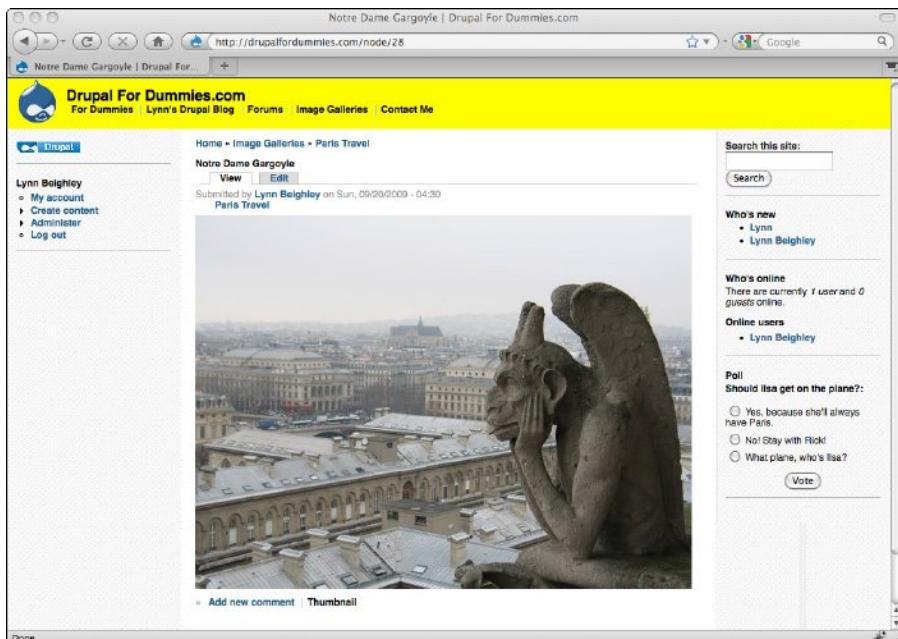
An image gallery is generally a set of images organized into some sort of collection and displayed as a set of small previews or thumbnails that link to individual larger images. Figure 13-1 shows the thumbnail view of an image gallery in Drupal.

In the thumbnail view, photos are represented by smaller versions. Each page of the album holds six thumbnails. If there are more than six images in the album, page numbers and next and previous links appear underneath.

Clicking on one of the thumbnails opens the larger version of that image (see Figure 13-2).



**Figure 13-1:**  
Thumbnail view of an image gallery.



**Figure 13-2:**  
Full size view of gallery image.

The full-size image displays the title of the image, which is set when the image is added to the gallery. It also shows the time and date the image was added as well as who added it. A link to allow users to add comments about the image is underneath.

The Image module discussed in this chapter allows GIF, JPG, and PNG file types.

## *Getting the Image and Image Gallery Modules*

Unlike most of the modules previously covered in this book, the Image and Image Gallery modules aren't part of the default Drupal installation. The Image Gallery module is included as part of the contributed Image module. It needs to be downloaded to your computer, uploaded to your Web server, extracted, enabled, and configured. The first step is downloading it.

### *Installing the Image module*

The Image module is available on the drupal.org Web site. To download this file, follow these steps:

1. Browse to <http://drupal.org/project/image>. Scroll down the page to find the download links (see Figure 13-3).
2. Locate the link to download this module and click it. Save this file to a directory you will remember.

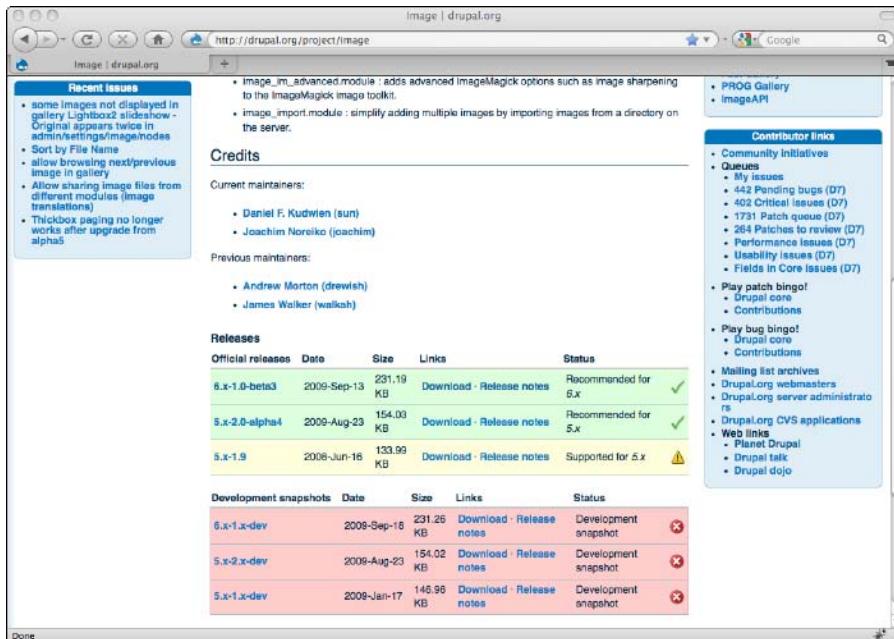
This module will download as a single compressed .tar.gz file.

As of this writing, the most current version for Drupal 6 is 6.x-1.0-beta3. Feel free to download more recent compatible versions.

3. Log in to your control panel on your ISP's Web site.

If you are comfortable using FTP software, you connect directly to your Web server with the FTP login and password provided by your ISP. If you go this route, extract the module on your local computer and FTP the extracted Images directory directly to your Web server's module directory under your Drupal installation.





**Figure 13-3:**  
The Image  
module  
download  
page.

#### 4. Find and click the link to a file manager.

You need a file manager so that you can select the `.tar.gz` file and put it in the module directory on your Web server. After you click the file manager, you will see a screen that displays the files on your Web server.

#### 5. You should see a single folder or directory named “html,” “www,” or “htdocs.” Click on its name to open it.

There may be several directories, but the one for your Web site should be easy to spot. This is where all your Web pages belong and where you need to install Drupal.

#### 6. Locate the folder named modules and click on it.

#### 7. Locate and click the upload link on your file manager.

You should see an upload form with a Browse button.

#### 8. Click Browse and find the Image module `.tar.gz` file you downloaded. Click Upload.

The compressed Image module file is now on your site in the correct folder and ready to be extracted.

#### 9. Click on the Image module `.tar.gz` to select the file.

You see a list of files that are stored inside your compressed file, all selected. You should see an option to uncompress the files. Leave the selection box set to uncompress “All.”

10. Click the Go button.
11. Select the original Image module `.tar.gz` file on your Web server and delete it.

## *Enabling the Image and Image Gallery modules*

After you have uploaded and extracted the Image module, Drupal will see it and it will show up in the module list. To enable it, follow these steps:

1. **Browse to Administer ➤ Site building ➤ Modules.** The Image module is made up of several modules and they all appear on this page (see Figure 13-4).
2. **Click the Enabled check box next to both the Image module and the Image Gallery module.**
3. **Click Save configuration.**

The new modules are now activated.

The screenshot shows the Drupal admin interface at `http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/modules`. The 'Image' and 'Image Gallery' modules are listed under the 'Image' category, both with their 'Enabled' checkboxes checked. Other modules listed include Tracker, Trigger, Update status, Upload, Image Attach, Image Import, ImageMagick Advanced Options, Author Pane, and Poormanscron. A 'Save configuration' button is visible at the bottom.

Enabled	Name	Version	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	Tracker	6.14	Enables tracking of recent posts for users. Depends on: Comment (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Trigger	6.14	Enables actions to be fired on certain system events, such as when new content is created.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Update status	6.14	Checks the status of available updates for Drupal and your installed modules and themes.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Upload	6.14	Allows users to upload and attach files to content.

Core - required			
Image			
Enabled	Name	Version	Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Image	6.x-1.0-beta3	Allows uploading, resizing and viewing of images. Required by: Image Attach (disabled), Image Gallery (enabled), Image Import (disabled)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Image Attach	6.x-1.0-beta3	Allows easy attaching of image nodes to other content types. Depends on: Image (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Image Gallery	6.x-1.0-beta3	Allows sorting and displaying of image galleries based on categories. Depends on: Image (enabled), Taxonomy (enabled)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Image Import	6.x-1.0-beta3	Allows batches of images to be imported from a directory on the server. Depends on: Image (enabled)
<input type="checkbox"/>	ImageMagick Advanced Options	6.x-1.0-beta3	Adds advanced options to the ImageMagick image toolkit.

Other			
Enabled	Name	Version	Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Author Pane	6.x-1.1	Gathers information from user related contrib modules into one template.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Poormanscron	6.x-1.0	Internal scheduler for users without a cron application.

**Figure 13-4:**  
The new Image module contains five modules.

## Configuring image galleries

Before you can put an image into an image gallery, you need to create your first image gallery. Follow these steps:

- 1. Browse to Administer→Content management→Image galleries.**
  - 2. Click the Add gallery tab.**
- This opens the Add gallery form (see Figure 13-5).
- 3. For Gallery name, enter a short, descriptive title.**
  - 4. For Description, enter a few sentences that describe the images you will store in this gallery.**
  - 5. Click Save.**



The Image Gallery module allows you to create as many galleries as you want. Simply repeat the preceding steps to add additional galleries.

**Figure 13-5:**  
Add gallery  
form to  
create a  
new image  
gallery.

## Adding images to your gallery

Now that you've created your galleries, you can add images to them. Adding images to a gallery is similar to adding other content types, like posts or blogs.

For each image to add to a gallery, follow these steps:

**1. Choose Create content>Create image.**

This opens the Create image form (see Figure 13-6).

**2. Enter a title for your image in the Title field.**

**3. Choose one of the galleries you created in the preceding section from the Image Galleries drop-down box.**

**4. Click the Image text box or the Browse button to locate the file you wish to upload.**

**5. If you want to add more information about this image, type it in the Body field.**

**6. Click Save.**

Your image has now been placed in your image gallery.



To view your new image galleries, go to <http://yourwebsitename.com/image>. For example, mine is located at <http://drupalfordummies.com/image>.

Figure 13-6: Add an image to your gallery with the Create Image form.

## Linking to your gallery

The last step is to make your galleries more visible by providing a link to them. To add a link to your image galleries in your Primary menu, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Site building**→**Menus**.

2. Click **Primary links**.

You will see a list of your current primary links. You need to add a new one for the image galleries.

3. Choose **Add item**.

This opens the form shown in Figure 13-7.

4. For **Path**, enter *image*.

5. For **Menu link title**, enter the text you want to appear in your primary menu as the link to your image galleries.

6. Click **Save**.

Your image galleries will now be available to site visitors.

**Figure 13-7:**

The Add item tab of the Primary menu settings.

## Controlling gallery options

When you view your main image gallery page, you see a list of galleries, each with a representative thumbnail from that gallery. The thumbnail displayed is always the most recent added to the gallery. When you click a link to a gallery, you see a set of thumbnails of images in that gallery. By default, gallery listings contain six images per page.

You can change the number of images displayed on each gallery listing page and modify the order in which image thumbnails are displayed. Follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Site configuration**→**Images**.
2. If you see several tabs, click the **Image gallery** tab.
3. Change the **Images per page** setting to control how many thumbnail images show up on each gallery thumbnail page.
4. If you wish to display the name of the person who uploaded an image, check the **Display node info** box.

This only matters if you allow other people to post images to your galleries.

**Figure 13-8:**  
The Gallery  
settings  
form allows  
you to  
modify  
gallery  
settings.

**5. You can change the order in which the thumbnails are displayed in your gallery listings using the Image display sort order options.**

By default, the most recently added images appear first and the oldest ones last.

**6. Click Save configuration.**

## Controlling image options

The Image module has more options that control the size of the thumbnails it creates from your images, the size of images you can upload, and several other settings. You can modify the default image settings by accessing the Images configuration options. Follow these steps:

**1. Choose Administer→Site configuration→Images.**

**2. If you see several tabs, click the Image tab.**

This opens the Image file settings form (see Figure 13-9).

**3. Leave the Default image path set to image.**

The Default image path is a folder under the Drupal directory on your Web server that controls where all the images you add are saved.

The screenshot shows the 'Image' configuration page in the Drupal admin interface. The left sidebar has a 'My account' section and a 'Content management' section with links like 'Create content', 'Add media', 'Actions', 'Administration', 'Image', 'File formats', 'Logging and alerts', 'Performance', 'Poormanscron', 'Search settings', 'Site information', and 'Site maintenance'. The main content area has tabs for 'File and sizes', 'Image attach', and 'Image gallery'. The 'File and sizes' tab is selected, showing the 'Default image path' field set to 'image'. Below it are fields for 'Maximum upload size' (set to 800 KB) and 'Image size 888'. A note explains that the 'Scale image operation resizes images so that they fit within the given dimensions. If only one dimension is specified the other dimension will be computed based on the image's aspect ratio. The Scale and crop image operation resizes images to exactly the given dimensions. If only one dimension is specified the image will not be cropped, making this is equivalent to Scale image.' There is also a note about 'Original' dimensions being used for resizing. On the right side, there are sections for 'Who's new' (Lynn, Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (1 user, 0 guests), 'Online users' (Lynn Beighley), and a poll titled 'Should Lisa get on the plane?' with three options: 'Yes, because she'll always have Paris.', 'Not Stay with Rick!', and 'What plane, who's Lisa?'. At the bottom are 'Save configuration' and 'Reset to defaults' buttons.

**Figure 13-9:**  
The Image file settings form allows you to modify image settings.

**4. If you will be adding images larger than 800KB to your image gallery, increase the maximum size.**

If you aren't sure, leave it set to 800KB.



If you try to add an image that is larger than 800KB, you will get a message that your file is too large. You can then change the Maximum upload size setting appropriately.

**5. To change the size of the thumbnail images, change the Width and Height boxes next to the Preview row under the Image sizes section.**

If you have images with differing dimensions in your collection, you might want to use only a width setting and leave the height setting blank.



If you wish, you can make full-size images open in a new browser window when a thumbnail is clicked. To do this, change the Link setting drop-down box to New window next to the Preview row under the Image sizes section.

**6. Click Save configuration.**

## *Additional Image Modules*



When you install the Image module, you also receive a few other modules. These are Image Attach, Image Import, and ImageMagick Advanced Options.

Before you can use these modules, you need to enable them:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules.**
- 2. Click the Enabled check boxes.**
- 3. Click Save configuration.**

## *Image Attach*

Image Attach allows you to easily add images to all your content types. Using this module, you don't need to use HTML code, as I did when I added my profile photo in Chapter 6. Instead, you can use the same form to add an image to a post, forum response, or blog entry that you used to add photos to the gallery.

To add the capability to attach images to your content types, follow these steps:

**1. Choose Administer→Content management→Content types.**

You will see a list of the current content types set up on your site.

**2. Click the edit link next to the content type to which you want to be able to attach images.**

In my case, I choose Blog entry. The Blog entry settings page opens (see Figure 13-10).

**3. Scroll down to the Image attach settings section and expand it.**

**4. Change Attach images to Enabled.**

**5. Leave the Teaser image size set to Thumbnail.**



The Teaser image size controls what size image is actually posted. If you want a thumbnail-sized image to accompany your content, leave this set to Thumbnail. You can also display the image at its full size by changing this setting to Original.

**6. Click Save content type.**

Now every time I create a blog entry, a new section named Attached images appears on my content creation page. I can either attach an image I've already added to my gallery or add an entirely new image.

Blog entry | Drupal For Dummies.com

http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/content/node-type/blog

Blog entry | Drupal For Dummies.com

- Site configuration
- User management
- Reports
- Help
- Log out

A brief description of this content type. This text will be displayed as part of the list on the create content page.

Submission form settings

Workflow settings

Comment settings

Image Attach settings

Attach images:

Disabled

Enabled

Should this node allow users to upload an image?

Teaser image size:

Thumbnail

This determines the size of the image that appears when the node is displayed as a teaser. 'Hidden' will not show the image.

Teaser image weight:

0

This value determines the order of the image when displayed in the teaser.

Full node image size:

Original

This determines the size of the image that appears when the full node is displayed. 'Hidden' will not show the image.

Full node image weight:

0

This value determines the order of the image when displayed in the body.

Save content type Reset to defaults

Should Ilsa get on the plane?

Yes, because she'll always have Paris.

No! Stay with Rick!

What plane, who's Ilsa?

Vote

drupalfordummies.com ©2009-2010

Done

**Figure 13-10:**  
Blog entry  
settings  
page.

To attach an image to a node, in this case a blog entry, follow these steps:

**1. Choose Create content ↗ Blog entry.**

This opens a Create Blog entry page.

**2. After you finish writing your blog entry, scroll down and expand the Attached images section (see Figure 13-11).**

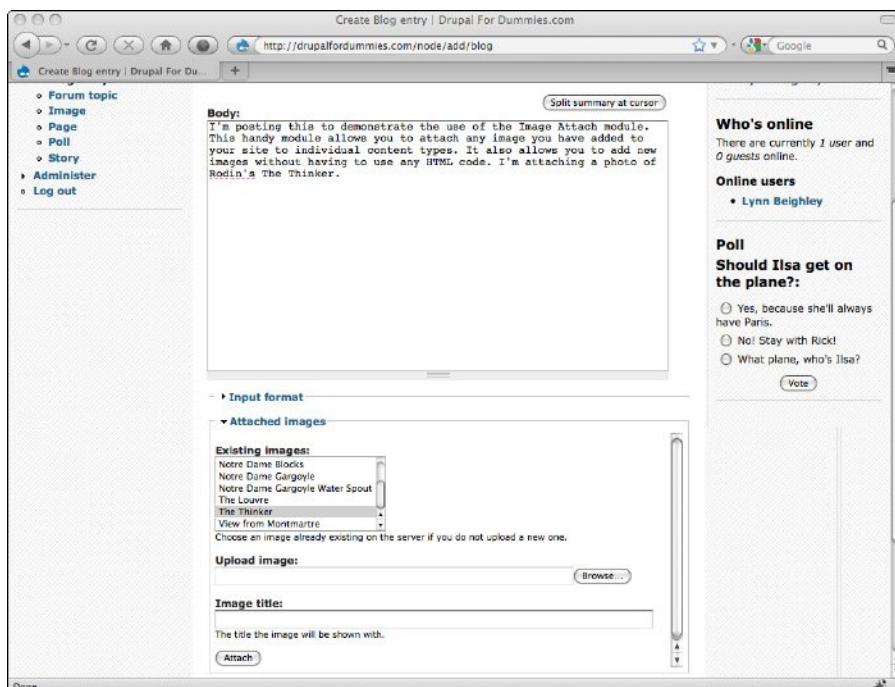
You will see a list of all the images you have already added.

**3. Either choose an image from the list, or upload a new one by clicking on the Browse button and selecting one.**

**4. If you upload a new image, give it a title and click Attach.**

**5. Click Save.**

Your latest blog entry will now have a thumbnail image in it. When the thumbnail is clicked, the full size view of the image will appear (refer to Figure 13-2).



**Figure 13-11:**  
The  
Attached  
images  
section of a  
Create Blog  
entry page.

## Using the Image Import module

The Image Import module allows you to import a large number of images into Drupal.



Unlike using the Image module to upload a single image, the Image Import module requires you to use a file manager or FTP program to copy all of your image files to your Web server before it will pull them into Drupal.

To add multiple images to Drupal with the Image import module, follow these steps:

1. Log in to your control panel on your ISP's Web site.
2. Find and click the link to a file manager.
3. You should see a single folder or directory named "html," "www," or "htdocs." Click on its name to open it.
4. Create a new folder on your Web server. Name it *tempimages* or a name you will remember.

This is the folder where you will temporarily store your images until you add them to Drupal.

5. Locate and click the upload link on your file manager.

You should see an upload form with a Browse button.

6. Click Browse and find the images you wish to upload. Copy them to the *tempimages* directory.
7. Choose Administer→Site configuration→Images. Click the Image import tab.

8. Type the path to your new folder in the box labeled *Import path* (see Figure 13-12).

The path will be either */tempimages* or *tempimages*, depending on where Drupal is installed:

- If you installed Drupal right under the main Web directory and don't have a Drupal folder on your Web server, use *tempimages*.
- If you created a folder under the Drupal directory, use */tempimages*.

9. Click Save configuration.

Drupal knows where your images are, but they still haven't been added to galleries or the image system on Drupal. You need to tell Drupal which images to add, and if you wish, give them titles.

10. Choose Administrator→Content management→Image import.

This displays a list of all the images you have placed in the *tempimages* directory (see Figure 13-13).



The screenshot shows the Drupal administrative interface for the 'Image Import' module. The URL is [http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/settings/image/image\\_import](http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/settings/image/image_import). The page title is 'Images'. On the left, there's a sidebar with links like 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator', 'Content management', 'Site building', 'Site configuration', 'Actions', 'Administration theme', 'Clean URLs', 'Date and time', 'Error reporting', 'File system', 'Image toolkit', 'Images', 'Input formats', 'Logging and alerts', 'Performance', 'Peormanscron', 'Search settings', 'Site information', 'Site maintenance', and 'User management'. The main content area has a heading 'Import path: \* tempimages'. A note says: 'The directory to import image nodes from. Drupal will need to have write access to this directory so we can move the file.' Another note says: 'Note: a path beginning with a / indicates the path is relative to the servers root, one starting without specifies a path relative to Drupal's root. I.e. /temp/images would be the temp directory off the root while temp/images would be inside Drupal's directory.' Below this are 'Save configuration' and 'Reset to defaults' buttons. To the right, there's a 'Who's new' section with Lynn and Lynn Beighley, an 'Who's online' section showing 1 user and 0 guests, an 'Online users' section with Lynn Beighley, and a 'Poll' section asking 'Should Ilsa get on the plane?' with three options: 'Yes, because she'll always have Paris.', 'No! Stay with Rick!', and 'What plane, who's Ilsa?'. A 'Vote' button is at the bottom of the poll.

**Figure 13-12:**  
Setting  
Image  
path for  
the Image  
Import  
module.

The screenshot shows the 'Image Import' results page. The URL is [http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/content/image\\_import](http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/content/image_import). The page title is 'Image import'. The left sidebar is identical to Figure 13-12. The main content area shows a table of imported files:

Name	Size	Dimensions	Title	Body
dog2.jpg	83.98 KB	604x453	dog2	dog2
dog3.jpg	4.53 KB	130x97	dog3	dog3
dog4.jpg	64.07 KB	604x453	dog4	dog4
snow1.jpg	80.53 KB	604x453	snow1	snow1
snow2.jpg	52.8 KB	604x453	snow2	snow2
snow3.jpg	69.53 KB	604x453	snow3	snow3

Below the table are two checkboxes: 'Reproduce directories structure with subgalleries' (unchecked) and 'Delete empty directories after import' (unchecked). At the bottom is an 'Import' button. The right sidebar includes sections for 'Who's new', 'Who's online', 'Online users', and a 'Poll'.

**Figure 13-13:**  
Images  
in the  
tempimages  
directory.

**11. Change the title and body text, or make them blank.**

Drupal fills in the blanks with the first part of each filename. Chances are you don't want that to appear as the title and body text under your images, so replace or remove it.

**12. Click the check box next to each file you wish to import and choose the image gallery where you want it to appear. Click Import.**

You don't have to move all the files at once, and you don't have to put them in galleries. Any files you don't select by clicking the check box will still be on this page when you come back after choosing Import.



Files that you select will be deleted from the tempimages directory after they are added to Drupal.

## *Finding images in Drupal*

When you add an image to a gallery, it's pretty easy to find by viewing the gallery and locating the thumbnail. But as you add more images, and when you add images that aren't in a gallery, locating them can be tricky. Here are two ways to find your images:

✓ Use the Search module.

This isn't the best method (you may see results in your list that are not images), but it's the quickest. Type in a word from the title of an image to see that image included in the search results.

✓ Follow these steps to generate a list of images:

1. Choose Administer→Content management→Content.
2. Select the type radio button and change the drop-down to Image.
3. Choose Filter.

You will see a list of all your images and can click on the name of the one you are looking for.

## *Modifying or deleting images*

As with any content type, you can modify or delete images by browsing to them and clicking the Edit tab. There you can make changes or press Delete if you no longer want the image on your site.

## Allowing Others to Contribute Images

As your site grows, you might want to allow trusted users to add images to the site galleries. You can create a new user role with the correct permissions and then assign specific users to that roll.

### Create a photo editor role

The first step is to create a new role. Users in this role will have the same permission as any authenticated user, except they will have the additional permission to add images and delete images they have added.

1. Choose **Administer**⇒**User management**⇒**Roles**.
2. Type photo editors in the blank and click **Add role**.

The photo editors role has been created but can't actually do anything more than any other authenticated user at this point. You need to add permissions.

### Add permissions to photo editor

To add permissions to the photo editors role, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**⇒**User management**⇒**Permissions**.

This opens the Permissions page (see Figure 13-14).

The screenshot shows the 'Permissions' page in a web browser. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/user/permissions>. The page displays a table of permissions for four user roles: anonymous user, authenticated user, photo editors, and story editors. The 'Image module' section is highlighted, showing permissions like 'create images', 'delete any images', etc., with checkboxes indicating which roles have which permissions. The 'photo editors' role has checked boxes for 'create images', 'edit any images', and 'view original images'. The 'story editors' role also has a checked box for 'view original images'.

Permission	anonymous user	authenticated user	photo editors	story editors
administer forums	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
create forum topics	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
delete any forum topic	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
delete own forum topics	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
edit any forum topic	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
edit own forum topics	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Image module</b>				
create images	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
delete any images	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
delete own images	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
edit any images	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
edit own images	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
view original images	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>image_attach module</b>				
attach images	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 13-14:  
Image  
module  
section  
of the  
Permissions  
page.



If you are still on the Roles screen, you can click the edit permissions link next to the newly created photo editors role.

2. Scroll down to the image module section.
3. Under the photo editors column, check the following: create images, delete own images, edit own images, view original images.
4. Click Save permissions.

## Assign photo editors role to user

To allow a trusted user to add and delete his own images, he needs to be added to the photo editors role. Follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer → User management → Users.
2. Locate the user you wish to add to the photo editors role and click the edit link to the right of his name.
3. Click the Edit tab.
4. Under the Roles section, check the photo editors box.
5. Click Save.

When this user logs in, he will now see a link called *Image* under the Create content section of the navigation menu. He will be able to add an image using the form shown in Figure 13-6.



Users with the photo editor role will not be able to create new galleries. If you wish to allow them that permission, follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer → User management → Permissions and scroll down to the image\_gallery module section.
2. Check the box under photo editors.
3. Click Save permissions.

## Controlling Image Gallery Access

By default, Drupal allows unregistered users to view your image galleries. You may wish to only allow registered users to see them, or you might want certain galleries visible, and other ones protected. Unfortunately, there are no permissions settings that control this. You need the Image Gallery Access module.

## Installing the Image Gallery Access module

To control access to your image galleries, follow these steps:

1. Download the latest version of the Image Gallery Access module, located at [http://drupal.org/project/image\\_gallery\\_access](http://drupal.org/project/image_gallery_access).

2. Download the ACL module, located at <http://drupal.org/project/acl>.



The Access Control List (ACL) module works behind the scenes with the Image Gallery Access module. By itself, the ACL module doesn't add any new features, but the Image Gallery Access requires the ACL module to operate correctly.

3. Install both the Image Gallery Access module and the ACL module.

Follow the steps shown in the earlier section "Installing the Image module."

4. Choose Administer → Site building → Modules and enable both the ACL and Image Gallery Access modules. Click Save configuration.

5. At this point, you may see the error message *The content access permissions need to be rebuilt. Please visit this page* (see Figure 13-15). Click the link.

6. Choose Rebuild permissions.

The new modules now function.

## Using the Image Gallery Access module

You can now use the Image Gallery Access module to restrict access to individual galleries. Follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer → Content management → Image galleries.

You are on the List tab of the Image galleries section.

2. Click the edit link next to the gallery you wish to modify.

This opens the gallery settings form with a new Access control section (see Figure 13-16).

The content access permissions need to be rebuilt. Please visit [this page](#).

Enabled	Name	Version	Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ACL	6.x-1.0	Access control list API. Has no features on its own. Required by: Image Gallery Access. ( <a href="#">enabled</a> )
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Image Gallery Access	6.x-1.0-beta3	Allows image galleries to be set private and to be given moderators. Depends on: ACL. ( <a href="#">enabled</a> ), Image Gallery ( <a href="#">enabled</a> ), Image ( <a href="#">enabled</a> ), Taxonomy ( <a href="#">enabled</a> )

**Figure 13-15:**  
Error link  
when  
installing  
the ACL  
module.

View this gallery:  anonymous user  anonymous user  anonymous user  anonymous user  
 authenticated user  authenticated user  authenticated user  authenticated user  
 photo editors  photo editors  photo editors  photo editors  
 story editors  story editors  story editors  story editors

Moderators receive all grants above; to moderate comments, they also need **administrator comments** (which is a global permission!).

Add user:   
  
Note: Changes to moderators are not saved until you click [Submit] below.

Update the permissions:  
 for all 8 nodes immediately  in batches of 20 now  rebuild all permissions later

If you make any node access changes, then each node in this gallery needs to be updated. Hover over the radio buttons for details.

**Figure 13-16:**  
Image  
Gallery  
Control  
module options.

You can control access to the current gallery with the four columns:



- ✓ **View this gallery:** Allows designated roles to view images in this gallery. Allowing only authenticated users to view this gallery is how you make a gallery private.
- ✓ **Post in this gallery:** Allows designated roles to post new images into this gallery.
- ✓ **Edit images:** Allows designated roles to change the title and body text for an image.
- ✓ **Delete images:** Allows designated roles to delete an image from this gallery.



On this form, as well as the Permissions page, if you give anonymous users permission to do something, you should also give authenticated users the same permission. The two groups are mutually exclusive. They are either anonymous or registered. If you give permission only to the anonymous group, authenticated users will not have it.

## *Adding moderators*

A moderator is a user with the capability to add, edit, and delete images. The Image Gallery Control module grants moderators all four capabilities: view, post, edit, and delete. Moderators can edit and delete images added by everyone, not just their own.



Making someone a moderator has the same end result as creating a role and assigning a user to it. The advantage of using the moderator feature of the Image Gallery Control is that it doesn't clutter up your Permissions page with yet another role. It's simpler to assign a moderator than to create an entire role and assign a user to that role.

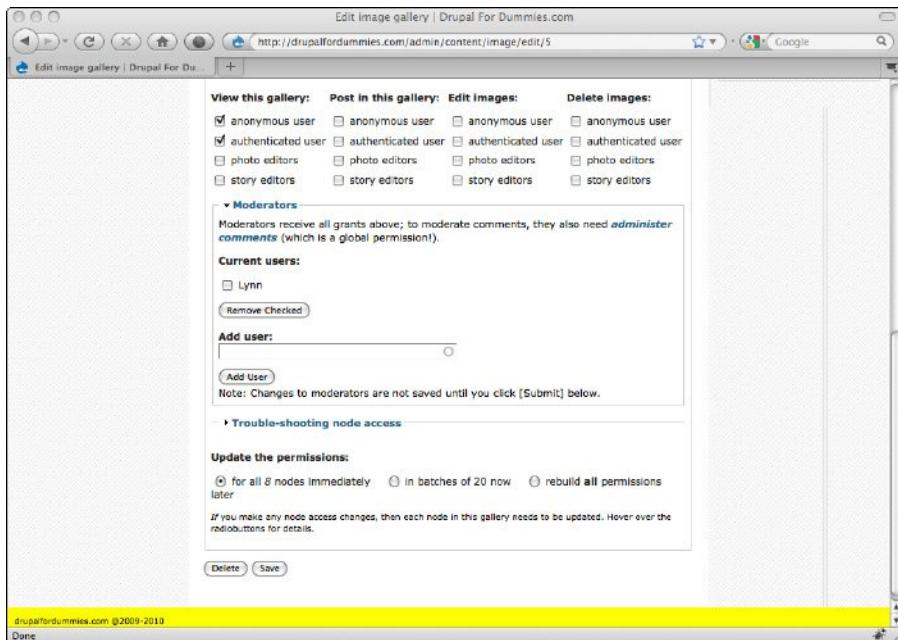
To add a moderator to a gallery, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Content management**→**Image galleries**.
2. Click the edit link next to the gallery you wish to modify.
3. If it isn't visible, expand the **Moderators** section under the Access control section.
4. In the **Add user** field, type in the username of the person you wish to have moderator status.
5. Choose **Add user**.

You will see the username with a check box (see Figure 13-17).

6. Click **Save** to save the new moderator information.

**Figure 13-17:**  
The  
Moderator  
feature of  
the Image  
Gallery  
Access  
module.



## *Removing moderators*

If you want to remove a moderator, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Content management**→**Image galleries**.
2. Click the edit link next to the gallery from which you want to remove a moderator.
3. Check the box next to the username you wish to remove, and click **Remove Checked**.
4. Click **Save**.

## Chapter 14

# Interacting with Other Sites

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Pulling in Twitter and Facebook statuses
- ▶ Displaying YouTube videos
- ▶ Aggregating RSS feeds
- ▶ Sharing a feed from your site

**1**

t's all about Web 2.0. You're developing a Web site for your users with interactive features and timely information. But until now, all the content on your site has come from you, with a little help from your users.

Your site doesn't have to exist in a vacuum. There are lots of modules for Drupal that let you pull in information from other sites and push out content from your site. In this chapter, I take a look at a few nifty modules that let you tie in content from other sites, including such favorites as Twitter, Facebook, YouTube, and Amazon.

## *Working with Activity Stream*

Activity Stream is a Drupal module that lets you publish your social media content on your own Web site. With Activity Stream, every time you twitter, post a link on Digg, or receive a Facebook notification, you can view that information on your Drupal site. There are many add-on modules for popular social media sites and services that extend the Activity Stream module. Here are a few of them:

- ✓ **Facebook:** The current front-runner in the social media wars.
- ✓ **YouTube:** Post video streams directly from YouTube.
- ✓ **Qik:** Allows you to share live video from your mobile phone.
- ✓ **Identica.ca:** A Twitter-like status update site with a few more features.

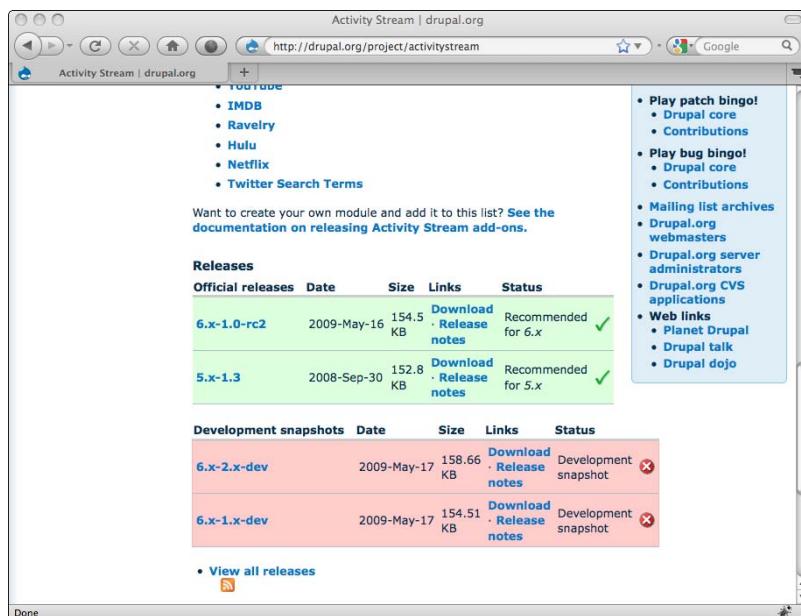
- ✓ **Blogger:** Online blogging service.
- ✓ **Goodreads:** A place to research and compare notes on books.
- ✓ **IMDB:** All about movies and entertainment information.

Each registered user on your site can have his own set of activity streams. By default, they appear under the user profile section. Later in this chapter, I show you how to put your activity stream in a block and place it in the Right sidebar.

## *Installing Activity Stream*

The Activity Stream module is available on the drupal.org Web site. To download this file, follow these steps:

1. **Browse to <http://drupal.org/project/activitystream>. Scroll down the page to find the download links (see Figure 14-1).**
  2. **Locate the link to download this module and click it. Save this file to a directory you will remember.**
- This module will download as a single compressed `.tar.gz` file. As of this writing, the most current version for Drupal 6 is 6.x-1.0-rc2.
3. **Log in to your control panel on your ISP's Web site or use an FTP client.**



**Figure 14-1:**  
The Activity Stream module download page.

**4. Find and click the link to a file manager.**

After you click the file manager, you will see a screen that displays the files on your Web server.

**5. You should see a single folder or directory named *html*, *www*, or *htdocs*. Click on its name to open it.**

There may be several directories, but the one for your Web site should be easy to spot.

**6. If you see the Drupal directory, click on it, and then the modules directory. If not, locate the modules directory and click on it.****7. Locate and click the upload link on your file manager.**

You should see an upload form with a Browse button.

**8. Click Browse and find the Activity Stream module *.tar.gz* file you downloaded. Click Upload.**

The compressed Activity Stream module file is now on your site in the correct folder and ready to be extracted.

**9. Click on the Activity Stream module *.tar.gz* to select the file.**

You see a list of files that are stored inside your compressed file, all selected.

**10. You should see an option to uncompress the files. Leave the selection box set to uncompress “All” and click the Go button.****11. Select the original Activity Stream module *.tar.gz* file on your Web server and delete it.**

## *Installing additional modules*

Depending on which services you use, you can download and install some additional modules. The Activity Stream page at <http://drupal.org/project/activitystream> has a list of links to add-ons.

Follow the steps you used to install the Activity Stream module. The additional modules I installed are:

- ✓ **Activity Stream for Facebook:** [http://drupal.org/project/activitystream\\_facebook](http://drupal.org/project/activitystream_facebook)
- ✓ **Activity Stream for YouTube:** [http://drupal.org/project/activitystream\\_youtube](http://drupal.org/project/activitystream_youtube)
- ✓ **Twitter Search Feeds:** [http://drupal.org/project/twitter\\_search\\_feeds](http://drupal.org/project/twitter_search_feeds)

## *Enabling Activity Stream modules*

Your new modules will now appear in the module list (see Figure 14-2).

To enable them, follow these steps:

1. **Browse to Administer→Site building→Modules.**

The new modules are located in the Activity Stream section.

2. **Select the Enabled check box next to all the modules in the Activity Stream section.**

3. **Click Save configuration.**

The new modules are now enabled.

Activity Stream			
Enabled	Name	Version	Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Activity Stream Core	6.x-1.0-rc2	Core API module for Activity Streams Required by: Delicious Bookmarks (enabled), Digg (enabled), Facebook (enabled), Feed stream (enabled), Flickr Stream (enabled), Last.fm (enabled), Twitter (enabled), YouTube (enabled), Twitter Search Feeds (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Delicious Bookmarks	6.x-1.0-rc2	Your links on Delicious Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled), Feed stream (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Digg	6.x-1.0-rc2	What's been Dugg Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled), Feed stream (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Facebook	6.x-1.0	Facebook is a social utility that connects you with the people around you Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled), Feed stream (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Feed stream	6.x-1.0-rc2	Pull in updates from any feed, includes the favicon Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled) Required by: Delicious Bookmarks (enabled), Digg (enabled), Facebook (enabled), Last.fm (enabled), Twitter (enabled), YouTube (enabled), Twitter Search Feeds (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Flickr Stream	6.x-1.0-rc2	Your activity on Flickr Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Last.fm	6.x-1.0-rc2	What you're listening to Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled), Feed stream (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Twitter	6.x-1.0-rc2	Public Twitter tweets Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled), Feed stream (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Twitter Search Feeds	6.x-1.0-beta1	Tweets about the search term Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled), Feed stream (enabled)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	YouTube	6.x-1.0	Broadcast Yourself Depends on: Activity Stream Core (enabled), Feed stream (enabled)

**Figure 14-2:**  
The Activity Stream modules.

## *Pulling in social media*

After the Activity Stream and related modules are enabled, you can begin pulling in content from other sites. Activity Stream is based on an individual user. To set it up for use with a particular user, follow these steps:

1. **Choose Administer→User management→Users.**

- Locate the user you want to have an activity stream. Click the Edit link to the right of the user's name.



In my case, I add it to my own account.

If you are adding the Activity Stream to the user account you are currently using, you can choose My account → Edit → Activity Stream.

- Click the Activity Stream link under the Edit tab.

This opens the Activity Stream setup page (see Figure 14-3).

This form has blanks for specific Web sites and a large box for Rich Site Summary (RSS) feeds. (I discuss RSS feeds later in this chapter.) With the exception of the Facebook field, the fields on this page are simple to fill out. Del.icio.us, lastfm, Digg, Flickr, and YouTube simply need your username on those sites.

- Enter your username for the particular Web site you wish to include in your Activity Stream output and click Save.

Your streams will update automatically at intervals, but to make it update immediately so you can see the new data, you need to run your cron program to make Drupal go out and get your information from the Web sites.

The screenshot shows the 'Activity Stream' configuration page for a Drupal site. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/user/1/edit/activitystream>. The page title is 'Activity Stream | Drupal For Dummies.com'. The left sidebar shows the user 'Lynn Beighley' with links for 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator', and 'Log out'. The main content area has tabs for 'View', 'Edit' (which is selected), and 'Contact'. The 'Activity Stream' tab is active. It contains sections for 'Facebook Status RSS feed URL' (set to <http://www.facebook.com/feeds/status.php?id=12345671&viewer=1234567>), 'Del.icio.us settings' (username: lynnbeighley), 'lastfm settings' (username: lynnbeighley), 'Digg settings' (username: lynnbeighley), and 'Feed settings' (Feed URL: [http://origin.feeds.pheedo.com/BW/Travel\\_News-rss](http://origin.feeds.pheedo.com/BW/Travel_News-rss)). To the right, there are 'Who's new' (Lynn, Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (1 user, 0 guests), 'Online users' (Lynn Beighley), and a 'Poll' asking 'Should Ilsa get on the plane?' with three options: 'Yes, because she'll always have Paris.' (selected), 'No! Stay with Rick!', and 'What plane, who's Ilsa?'. A 'Search this site' bar is also present.

**Figure 14-3:**  
Activity  
Stream  
settings  
page.

**5. Choose Administer → Reports → Status Report.**

**6. Under the listing Cron maintenance tasks, click the link *run cron automatically*.**

You can now view your Activity Stream page by choosing the View tab of the user's profile. In my case, I choose My account. The Activity Stream appears on the View tab (see Figure 14-4).

To activate your Facebook feed is a little trickier. Facebook requires a URL that you have to dig around a bit to find. Follow these steps:

**1. Log in to your FaceBook account.**

**2. Navigate to <http://www.facebook.com/notifications.php>.**

This opens a page with a list of your notifications (see Figure 14-5).

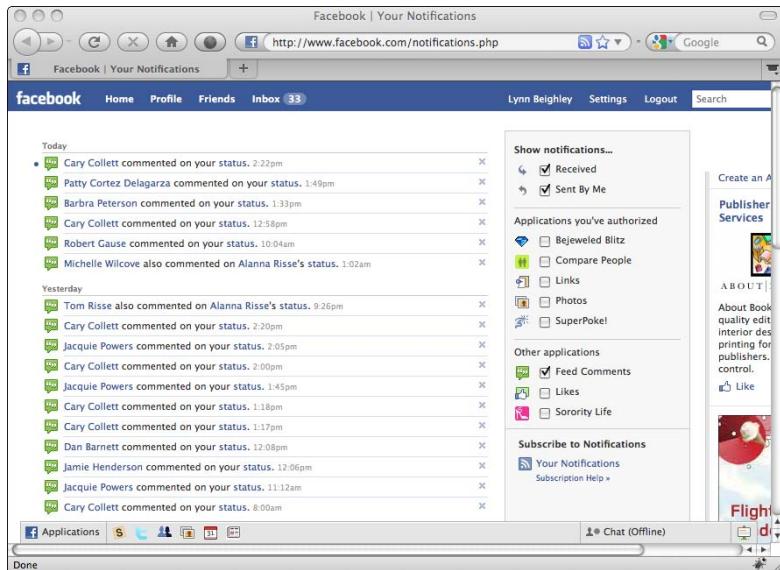
**3. Click the Your Notifications link at the bottom of the gray right-hand column.**

This opens a page with a URL similar to:

```
http://www.facebook.com/feeds/notifications.php?id=123456789&viewer=123456789&key=74074ea623&format=rss20
```

The screenshot shows Lynn Beighley's Drupal profile page. At the top, there's a yellow header bar with the site logo and navigation links: 'For Dummies', 'Lynn's Drupal Blog', 'Forums', 'Image Galleries', and 'Contact Me'. Below the header, the main content area has a blue sidebar on the left containing a user menu with options like 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator', and 'Log out'. The main content area displays the 'Activity Stream' for Lynn Beighley. It lists several recent posts and tweets, such as 'Lynn posted Air New Zealand's Matchmaking Flight Set for Takeoff!', 'Lynn tweeted "I asked the Google, "What is RSS" and the top answer is: The Rashtriya Swayamsevak Sangh (, National Volunteers Organization)"', and 'Lynn posted The Marcus Corporation to Webcast 2009 Annual Shareholders Meeting'. To the right of the stream, there's a small thumbnail image of Lynn. On the far right, there are several sidebar modules: 'Search this site:', 'Who's new' (listing Lynn and Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (showing 1 user and 0 guests online), 'Online users' (listing Lynn Beighley), and a 'Poll' titled 'Should Ilsa get on the plane?' with three options: 'Yes, because she'll always have Paris.', 'No! Stay with Rick!', and 'What plane, who's Ilsa?'. At the bottom of the page, there's a 'History' section and a 'Member for' section indicating '39 years 39 weeks'.

**Figure 14-4:**  
Activity Stream output on the profile page.



**Figure 14-5:**  
FaceBook  
notifications  
page.

#### 4. Copy this URL to a notepad or word processor.

#### 5. In your copy of the URL, change the word **notifications** to **status**.

This is the URL you will paste into the FaceBook blank on your Activity Stream setup form.

#### 6. Choose Administer→User management→Users.

#### 7. Click the Edit link to the right of the username.

#### 8. Click the Activity Stream link under the Edit tab.

#### 9. Paste the URL in the blank titled Facebook Status RSS feed URL.

#### 10. Click Save.



To see the FaceBook feed immediately, you need to run your cron program. Otherwise, it may take an hour or more to appear on your user profile page.

The Activity Stream module only has one setting you can change, the title. By default, the title is *Activity Stream*. This will appear above your pulled in content. To change it, choose Administer→Site Configuration→Activity Stream. Change the text in the Title box and click Save configuration.



As things stand, unregistered users can see your Activity Stream. The Activity Stream module doesn't permit you to allow only registered viewers to see it.

## Posting your streams in a block

By default, Activity Stream shows up only in your profile. If your stream contains content of interest to your customers or site visitors, you may want to post it to one of the blocks on your site. Follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer → Site building → Blocks.**

- 2. Locate Activity Stream in the list.**

It will be near the bottom in the Disabled section.

- 3. Drag or use the Region drop-down to move it to the block of your choice.**

I move mine to the Right sidebar.

- 4. Drag it to the position within the block where you want it to appear.**

I want mine at the bottom of the Right sidebar block, so I drag it to the bottom of that section (see Figure 14-6).

- 5. Click Save blocks.**

My Activity Stream now appears in the right column.

The screenshot shows the 'Blocks' configuration page in a web browser. The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/build/block>. On the left, there's a sidebar with user information (Lynn Beighley) and a navigation menu for 'Administrator' roles like Content management, Site building, and User management. The main content area is titled 'Blocks' with a 'List' tab selected. A table lists blocks by region: Left sidebar and Right sidebar. In the Right sidebar region, the 'Activity Stream\*' block is listed with its 'Region' dropdown set to 'Right sidebar'. To the right of the table, there are sections for 'Who's new' (Lynn, Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (1 user, 0 guests), 'Online users' (Lynn Beighley), and a 'Poll' titled 'Should Ilsa get on the plane?'. The 'Right sidebar' region is highlighted with a yellow box.

**Figure 14-6:**  
Blocks page  
with Activity  
Stream  
moved to  
bottom of  
Right  
sidebar  
section.

## Posting YouTube Videos

Activity Stream for YouTube posts messages about videos you have made favorites along with links to them on the YouTube site, but it doesn't post the actual videos on your site. You can post YouTube videos to any content type, be it story, blog post, or page, by first visiting YouTube to gather information about the video and then posting it on your site. Here's how it works:

**1. Locate the video you want to post on the YouTube site. Open its page.**

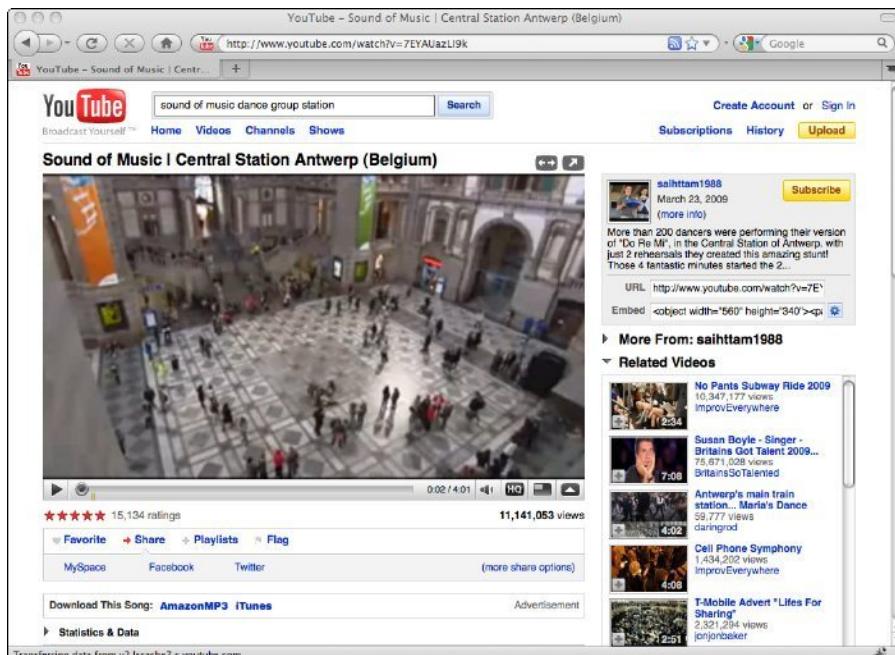
I open a video located at <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7EYAUazL19k> (see Figure 14-7).

**2. Locate the box on the upper right of the page with two text fields named URL and Embed.**

**3. Click on the text in the Embed text box. Select all of it and copy it.**

**4. On your Drupal site, choose Create content and pick the content type where you want to post this video.**

I choose Blog.



**Figure 14-7:**  
Individual  
video page  
on YouTube.

**5. Paste the code you copied from the YouTube embed text box into the Body box on your Drupal Create content form.**

- You can put text above or below video if you wish. Type any text you want above or below the section of code you just pasted into the Create content form Body field.
- Don't forget to give your posting a title by entering text in the Title field of the Create content form.

**6. Click on the Input format section to open it.**

**7. Select the Full HTML radio button.**

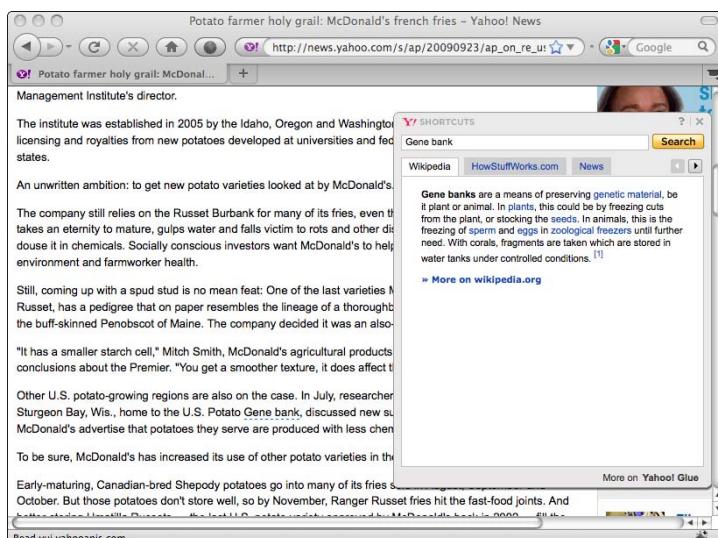
This is what allows the code you pasted in the Body field to be interpreted correctly by the Drupal software. If you don't do this, Drupal will simply ignore the code and your video won't show up.

**8. Click Save.**

Your video will now be published.

## Using Apture to Link and Embed Content

Go to any major news or article based Web site today, and you'll probably see links on specific words in the articles. Clicking these links opens small boxes with lists of additional resources based on the highlighted words (see Figure 14-8).



**Figure 14-8:**  
Yahoo.com  
article with  
keywords  
that open an  
information  
box.

Apture is an extremely robust module that allows you to link terms in your content to external sources. For example, say I write a blog entry about a restaurant in my neighborhood. I can use Apture to create a link on the restaurant's name. When the link is moused over, a box pops up containing the map to the restaurant.

I can also put news links, images, or embedded videos about my topic in the box. Apture also lets you easily embed third-party content in your pages.

## *Installing Apture*

The Activity Stream module is available on the drupal.org Web site. To download this file, follow these steps:

1. Browse to <http://drupal.org/project/apture>. Scroll down the page to find the download links.
2. Locate the link to download this module and click it. Save this file to a directory you will remember.
3. Log in to your control panel on your ISP's Web site or use an FTP client.
4. Find and click the link to a file manager.
5. You should see a single folder or directory named *html*, *www*, or *htdocs*. Click on its name to open it.
6. If you see the Drupal directory, click on it, and then the modules directory. If not, locate the modules directory and click on it.
7. Locate and click the upload link on your file manager.
8. Click Browse and find the Apture module *.tar.gz* file you downloaded. Click Upload.
9. Click on the Apture module *.tar.gz* to select the file.
10. You should see an option to uncompress the files. Leave the selection box set to uncompress "All" and click the Go button.
11. Select the original Apture module *.tar.gz* file on your Web server and delete it.

## *Enabling the Apture module*

To enable Apture, follow these steps:

1. Browse to Administer→Site building→Modules.

2. Select the Enabled check box next to the Apture module, located in the *Other* section.

3. Click Save configuration.

Apture is now enabled.

## Setting up Apture

Setting up Apture is a little tedious, but you only have to do it once. To set it up, follow these steps:

1. Choose Create content and click on a content type.



I choose Blog. This opens the Apture First Time Setup form (see Figure 14-9).

It doesn't matter which content type you pick; your Apture setup will apply to all of them.

2. Enter your e-mail address, full name, and a password.

3. Type your password again to confirm.

**Figure 14-9:**  
Create Account page of Apture First Time Setup form.

**4. Select the check box next to *I agree to the Terms and Conditions* and click Sign Up.**

This opens the Configure Auto-Enhance screen. The settings here tell Aperature to scour your site for existing links and modify them to open in Aperature windows rather than new browsers.

**5. You can choose to let Aperature modify specific types of existing links or turn off this option by unchecking the box next to *Auto enhance existing links with Aperature*.**



Unless you are certain you want Aperature modifying some of the links currently on your site, uncheck the Auto enhance box.

**6. On the Install Aperature Script page, click Install Token.**

**7. Click Start Using Aperature.**

**8. Check the e-mail for the account you entered in Step 2. Click the link in the e-mail to confirm.**

Now Aperature is ready to be used.

## *Creating Aperature links*

You now see the Aperature toolbar above the Body field on all your Create content forms (see Figure 14-10).

There are only two functions in this toolbar:

- ✓ The *Add Aperature Link* button on the left creates Aperature links that open small windows with content from other sites.
- ✓ The *Add Aperature Embed* button embeds third-party content that you choose into the content you are creating. Figure 14-11 shows a blog entry with an Aperature link and an image embedded using the Aperature tool.

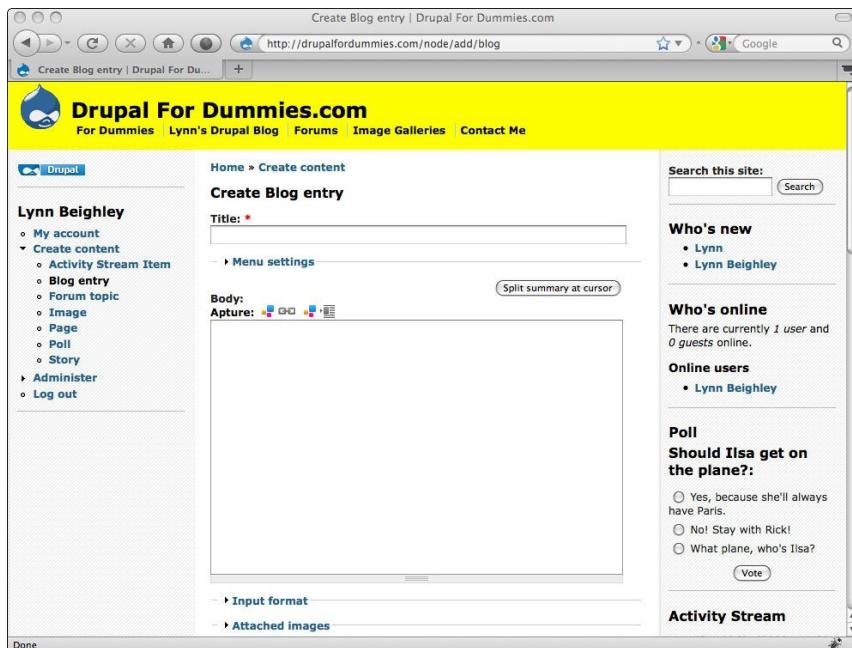
To create an Aperature link, follow these steps:

**1. Choose Create content and select the content type of your choice.**

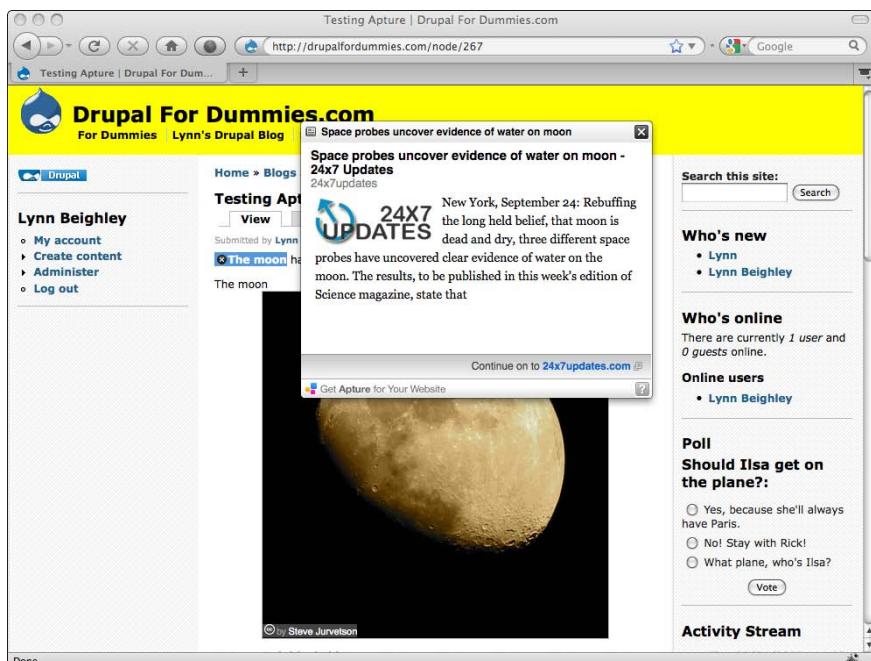
I choose Blog.

**2. Enter a title. Type some content in the Body field. Include some terms you want to turn into links.**

**3. Hold down the mouse button and highlight the word or words you want to make into a link.**



**Figure 14-10:**  
The Apture  
toolbar  
appears  
above the  
Body field  
on a Create  
content  
form.



**Figure 14-11:**  
Apture link  
and Apture  
embedded  
image content in a  
blog entry.

**4. Click the left button in the Aperature toolbar, the Add Aperature Link button.**

This opens the Add Aperature Link window (see Figure 14-12).

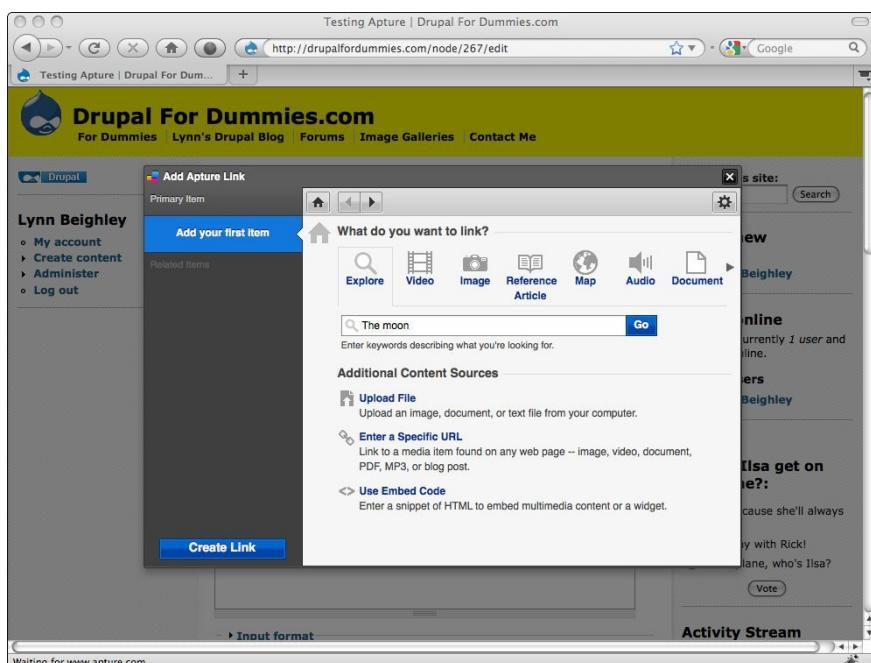
This is where you select the content you want to appear when users mouse over your link.

**5. Click the type of content you want to pop up for your link from the options along the top of this box.**

In my example, I'm looking for news articles about the moon. I click on the arrow to the right of Document to see more options and find the News Article icon.

**6. Click the blue Go button to the right of your link term.**

This opens a list of related content.

**7. Scroll down and find the best match for your term. Click it.****8. You can include a thumbnail image by checking the Show Image Thumbnail box and clicking the arrows to the right to find the best image for your article.****9. If you want to add additional items, click Add Related Items. This takes you to the list of content again.**

**Figure 14-12:**  
Add Aperature  
Link.

### 10. When you are finished, click Create Link.

This returns you to the Create content form (see Figure 14-13).

Apture adds HTML code to your content. It can be daunting to look at, but when you publish your content, the HTML code turns into links and embedded content.

### 11. Click Input format at select Full HTML.

If you don't do this, Drupal won't correctly render the HTML code Apture added.

### 12. Click Save.



Because the code Apture adds can be dense and confusing, add your Apture links at the very end after you've created all your text.

The screenshot shows a Drupal site with a yellow header bar. The main content area displays a blog post titled "Testing Apture". The post body contains the following HTML code:

```


Body:



Apture: 



<a id="aptureLink_x6p8gXN4t4" href="http://www.24xupdates.com/articles/space-probes-uncover-evidence-of-water-on-moon-60425.html">The moon</a>  
has more water than we thought.



The moon<a style="margin: 0px auto; padding: 0px 6px; text-align: center; display: block;">  
id="aptureLink_ZDdsDvtIso" href="http://www.flickr.com/photos/jurvetson/97214206/"></a>


```

The "Input format" field at the bottom of the content editor is set to "Full HTML".

**Figure 14-13:**  
Blog entry  
with Apture  
link and  
Apture  
embed  
code.

Figure 14-11 shows both an Apture link and a photo of the moon, which is embedded content created by Apture. To create your own embedded content, follow these steps:

1. In a Create content form, place your cursor in the Body field where you want the content to appear.
2. Click the Add Apture Embed button.

3. Select the type of content you want to embed from the icons at the top of the window.
4. Type a search term for the type of content you are seeking in the search box and click Go.



You can add an embedded map to your content by typing an address in the search box and choosing Map from the content types.

5. Click Create Embed to finish.

Make sure you change the Input type of your content to Full HTML before you preview or publish it.

You can set the Input type to automatically default to Full HTML by choosing Administer → Site configuration → Input formats. Select Full HTML and click Set default format. Keep in mind that this allows registered users to also use all HTML tags in their content.



By default, anyone who can create content on your site can use the Apture toolbar. There are no permissions settings to prevent site users from creating Apture links and embeds. Your only recourse is to not allow them to use Full HTML. This will cause Apture links to not be interpreted by Drupal on content they create.

## Sharing Content with RSS

RSS, or *Really Simple Syndication*, is a specific format for content that can be read by Web applications written for that purpose. Sites with frequently updating content, like news, often provide versions of their content in an RSS format.

If your browser understands how to interpret RSS formatted content, and most modern browsers do, you can preview RSS feeds by browsing to them. These feeds use Web addresses, so you can paste them into your browser to preview them. For example, you can see a feed by browsing to <http://drupal.org/node/feed>. This is a dynamic list of items from drupal.org.

Just as you added your tweets, FaceBook status, and YouTube videos earlier, you can add a set of feeds to your Web site. But you have to find good ones first.

Finding feeds can be tricky. Most major Web sites with content that frequently changes provide feeds. Lots of blog sites have feeds as well. If you want a feed from a specific site, hunting around and looking for a link to a feed is your best bet. The easiest way I know to find feeds is to use Google Reader to get the address of feeds of interest to you.



## Finding feeds with Google Reader

You can find feeds about particular topics by using a feature of Google Reader. Follow these steps:

You need to have a Google account to be able to use Google Reader and find feeds with it.

- 1. Log in to Google and browse to <http://www.google.com/reader>.**
- 2. Click on *Add a subscription* on the upper left.**
- This opens a small search box.
- 3. Type a search term and click Add.**

I search for the word *dogs*. A list of feeds appears on the right (see Figure 14-14).

Each item in the list has the URL of the feed printed in green beneath the description.

- 4. Copy a feed you want to use and paste it in the address bar of a browser window to preview the content.**

The screenshot shows the Google Reader interface with a search results page titled "Feeds matching 'dogs'". The results list several feeds, each with a thumbnail, subscriber count, title, description, and a "Subscribe" button. The feeds include:

- 5StarDog.com**: 3,597 subscribers. Description: A comprehensive resource for dog owners including information on training, choosing shelter or rescue breeder selection, harmful ingredients in dog food, breed descriptions, photos, treats, and names. URL: <http://www.5stardog.com/rss.asp> - 0.0 posts per week.
- Dog Whisperer**: 3,689 subscribers. Description: Whether it's soothing the nerves of a mal-tempered Chihuahua or teaching celebrities' dogs how to deal with city life, Cesar Millan has an uncanny ability to rehabilitate canines and teach owners to be the loving "leaders" their pets need them to be. URL: <http://feeds.feedburner.com/nationalgeographic/LkeT> - 0.0 posts per week.
- About.com Dogs**: 3,859 subscribers. Description: Get the latest headlines from the About.com Dogs GuideSite. URL: <http://z.about.com/6/g/dogs/b/rss2.xml> - 2.1 posts per week.
- Loldogs, Dogs 'n' Puppy Dog Pictures - I Has A Hotdog!**: 4,394 subscribers. Description: Cute puppy pictures, cute dogs, loldogs (lol dogs) updated daily from your submissions. URL: <http://hasahotdog.com/rss> - 34.5 posts per week.
- Boston Dirt Dogs**: 2,266 subscribers.

At the bottom of the page, there are links for "Manage subscriptions" and "Read www.google.com".

**Figure 14-14:**  
Google Reader list of feeds about dogs.

This is a roundabout way to find feeds, but it works fairly well. You can use the Add a subscription button again and again, refining your search terms, until you find feeds on the subjects you want.

## Using the Aggregator Module

You can use your feeds with the Activity Stream module by pasting them, one per line, in the Feed URL box (refer to Figure 14-3). But if you're already using that to publish content from your social media sites, you may want the content from the feeds to go somewhere else on your site.

A simpler solution is to use the included Core module, Feed Aggregator. To enable and use the Aggregator module, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules.**
  - 2. Click the Enabled module next to the Aggregator module under the Core section. Click Save configuration.**
- The Aggregator is now active and a new link to Feed Aggregator appears in the Navigation menu. This will be where all your feed content appears.
- 3. To add a feed, choose Administer→Content management→Feed aggregator.**
  - 4. Click the Add feed tab.**

This opens the Add feed form (see Figure 14-15).

- 5. Give your feed a title.**

For example, I use a feed from the drupal.org site and call this Drupal.org.

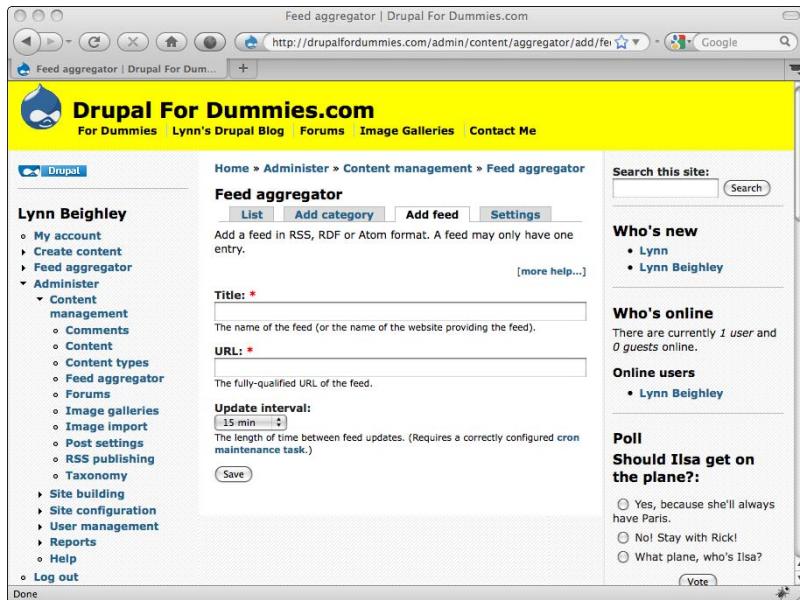
- 6. Paste or type the URL of the feed in the URL field. Click Save.**



Your feed will update every 15 minutes. To get the feed to appear immediately, run cron by choosing Administer→Reports→Status report. Choose *run cron manually* next to Cron maintenance tasks on the right.

You can view your new feed by choosing the Feed aggregator link in the Navigation menu.

**Figure 14-15:**  
The Feed  
aggregator  
Add feed  
form.



To move the Feed aggregator from the Navigation menu, and to give it a different Link title, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administrator**→**Site building**→**Menus**.
2. Click **Navigation**.
3. Locate **Feed aggregator** in the list and click **edit**.
4. If you wish, change the **Link title**.

Mine will be used to aggregate feeds about Drupal, so I change my title to **Drupal News**.

5. Change the menu by clicking on the **Parent item** drop-down and choosing a different menu.

I select <Primary links>.

6. Click **Save**.

The **Drupal News** link is now the last link in my Primary menu. I want it to come before my **Contact Me** link. I'm already on the right page to do it, the **List** items under the Primary menu.

7. To move the position of the link, click and drag it to the new position.
8. Click **Save configuration**.

## Creating a feed for your site

Not only can you pull in RSS feed content from other sites, but you also can create your own RSS feed for other sites to pull content from you. Behind the scenes, Drupal has already created a feed; you simply need to give your site visitors a link to it. Follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Site building**→**Blocks**.
2. Find **Syndicate** in the list under the **Disabled** section. Move it to the location you wish.
3. Click **Save blocks**.

I drag mine to the bottom of the Left sidebar.

### 3. Click Save blocks.

You now have a Syndicate block on your site, with a small logo (see Figure 14-16).



This logo is used all over the Web to represent RSS feeds. You can click on it on a site with a feed you want to use, copy the URL from the address bar of the page that opens, and use it with Feed aggregator.

The screenshot shows a Drupal website with a yellow header bar. The header includes the site name "Drupal For Dummies.com", a logo, and links for "For Dummies", "Lynn's Drupal Blog", "Forums", "Image Galleries", "Contact Me", and "Drupal News". Below the header, the left sidebar contains a "Drupal" menu with links to "My account", "Create content", "Administrator", and "Logout". It also features a "Syndicate" block with an RSS icon. The main content area displays several blog posts. The first post, titled "I'm posting an image.", shows a thumbnail of a woman's face and some text about inserting images using HTML code. The second post, titled "This is a very long story.", is a long text entry by Lynn Beighley. The third post, titled "A work in progress", is a short note about testing long stories. On the right side of the page, there are blocks for "Who's new" (listing Lynn and Lynn Beighley), "Who's online" (listing 1 user and 0 guests), "Online users" (listing Lynn Beighley), and a "Poll" asking if Ilsa should get on a plane. The poll has three options: "Yes, because she'll always have Paris.", "No! Stay with Rick!", and "What plane, who's Ilsa?".

**Figure 14-16:**  
The Syndicate block and RSS feed logo in the Left sidebar.

4. You can remove or change the title of the Syndicate block by clicking the configure link next to it on the Blocks page.
5. Type a new title, or if you don't want a title, type <none>. Click Save block.

Clicking on this logo opens your feed page. In my case, it is `http://drupalfordummies.com/rss.xml`.

## **Chapter 15**

---

# **Building a Storefront**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Creating product listings
  - ▶ Organizing products into catalogs
  - ▶ Accepting online payments
  - ▶ Keeping track of orders
- 

**I**f you need to sell products online, the Ubercart module is an easy-to-use, robust option. You can have your items online in minutes, complete with a shopping cart and an online order form that collects the necessary customer information. Additional modules allow you to add more robust product listings, automatically figure sales tax, and of course, accept credit cards.

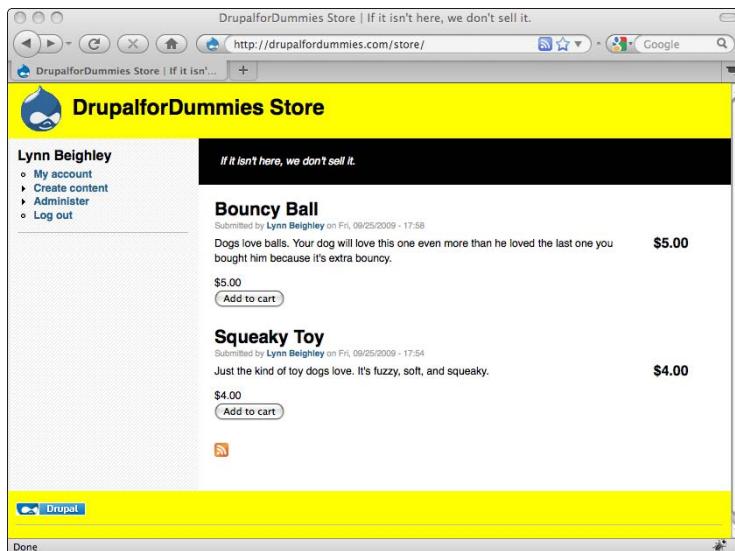
In this chapter, I discuss the parts of an online storefront. You learn about Ubercart and how to install it. Then I show you how to build and customize your own storefront, fetch order information, enhance your product listings, and finally how to accept payments.

## ***Understanding Storefronts***

At their most basic, storefronts are made up of products for sale, a shopping cart, and some form for a customer to provide information and purchase items in his cart:

- ✓ **Product listings:** An individual page with product information and a button for the shopper to click to add an item to his cart.
- ✓ **Shopping cart:** A form that displays all the products a user has clicked on to purchase.
- ✓ **Order form:** A form the shopper fills out to finish making his order. It collects information and saves it for processing.

Figure 15-1 shows a basic storefront with product listings.



**Figure 15-1:**  
Basic  
Drupal  
product  
listings.

Storefronts can have lots of other features. Take a look at the Amazon.com Web site (see Figure 15-2).



**Figure 15-2:**  
Amazon.  
com  
storefront.

Amazon.com includes these additional e-commerce features:

- ✓ **User accounts:** To buy something from Amazon, you can set up an account. Amazon saves your shipping information and you don't need to provide it each time you buy something.
- ✓ **Order tracking:** Along with having an account, you can log in to view the status of orders you have placed.
- ✓ **Wish lists:** If you want to hang on to an item listing so you can find it again later but not purchase it right away, you can save it in a wish list.
- ✓ **Product catalogs:** This is a collection of product listings grouped into categories.

The Ubercart module allows you to easily implement all these functionalities, with the exception of wish lists.

## Getting Started with Ubercart

Ubercart is a single download composed of a number of modules. Ubercart also depends on several other modules that need to be downloaded and installed. In this section, I go through the steps to download and install Ubercart and the other modules it requires.



Ubercart works best when users can register for your site automatically. Also, you can choose to post a link to a shopping cart for your users in a block on your site. For these reasons, you may wish to devote an entire Drupal site to being a store rather than adding Ubercart to your existing site. In my case, I created a new Drupal installation at <http://drupalfordummies.com/store>. I then created a link on the main site to the store, and vice versa, making the Primary navigation match both sites. I also used the same theme on both.

## Getting Ubercart and additional modules

You can install just the minimum necessary modules, or the complete system.



I recommend you download and install all the modules for the full system. Even if you don't want to use all the features, you can have them available for future enhancements.

If you want a minimal install, you need just the module Ubercart and Token modules (see below for download locations). For the full install, navigate and download each of the following .tar.gz files:

- ✓ **Ubercart:** <http://drupal.org/project/ubercart>
- ✓ **Token:** <http://drupal.org/project/token>
- ✓ **CCK:** <http://drupal.org/project/cck>
- ✓ **FileField:** <http://drupal.org/project/filefield>
- ✓ **ImageAPI:** <http://drupal.org/project/imageapi>
- ✓ **ImageCache:** <http://drupal.org/project/imagecache>
- ✓ **ImageField:** <http://drupal.org/project/imagefield>
- ✓ **Thickbox:** <http://drupal.org/project/thickbox>
- ✓ **Google Analytics:** [http://drupal.org/project/google\\_analytics](http://drupal.org/project/google_analytics)



Save all these files in the same directory so you can easily locate them later.

## *Installing Ubercart and additional modules*

You need to install the modules you have downloaded. For each module, complete the following steps:

1. **Browse to the module x page (listed in the preceding section). Scroll down the page to find the download links.**
2. **Locate the link to download this module and click on it. Save this file to a directory you will remember.**

This module will download as a single compressed .tar.gz file.

3. **Log in to your control panel on your ISP's Web site or use an FTP client.**
4. **Find and click the link to a file manager.**

After you click on the file manager, you will see a screen that displays the files on your Web server.

5. **You should see a single folder or directory named "html," "www," or "htdocs." Click on its name to open it.**

There may be several directories, but the one for your Web site should be easy to spot.

6. **If you see the Drupal directory, click on it, and then the modules directory. If not, locate the modules directory and click on it.**

**7. Locate and click on the upload link on your file manager.**

You should see an upload form with a Browse button.

**8. Click Browse and find the module .tar.gz file you downloaded.  
Click Upload.**

The compressed module file is now on your site in the correct folder and ready to be extracted.

**9. Click on the module .tar.gz to select the file.**

You see a list of files that are stored inside your compressed file, all selected.

**10. You should see an option to uncompress the files. Leave the selection box set to uncompress “All” and click the Go button.****11. Select the original module .tar.gz file on your Web server and delete it.**

Your new modules will now appear on the Modules administration page on your site.

## *Enabling the basic Ubercart installation*

In this section, I walk you through enabling the appropriate modules to create a basic storefront Web site.



Don’t enable all the new modules at once. There’s a specific order that Ubercart recommends.

To enable a basic storefront, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules.**
- 2. Under the Core section, select the box next to the Path module.**
- 3. Under the Other section, select the box next to Token.**
- 4. Under the Ubercart – core section, select the box next to all modules: Cart, Conditional Actions, Order, Product, and Store.**
- 5. Click Save configuration.**

Your site has now been configured to allow you to create product listings and take orders.

## Creating Your First Storefront

You are now ready to add product listings to your site and test the ordering process.

### Creating product listings

With Ubercart, product listings are a type of content. To create your first product, follow these steps:

**1. Choose Create content>Product.**

This opens the form shown in Figure 15-3.

**2. Enter a name for your product in the Name field.**

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled 'Create Product | DrupalforDummies Store'. The URL is 'http://drupalfordummies.com/store/node/add/product'. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with 'Lynn Beighley' logged in, and links for 'My account', 'Create content' (which is expanded to show 'Page', 'Product', and 'Story'), 'Administrator', and 'Log out'. The main content area is titled 'Create Product'. It has fields for 'Name:' (with placeholder 'Name of the product.'), 'Description:' (with a 'Split summary at cursor' link), and 'SKU:' (with placeholder 'Product SKU/model.'). Below these are sections for 'List price:', 'Cost:', and 'Sell price:' (all set to '\$ 0'). A checkbox 'Product and its derivatives are shippable.' is checked. There are fields for 'Weight:' (0) and 'Unit of measurement:' (Pounds). A 'Dimensions' section includes fields for 'Length:', 'Width:', and 'Height:' (all set to 'Inches'). A 'Package quantity:' field contains '1'. A note says 'For a package containing only this product, how many are in it?' A 'Default quantity to add to cart:' field contains '1'. A note says 'Leave blank or zero to disable the quantity field next to the add to cart button, if it is enabled in general. If it is disabled, this field is ignored.' A 'List position:' field contains '0' with a note 'Specify a value to set this product's position in product lists. Products in the same position will be sorted alphabetically.' At the bottom are links for 'Revision information' and 'Comment settings', and a 'Done' button.

**Figure 15-3:**  
The Create  
Product  
form.

3. Enter a description of your product in the Description field.
4. In the Product section, enter an SKU number or unique description for your product.



SKU stands for stockkeeping unit. It is a unique number or combination of numbers and letters that represents a particular product. The SKU allows a product to be tracked for inventory. An SKU is associated with a particular item in a store or catalog. For example, a dog toy of a particular style and size might have an SKU of 1234-M, meaning Style 1234, size medium.

5. In the List price field, you can optionally enter the manufacturer's suggested list price.
6. In the Cost field, you can optionally enter the cost you paid for the item.
7. In the Sell price field, enter the cost of the item for shoppers to purchase it.
8. If you need to know the weight of an item to figure shipping costs, enter the weight of the item in the Weight field. You can modify the value in the Unit of measurement drop-down as needed.
9. Enter the dimensions of the item in the Length, Width, and Height fields. Change the Unit of measurement drop-down as needed.
10. If this is a product that comes in multiples, enter the number in one order here.

For example, if you were selling a 6-pack of soda, you enter 6 here.

11. If necessary, change the Default quantity to add to cart.

In general, this will always be 1.

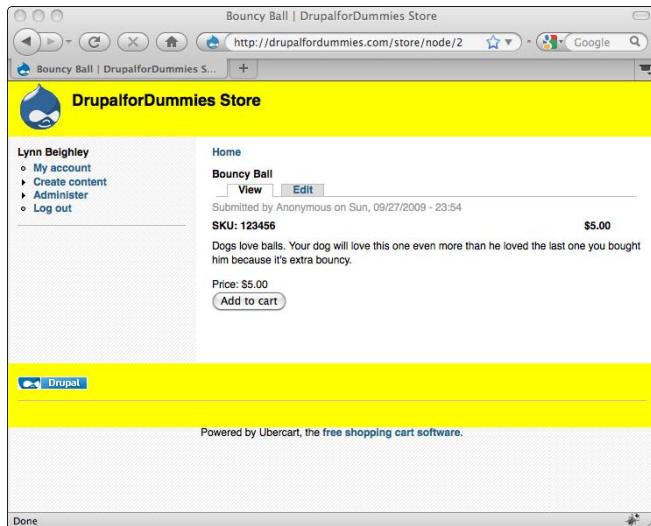
12. Change the List position to control how high or low this item will show up in a list of items.
13. The rest of the options are the same as used in any content item. Change them if you wish.
14. Click Save.

Your first product has been created. By default, it is posted on the main page of your site. Repeat this process to add more products. Figure 15-1 shows a listing of two products added to a storefront.



If you don't want your products to appear on the main page of your site by default, modify the Publishing options setting to uncheck *Promoted to the front page*.

Clicking on the name of a product opens the product information page (see Figure 15-4).



**Figure 15-4:**  
Individual  
product  
listing.

## Testing the ordering process

To see how your storefront works, you should test it. At this point, you have no payment mechanism tied into your store. When someone adds products to her cart and checks out, she is presented with a form to gather information. When she finishes, she is sent a confirmation e-mail, you are sent an e-mail notifying you of the order, and the order information is saved on an administration page on your Drupal site. To test it for yourself, follow these steps:

1. **Log out as Administrator by clicking the Log out link.**

You should now see any products you added on the main page of your site.

2. **Click on the Add to cart button for one of the products.**

This opens the Shopping cart form (see Figure 15-5).

The shopping cart lists all the items a shopper has added and the total cost. This form also allows him to update or remove items.

3. **Click Checkout.**

This opens the Checkout form (see Figure 15-6).

4. **Fill in a valid e-mail address in the E-mail address field.**

This is where the order confirmation will be sent after a shopper completes this form.

5. **Fill out the required information First name, Last name, Street address, City, Country, State/Province, and Postal code under the Delivery information section.**

Shopping cart | DrupalforDummies Store  
<http://drupalfordummies.com/store/cart>

**DrupalforDummies Store**

User login

Username: \*

Password: \*

• Create new account • Request new password

Home

Shopping cart

Bouncy Ball added to your shopping cart.

Remove	Products	Qty.	Total
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bouncy Ball	1	\$5.00
			Subtotal: \$5.00

Continue shopping     

Drupal

Drupal e-commerce provided by Ubercart.

**Figure 15-5:**  
The Shopping cart with a product added to it.

## 6. Select the box next to *My billing information is the same as my delivery information*.

This handy box automatically pulls the information from the Delivery information and enters it into the Billing information fields.

Checkout | DrupalforDummies Store  
<http://drupalfordummies.com/store/cart/checkout>

**DrupalforDummies Store**

User login

Username: \*

Password: \*

• Create new account • Request new password

Home

Checkout

Cart contents

Qty	Products	Price
1x	Bouncy Ball	\$5.00
		Subtotal: \$5.00

▼ Customer information

Enter a valid email address for this order or click here to login with an existing account and return to checkout.

E-mail address: \*

▼ Delivery information

Enter your delivery address and information here.

\*First name:   
 \*Last name:   
 Company:   
 \*Street address:   
 \*City:   
 \*Country:   
 \*State/Province:   
 \*Postal code:   
 Phone number:

**Figure 15-6:**  
The top part of the Checkout form.

### 7. Click Review order.

This opens a confirmation page with the information the shopper has entered. At this point, shoppers can click Back to change their order, or Submit order to finalize it (see Figure 15-7).

### 8. Click Submit order.

An Order complete message appears.

If the user had no account on your site, a new one is automatically created for him.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Review order | DrupalforDummies Store' at the URL <http://drupalfordummies.com/store/cart/checkout/review>. The page title is 'DrupalforDummies Store'. On the left, there's a 'User login' form with fields for 'Username:' and 'Password:', and links for 'Log in', 'Create new account', and 'Request new password'. The main content area is titled 'Review order' with the sub-instruction 'Your order is almost complete. Please review the details below and click 'Submit order' if all the information is correct. You may use the 'Back' button to make changes to your order if necessary.' Below this, there are three sections: 'Cart contents' (listing '1x Bouncy Ball \$5.00'), 'Customer information' (listing 'E-mail: lynnbeighley@gmail.com'), and 'Delivery information' (listing 'Address: LYNN BEIGHLEY 123 MAIN STREET HOMETOWN, CA 12345'). At the bottom right are 'Back' and 'Submit order' buttons. The footer includes a 'Drupal' logo, the text 'Supported by Ubercart, an open source e-commerce suite.', and a 'Done' link.

**Figure 15-7:**  
Review  
order page.

## Managing orders

An e-mail is automatically sent to you when a new order is made. You can see all the orders made on your site. To review orders, follow these steps:

### 1. Choose Administer→Store administration→Orders.

This opens a list of orders that have been placed on your site (see Figure 15-8).

Actions	Order ID	Customer	Total	Purchase date	Status
	4	Lynn Beighley	\$5.00	09/28/2009	Pending
	3	Lynn Beighley	\$4.00	09/25/2009	Pending
	2	Lynn Beighley	\$5.00	09/25/2009	Pending
	1	Lynn Beighley	\$5.00	09/25/2009	Pending

**Figure 15-8:**  
List of  
orders and  
current  
statuses.

## 2. Click on the View order icon next to one of the orders.

Each order has icons on the left of the order id:

- *View* allows you to see the order details.
- *Edit* allows you to make changes to the order and send an invoice to the customer.
- *Delete* deletes the order.



Each order has a status that indicates whether the order has been fulfilled. As you get more orders, you may need to filter them by status. For example, if you only want to see Completed orders, change the View by status drop-down box to Completed.

## 3. You can change the Order status for an individual order at the bottom of the order View screen.

Currently, the status is Pending. As you go through each stage of handling an order, you can change the status to Processing, Completed, Canceled, or In checkout.

In addition to changing the status of an order, you can modify an existing order. Follow these steps:

1. Click the Edit button next to the order you wish to change.
2. Make sure the Edit tab is clicked.

**3. Make any desired changes on this form.**

You can modify any information the shopper entered; add, edit, or delete the products that were ordered; and add private Admin contents about the order that the shopper never sees.

**4. When you are finished, choose Submit changes.**

You can use the Orders section of your site to send out invoices by e-mail or create a printable invoice that can be mailed to your customer. Follow these steps:

- 1. Click the Edit button next to the order you wish to change.**
- 2. Click the Invoice tab.**
- 3. You can view, print, or e-mail an invoice by choosing the appropriate link at the top of the Invoice page.**

As you make changes to the customer's order, such as changing the status or e-mailing an invoice, Ubercart keeps track of them for you automatically. Click the Edit button next to an order, and then click on the Log tab to see activities related to that order.



At this point, you aren't set up to take credit cards. Before you can accept credit cards, you need to

- ✓ Make sure your site is hosted on a secure server, which protects the credit card information users enter on an order form.
- ✓ Activate additional modules.
- ✓ Sign up for an account with a company that can process your credit card orders for you.

## *Configuring Your Storefront*

While Ubercart is practically ready to work after you add products, there are a number of customizations you can make to your site.

### *Adding a shopping cart block*

Most major storefronts give shoppers a link to their shopping carts. This way, they can easily check what they've already purchased. To add a link to the shopping cart on your site, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Blocks.**

**2. Locate the Shopping cart block under the Disabled section.****3. Drag this block to the location you want it to appear.**

I move mine to the top of the Right sidebar.

**4. Click Save blocks.**

Not only is the Ubercart Shopping cart block a link to the cart, but it also keeps a running total of the cost of items added to it.

## Using the Configuration settings

There are more than 100 configuration options under the Administer $\Rightarrow$ Store administration $\Rightarrow$ Configuration menus. In this section, I highlight some of the most important ones to know.

### *Cart settings*

The *Cart settings* control how the shopping cart behaves. To modify them, choose Administer $\Rightarrow$ Store administration $\Rightarrow$ Configuration $\Rightarrow$ Cart settings under the Edit tab. Here are the ones you are most likely to change:

- ✓ **Minimum order subtotal:** Use this to set a minimum order amount a shopper must meet before the order can be submitted.
- ✓ **Anonymous cart duration:** If a shopper adds items to his shopping cart, but isn't signed in on your site, this duration controls how long the items in his cart will remain. If he browses to a different site but returns within four hours, his items will still be in the cart.
- ✓ **Authenticated cart duration:** If a shopper adds items to his shopping cart, and is logged in, items in his cart will remain for a year. Each time he logs in, he can click on the shopping cart link and see them.

### *Checkout settings*

The *Checkout settings* control the checkout process. To modify them, choose Administer $\Rightarrow$ Store administration $\Rightarrow$ Configuration $\Rightarrow$ Checkout settings under the Edit tab.

- ✓ **Enable checkout:** Located on the Checkout settings screen. If you eventually use a third-party vendor to manage the transaction, you need to deselect this option.
- ✓ **Checkout instructions, review, and completion messages:** Under Checkout messages, you can customize the text of a number of different messages the shopper sees during the checkout process.
- ✓ **Address fields:** You can modify the Title of any of the fields in the address section of the checkout form. You can also specify whether they're required.

### ***Country settings***

The *Country settings* allow you to set up the checkout form for other countries. To modify them, choose Administer→Store administration→Configuration→Country settings under the Edit tab. You can import countries into your list.



When a shopper reaches the Contact form, he chooses a country from a drop-down box. The Country settings control which countries appear in that box. Also, after he changes the country, the values in the State/Province drop-down list change accordingly.

### ***Order settings***

The *Order settings* control what happens to the order after the checkout is completed. To modify them, choose Administer→Store administration→Configuration→Order settings under the Edit tab.

- ✓ **Number of orders on overview screen:** Controls the number of orders you see when you choose Administer→Store administration→Orders.
- ✓ **Order statuses:** Under Order workflow, you can customize the text of the order statuses. You can also add custom ones.

### ***Product settings***

The *Product settings* control the appearance of the information on product listings pages. To modify these settings, choose Administer→Store administration→Configuration→Product settings under the Edit tab.

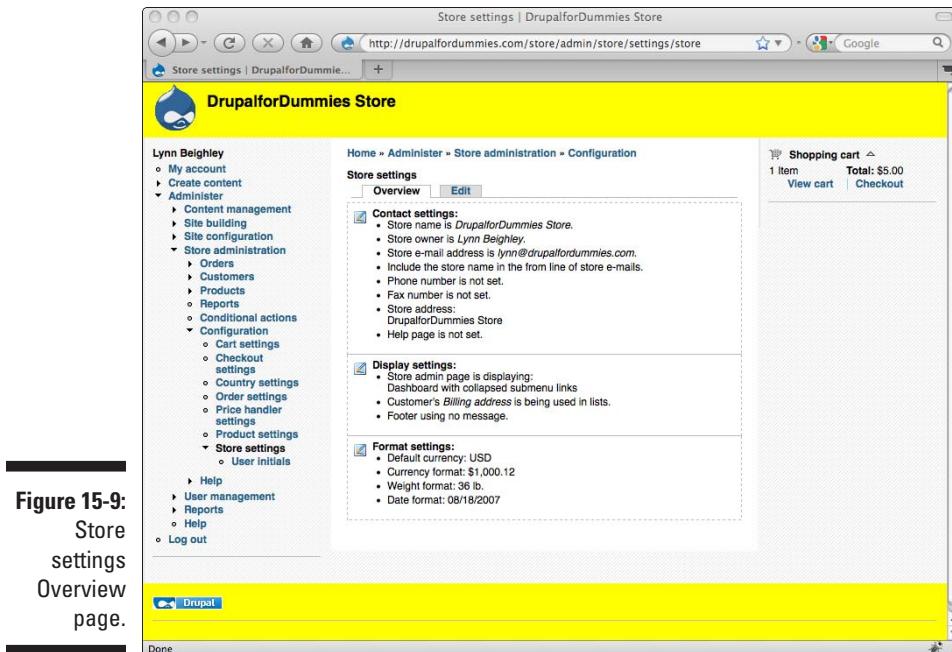
- ✓ **Display an optional quantity field in the Add to Cart form:** This places a quantity field on the product listing pages. I recommend checking this box.
- ✓ **Product fields:** You control which fields show up on the product listing pages. If the products you sell should display their dimensions or weight, here's the place to add them. Select the appropriate check box and choose Save configuration.

### ***Store settings***

The *Store settings* control many of the overall store settings. To modify these settings, choose Administer→Store administration→Configuration→Store settings (see Figure 15-9).

- ✓ **Contact settings:** There are a number of fields you should enter data into on this form. If possible, provide contact info for your store here.
- ✓ **Footer message for store pages:** Under Display settings. You can remove the Ubercart messages, although if you don't have to, it's nice to leave them at the bottom of your site.

**Format settings:** This form allows you to change the default currency. You can also change the units of measurement for weight and length, and the date format.



**Figure 15-9:**  
Store  
settings  
Overview  
page.

## Enhancing Product Listings

The basic product listing from Ubercart doesn't include a field for photos. The product listings also aren't organized into catalogs. These are important features that will make your site more professional, and they are worth spending a few minutes to add.

### Using images

To add images to your product listings, you need to enable some modules, and create an image field as part of the Product content type. Then you can freely upload images when you are creating products. Follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules.



**2. Under the CCK section, select the boxes next to Content, FileField, and ImageField.**

If you don't see this section, you may need to download and install the CCK module. See the instructions in the first part of this chapter.

**3. Click Save configuration.**

Now you are ready to create an image field for the Product content type.

**4. Choose Administer→Content management→Content types.**

**5. On the List tab, click the edit link for Product.**

**6. Click on the Manage fields tab.**

This opens the Manage fields form shown in Figure 15-10.

**7. In the New field section at the bottom of the form, type the word Photo for the Label, and photo for the Field name.**

**8. For Type of data to store, select File from the drop-down box.**

**9. For Form element to edit the data, select Image from the drop-down box.**

**10. Click Save.**

**11. To add an image to a product, create a new product by either choosing Create content→Product or clicking on the Edit tab of an existing product listing.**

**12. Scroll down the page and find the Photo field. Click Browse to find your image and Upload to save it.**

Keep the image a relatively small height and width if possible. A reasonably good size is 250 x 250.

**13. Click Save.**



## Adding a catalog

To add catalog pages and organize your products by type, follow these steps:

**1. Choose Administer→Site building→Modules.**

**2. Under the Ubercart – optional section, select the box next to the Catalog.**

**3. Click Save configuration.**

Now you are ready to create an image field for the Product content type.

**4. Choose Administer→Content management→Taxonomy.**

**5. Click on *add terms* next to Catalog.**

This opens the Add term form (see Figure 15-11).

The screenshot shows the 'Manage fields' form for the 'Product' content type. The left sidebar includes links for My account, Create content, Administer, Content management, Content types, RSS publishing, Taxonomy, Site building, Site configuration, Store administration, User management, Reports, Help, and Log out. The main content area has tabs for Edit, Manage fields (selected), and Display fields. A note says 'Add fields and groups to the content type, and arrange them on content display and input forms. Note: Installing the Advanced help module will let you access more and better help.' Below this, a table lists fields: Name, Type, Operations. Fields listed include Name (Node module form), Description (Node module form), Product information (Product module form), Menu settings (Menu module form), Description (Node description. (View tab)), Revision information (Node module form), Comment settings (Comment module form), Path settings (Path module form), Photo (field\_photo, File, Configure, Remove). An 'Add' section shows a 'New field' form with fields for Label, Field name (a-z, 0-9, \_), Type of data to store, and Form element to edit the data. A 'Save' button is at the bottom. The top right corner shows a shopping cart with 1 item, Total: \$5.00, View cart, and Checkout links. The bottom right corner shows a 'Done' link.

**Figure 15-10:**  
Manage  
fields form  
for Product  
content  
type.

The screenshot shows the 'Add term to Catalog' form. The left sidebar includes links for My account, Create content, Administer, Content management, Content types, RSS publishing, Taxonomy, Site building, Site configuration, Store administration, User management, Reports, Help, and Log out. The main content area has tabs for List (selected) and Add term. Under 'Identification', there is a 'Term name:' field containing 'Dog Toys'. There is also an 'Image:' field with a 'Browse...' button. Under 'Description:', there is a text area with the text 'A large variety of cheap toys your dog will love to rend apart.' A 'Save' button is at the bottom. The top right corner shows a shopping cart with 1 item, Total: \$5.00, View cart, and Checkout links. The bottom right corner shows a 'Done' link.

**Figure 15-11:**  
The Add  
term form  
is used  
to create  
categories  
for your  
catalog.

**6. Enter a product category in the Term name field.**

For example, if you had an online pet store, you might use Dog Toys or Cat Food for a Term name.

**7. Add a small image and description if you wish.****8. Click Save.****9. Repeat Steps 6 through 8 until you have created all the categories you need.**

Now you are ready to add products to your catalog. You will now see a box on your Content Product forms with all of the product categories you just created. Simply choose the appropriate one for the product you are adding. You can also put a product into more than one category by pressing the Ctrl key while selecting categories.

To see your catalog, browse to /catalog on your site. For example, <http://yourdrupalsitehere.com/catalog>. Mine is shown in Figure 15-12.



You can add a description to your catalog. Choose Administer→Content management→Taxonomy. Click on *edit vocabulary* next to Catalog. Enter a description in the Description field. You can also change the name of your catalog by changing the Vocabulary name on this form. For example, you might want to call it Our Products.

**Figure 15-12:**  
A simple catalog page with a description and three categories.

You can create a Primary navigation link so shoppers can find your product catalog. Follow these steps:

1. If you haven't done so, move your Primary links to a block on your site by choosing Administer→Site building→Blocks.

- 2. Move your Primary links to the block of your choice.**  
I choose the Header block.
- 3. Click Save blocks.**
- 4. Choose Administer→Site building→Menu.**
- 5. Click on Primary links.**
- 6. Click on the Add item tab.**
- 7. For Path, enter catalog. For Menu link title, enter Catalog.**
- 8. Click Save.**

## Getting Paid

You have a number of options for third-party merchant services you can use to handle the credit card transactions on your site. In this section, I discuss activating the modules that allow interaction with these sites and let you accept payment. I focus on Google Checkout specifically, but other companies operate in a similar fashion.

### Setting up a Google Checkout account

Before adding the modules to accept payment, you should create an account with the service you intend to use. Some of your options are:

- ✓ **2Checkout:** <http://2checkout.com>
- ✓ **Authorize.net:** <http://authorize.net>
- ✓ **PayPal:** <http://paypal.com>
- ✓ **Google Checkout:** <http://checkout.google.com/sell>



All these services take a small fee for each transaction they process. Check with the specific company for details.

To give you an idea of the process involved in setting up one of these accounts, the steps below walk through setting up a Google Checkout account. Unfortunately, sites and processes change all the time, so your best bet is to visit the site and read the documentation for the correct processes to follow.

To set up a Google Checkout account, follow these steps:

- 1. Browse to <http://checkout.google.com/sell>. If you don't already have a Google account, you need to create one.**

2. You will fill out a form to gather business information for your account (see Figure 15-13).
3. After you complete the form, click the Settings tab to get the Merchant ID you will need for your site.  
It's in the section Private contact information next to Merchant ID.
4. On your site, choose Administer→Store administration→Configuration→Google Checkout settings. Click the Account tab.
5. In the instructions, copy the URL it tells you to enter on the Google Checkout Merchant Center site (see Figure 15-14).
6. In another window, browse to `http://checkout.google.com/sell` and log in if necessary.
7. Click on the Settings tab. Click on the Integration link on the left.
8. Copy and paste the Google merchant ID number and Google merchant key to the form on your site at Administer→Store administration→Configuration→Google Checkout settings under the Account tab.

**Google Checkout: Setup Your Account**

More leads. Lower costs.

Tell us about your business.

**1. Private contact information**

How can Google get in touch with you? Google will use this information to contact you if needed. This information will not be displayed to your customers.

Contact person: [ ]

Contact person's email:

Location:

Address:

Phone number:

**2. Public contact information**

How can your customers get in touch with you? This information will be made available to your customers when they make a purchase.

Business name:

Customer support email:

Public business website:

I do not have a business website. [?]  
AdWords ads that display this URL will display Google Checkout badges. [?]

Primary product type:

Business address:  Use same address as above  
 Use a different address

What do you want to be called on your customers' credit card statements? Credit card statement name:  Google \* name will appear on your buyers' credit card statements.

Common Questions

- What is Google Checkout?
- How does Google Checkout help me increase sales and lower costs?
- How much does it cost to process transactions through Google Checkout?

Help | Contact Us

Set up Account | Enter Business Information

**Figure 15-13:**  
Google  
Checkout  
new  
merchant  
form.

The screenshot shows the 'Google Checkout settings' page within the DrupalforDummies Store's administration interface. The left sidebar lists various store management options like 'My account', 'Create content', 'Administrator', 'Content management', 'Site building', 'Site configuration', 'Store administration', 'Configuration', 'Reports', 'Conditional actions', 'Help', 'User management', 'Reports', and 'Log out'. The main content area is titled 'Google Checkout settings' and includes tabs for 'Account' (selected), 'Shipping', and 'Taxes'. A note at the top says: 'In the Google Checkout Merchant Center, enter http://drupalfordummies.com/store/google\_checkout as the callback URL for this site. This will allow Ubercart to communicate with Google Checkout.' Below this are fields for 'Merchant ID' and 'Merchant key', both of which are currently empty. A note below the merchant key field states: 'Used to sign cart information. Keep it secret, keep it safe.' There are also links for 'Test Environment settings', 'Customer messages', and 'Button settings'. At the bottom are 'Save configuration' and 'Reset to defaults' buttons.

**Figure 15-14:**  
Google  
Checkout  
settings.

## Turning on payment

Once you've chosen a company to work with to process your transactions, you need to enable the correct modules and set your site to process payments with that merchant. To set Ubercart to accept payment, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administrator** → **Site building** → **Modules**.
2. Under the **Ubercart** → **2nd core (optional)** section, select the box next to **Payment**.
3. Under the **Ubercart – payment** section, select the box next to **Google Checkout** or your particular vendor.
4. Click **Save configuration**.



Most of the options under the Ubercart – payment section are additional options you can use with different terms and conditions.

All of the configuration options for setting up payment are found under Administer→Store administration→Configuration→Payment settings. To set Ubercart to use your payment method of choice, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Store administration→Configuration→Payment settings.**

- 2. Click on Payment methods.**

You see the list of Payment methods you enabled (see Figure 15-15).

- 3. To use a particular method, select the Enabled box next to it.**

- 4. Click Save configuration.**

## Enhancing Your Store

When you installed all the Ubercart and related modules at the beginning of this chapter, you added in lots of functionality you haven't yet turned on. This section is a quick look at the best of the other parts of Ubercart you haven't yet seen.

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Payment settings | DrupalforDummies Store". The URL is <http://drupalfordummies.com/store/admin/store/settings/payment/edit/methods>. The page has a yellow header bar with the store logo and name. On the left is a sidebar with a navigation menu for account management, content creation, administrator functions, and store administration (including orders, customers, products, reports, conditional actions, configuration, cart settings, catalog settings, checkout settings, country settings, Google Checkout settings, order settings, payment settings, price handler settings, product settings, and store settings). Below the sidebar is a "User management" section with links for Reports, Help, and Log out. The main content area has a breadcrumb trail: Home → Administer → Store administration → Configuration → Payment settings. It features tabs for Overview, Edit, Payment settings, Payment methods (which is selected), and Payment gateways. A sub-section titled "Payment methods" explains that settings below apply to enabled modules. It lists several payment methods with their current list position and default gateway: PayPal Website Payments Standard (position 1, no gateway), PayPal Express Checkout (position 1, no gateway), COD (position 1, no gateway), Check (position 1, no gateway), Google Checkout (position 1, Google Checkout), Credit card (position 2, Test Gateway), 2Checkout (position 3, no gateway), and Other (position 10, no gateway). Below the table are links to "PayPal Website Payments Standard settings", "PayPal Express Checkout settings", "COD settings", "Check settings", "Google Checkout settings", "Credit card settings", and "2Checkout settings". At the bottom are "Save configuration" and "Reset to defaults" buttons, and a "Done" link.

**Figure 15-15:**  
Enabling  
Payment  
methods for  
Ubercart.

## Using the fulfillment modules

Not only does Ubercart manage the products, catalog, shopping cart, and order form for you, but it also has the capability to handle shipping cost calculations. To use the fulfillment modules, follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**⇒**Site building**⇒**Modules**.
2. Under the **Ubercart – core (optional)** section, select the box next to **Shipping Quotes**.
3. Under the **Ubercart – fulfillment** section, select all four boxes.
4. Click **Save configuration**.

Now you are ready to create an image field for the Product content type.

5. Choose **Administer**⇒**Store administration**⇒**Configuration**⇒**Shipping quote settings**.
6. Click on the **Quote methods** tab, and then the **General settings** link (see Figure 15-16).

**Shipping quote settings | DrupalforDummies Store**

Home » Administer » Store administration » Configuration » Shipping quote settings

Shipping quote settings

General settings    Flat rate    UPS    USPS    Weight quote

Enable    Shipping method    List position

<input type="checkbox"/> UPS	0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> U.S. Postal Service (Parcel)	0
<input type="checkbox"/> U.S. Postal Service (Envelope)	0
<input type="checkbox"/> U.S. Postal Service (Intl., Parcel)	0
<input type="checkbox"/> U.S. Postal Service (Intl., Envelope)	0

**List position**  
Determines which shipping methods are quoted at checkout when products of different shipping types are ordered. Larger values take precedence.

Envelope (U.S. Postal Service (Envelope), U.S. Postal Service (Intl., Envelope)): 0

Small package (UPS, U.S. Postal Service (Parcel), U.S. Postal Service (Intl., Parcel)): 0

**Default order fulfillment type for products:** Small package

**Save configuration**

**Figure 15-16:**  
Shipping quote settings allows you to select types of shipping.

On this page, you select the shipping type you use. Depending on which type, clicking on the appropriate link gives you more options for providing account information you may have with that service.

## *Taxing your customers*

It's not a fun thing to think about, but it's necessary for many online merchants to collect tax on the goods they sell. Three modules can help. Follow these steps:

1. Choose **Administer**→**Site building**→**Modules**.
2. Under the **Ubercart – core (optional)** section, select the boxes next to **Reports**, **Tax Report**, and **Taxes**.
3. Click **Save configuration**.
4. Choose **Administer**→**Store administration**→**Configuration**→**Tax rates and settings**.
5. Click on the **Add a tax rate** tab (see Figure 15-17).

**Figure 15-17:**  
Add a tax rate form  
sets up  
automatic  
taxation of  
purchases.

On this page, you select the tax rate and give it a name that will appear on the customer's checkout form.

When you installed the Reports module, you gained access to a Sales tax report, located at Administer⇒Store administration⇒Reports⇒Sales tax report. There are a number of other valuable reports in this same area of your site:

- ✓ **Customer reports:** Presents the total orders, products, sales, and average order totals for each customer.
- ✓ **Product reports:** Shows every product listed in the store, how many have sold, how many times it has been viewed, revenue, and gross profit.
- ✓ **Sales reports:** Displays sale summaries for the last two days, average monthly sales, and projected sales.
- ✓ **Sales tax report:** A handy report that shows you the sales tax you have collected for a particular period.



# Part V

# The Part of Tens

The 5<sup>th</sup> Wave

By Rich Tennant



### *In this part . . .*

**I**ou've built a tremendous Web site, but you want more. More modules, more themes. These two chapters each consist of ten nuggets — ten more modules for Drupal and ten Websites that let you connect with other users to garner even more knowledge about Drupal. Because now that you've built one site using Drupal, there's no reason not to build more.

## Chapter 16

# Ten Must-Have Drupal Modules

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Adding Web forms
- ▶ Ensuring search engine optimization
- ▶ Preventing spam
- ▶ Generating a site map



Drupal sites can be extended with hundreds of additional modules available for free download. In this chapter, I point out ten interesting ones.

## CAPTCHA

A CAPTCHA is a random question that site visitors are prompted to answer. Most often, a CAPTCHA is a small graphic image that contains a printed word. The word in the image has to be typed into a form before a user can complete some action on a site. CAPTCHAS can also be basic math questions (for example, your visitor has to type in the answer to **10+8**). Finally, it can consist of a string of text about which the visitor is asked a question (for example, “What is the first word in the phrase *ofomom isulul iki udev uquse?*”) Using a CAPTCHA keeps spammers from being able to use programs to spam your site with lots of fake comments that are actually advertisements for prescription drugs, online casinos, or other questionable services.



While using a CAPTCHA is a good idea, it doesn’t stop humans from posting spam. It only prevents automated spamming, programs that locate Drupal sites and root through them looking for places to add spammy comments. I highly recommend you moderate all comments in addition to using the CAPTCHA plug-in. This may seem like overkill, but CAPTCHA limits the amount of spam you have to wade through so you have a manageable number of comments to moderate.

After you have uploaded and activated the module, you can configure where CAPTCHAS appear in your site by choosing Administer→User Management→Captcha (see Figure 16-1).

You will see a list of form types on your site and a drop-down menu that allows you to select which of the three CAPTCHA types — text, image, or math — that must be answered before a form can be successfully submitted.

The Image CAPTCHA tab gives you some options to control the image CAPTCHA. You can specify font size, which font to use, what characters should be used, and what colors to use. The Distortion and noise section lets you control the appearance of the text by adding noise and distorting the letters. If you do distort the text in your image CAPTCHA, make sure you test it a few times to ensure that it is still readable.



Hacker techniques grow increasingly sophisticated all the time. Image CAPTCHAS work best when they are a little difficult to read. Optical character recognition programs, the same algorithms used to allow scanned documents to be output as text, can easily scan CAPTCHA images and extract the text, so adding a bit of noise or distortion can help foil them.

The Text CAPTCHA tab allows you to create and use your own phrase for visitors to answer rather than the random gibberish it produces.

**CAPTCHA**

**CAPTCHA**   **Image CAPTCHA**   **Text CAPTCHA**

**General settings** | **Examples**

A CAPTCHA can be added to virtually each Drupal form. Some default forms are already provided in the form list, but arbitrary forms can be easily added and managed when the option "Add CAPTCHA administration links to forms" is enabled.

Users with the "skip CAPTCHA" permission won't be offered a challenge. Be sure to grant this permission to the trusted users (e.g. site administrators). If you want to test a protected form, be sure to do it as a user without the "skip CAPTCHA" permission (e.g. as anonymous user).

[\[more help...\]](#)

Add CAPTCHA administration links to forms

This option is very helpful to enable/disable challenges on forms. When enabled, users with the "administer CAPTCHA settings" permission will see CAPTCHA administration links on all forms (except on administrative pages, which shouldn't be accessible to untrusted users in the first place). These links make it possible to enable a challenge of the desired type or disable it.

**Challenge type per form**

Select the challenge type you want for each of the listed forms (identified by their so called *form\_ids*). You can easily add arbitrary forms with the help of the "Add CAPTCHA administration links to forms" option or the the CAPTCHA point form.

form_id	Challenge type (module)	Operations
comment_form	<none>	<input type="button" value="delete"/>
contact_mail_page	<none>	<input type="button" value="delete"/>
contact_mail_user	<none>	<input type="button" value="delete"/>
user_login	<none>	<input type="button" value="delete"/>
user_login_block	<none>	<input type="button" value="delete"/>
user_pass	<none>	<input type="button" value="delete"/>

**The Author**

Lynn Beighley

**Recent comments**

- I'm in favor 6 days 8 hours ago

**Who's new**

- lynn
- Lynn Beighley

**Who's online**

There are currently 1 user and guests online.

**Online users**

- Lynn Beighley

**Syndicate**

**Figure 16-1:**  
CAPTCHA  
interface.

## FAQ

Many Web sites benefit by having a Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) page where you can answer questions about the purpose and function of your site. The FAQ module allows you to easily create one without having to worry about formatting a page for it.

As soon as you add this module, a link appears in the Navigation menu (see Figure 16-2).



You probably will want Frequently Asked Questions to appear as a link in the Primary menu. To do this, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer → Site building → Menus → Navigation. Find the Menu item *Frequently Asked Questions* and click the Edit link to the right.**
- 2. Find the Parent item drop-down, and scroll down to choose the <Primary links> option.**
- 3. Click Save.**

The Frequently Asked Questions link will now appear in your Primary menu.

**Figure 16-2:**  
FAQ configura-  
tion.



To add questions to your FAQ page, choose Create Content⇒FAQ. Enter a question in the Question blank and an answer in the Answer block, and then click Save. To add more questions, simply choose this link again.

Enter the comments in the *reverse* of the order you want them to show up on the page. The last question you enter is first in the list.

You can also control the order by changing the weight of each question. To do this, either

- ✓ Enter the desired weight when you create the question
- ✓ Choose Administer⇒Content Management⇒Content and click Edit next to the question you wish to change or to add weight.

This is also where you delete the questions.

## FCKeditor – WYSIWYG HTML Editor

Despite its risqué name, the FCKeditor module allows you and your users to easily create formatted content, much like a word processor produces. It places a framework of formatting commands on top of any large text entry fields (see Figure 16-3).

To use the formatting panel, highlight the text you wish to change. Then click the appropriate button in the panel. Finally, when you're done typing and formatting, click the Submit button. You will see your formatted text.

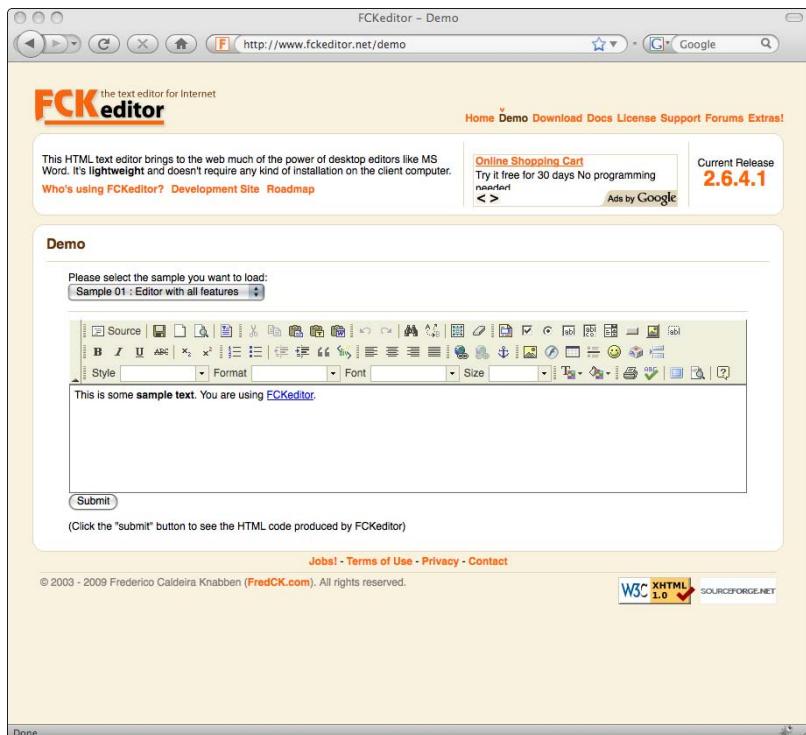


Unlike a true word processor, this panel formats text with HTML code behind the scenes. In the case of fonts, this means you have a limited set available through this panel. The font you use on a Web page will show up only for your users who also have that same font on their computers.

Not only does FCKeditor modify your text, but it also allows you an easy way to include images and Flash movies in your posts. You can also control the color of your text and the background color behind your post.



While having this extra editing functionality is great, sometimes you simply want to type plain text. Every time the FCKeditor appears, a link that says *Switch to plain text editor* appears under the editing block. Click this to hide the FCKeditor panel. To change back, click the *Switch to rich text editor* link.



**Figure 16-3:**  
FCKeditor  
embedded  
in Drupal  
site.

Once you've installed FCKeditor, you need to change the permissions to allow at least one of your roles to use it. To do this, choose Administer → User Management → Permissions. FCKeditor is in the list. You have several configuration options to choose from:

- ✓ *Access fckeditor* causes the FCKeditor interface to appear whenever a user in that role attempts to create any new content.
- ✓ *Administer fckeditor* allows this role to control the settings for FCKeditor.
- ✓ *Allow fckeditor file uploads* allows files to be uploaded to your Web site through the FCKeditor interface.



Although software creators do their best to ensure the security of their applications, malicious people constantly work hard to exploit weaknesses. In general, when using a module that allows users to upload files, or customize content, be cautious. I recommend that you only allow people in highly trusted roles access to this, and any other modules involved in content creation.

## Mollom

If you find that, in spite of using the CAPTCHA module, you still have spam, Mollom is your best bet. Mollom is more than a module; it's also Web service. Mollom.com knows how to detect spam from a variety of sources. When a new comment is entered on your site, Mollom.com checks it to see if it's spam. If Mollom thinks it may be, the user who entered it is shown a CAPTCHA.

Fortunately, you don't have to do anything. Your Drupal software, thanks to the Mollom module, automatically sends the user information to the Mollom.com server, checks for spam, and then, if the CAPTCHA challenge is not passed, the comment never even reaches your Web site. It's estimated that Mollom blocks up to 99.7% of all spam messages.



One of the great things about Mollom is that users don't see the CAPTCHA unless they are suspected of creating spam. This means that most legitimate users don't have to go through the trouble of answering a CAPTCHA. A recent study showed that a significant number of users will not bother filling out a CAPTCHA, and they don't end up writing their comments on your site.

For all its sophistication, Mollom is relatively simple:

**1. Browse to [mollom.com](#) and set up an account there.**

You are walked through a process in which a Public key and Private key are created for your site.

**2. Enter the Public and Private keys in the Mollom settings by choosing Administer→Site Configuration→Mollom.**

**3. Enter the keys from the [mollom.com](#) site in the corresponding blanks on this form.**

**4. Click Save configuration (see Figure 16-4).**

That's all there is to it. Each time you browse back to Administer→Site Configuration→Mollom, you see a report of spam that Mollom has stopped.



Mollom has another nifty feature. Suppose you have a spammy comment on your site. With Mollom installed, every time you delete content, you are presented with a form that asks you if you want to report the content to Mollom as spam. This is part of how Mollom keeps its data up to date and is able to detect new types of spam. You can even classify what kind of spam it is (for example, violent content, taunting, or simply unsolicited advertising). Reporting the content is optional, which is good because sometimes you delete comments that are not spam.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for 'Drupal For Dummies.com'. The URL in the address bar is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/settings/mollom>. The page title is 'Mollom | Drupal For Dummies.com'. On the left, there's a sidebar with a user profile for 'Lynn Beighley' and a navigation menu under 'Administrator' for 'Site configuration' (including 'SEO Checklist', 'Actions', 'Administration theme', etc.). The main content area is titled 'Mollom' and explains its purpose: allowing users to react, participate, and contribute while keeping content under control. It includes instructions for obtaining public and private keys. There are two text input fields for 'Public key:' and 'Private key:', both currently empty. Below these are 'Save configuration' and 'Reset to defaults' buttons. To the right, there's a sidebar titled 'The Author' showing a photo of Lynn Beighley and her name. Below it are sections for 'Recent comments', 'Who's new', 'Who's online', 'Online users', and 'Syndicate'.

**Figure 16-4:**  
Mollom config-  
figuration.

## Printer, E-mail, and PDF Versions

This module allows your visitors to print, e-mail, and create PDF versions of your content.

To control the settings, choose Administer→Site configuration→Printer, e-mail, and PDF versions. There are four tabs: Web page, which controls the printer version settings; e-mail; PDF; and Settings, which controls module-wide settings.

This module gives you nearly complete control over the appearance and behavior of this module. For example, you can specify the text or logo to be used to produce the print, e-mail, or PDF output. With the e-mail output, among many other options, you can control how many e-mails a user can send out in an hour.

By default, no pages or stories on your site will have the print, e-mail, or PDF links. You have to activate them. After you install the module, each time you create content, you will see a *Printer, e-mail and PDF versions* menu on the

content creation page (see Figure 16-5). This controls whether this content can be output, and in what fashion.

When you publish your content, links to print, e-mail to a friend, or create a PDF will appear. By default, they show up after the Add new comment link at the end of the content.



Sometimes it's easier to set an entire content type to have these output links. For example, you might have a news section that you always want visitors to be able to e-mail, print, or create a PDF out of. To set an entire content type with the same output settings, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Content management→Content types.**
- 2. Click on the Edit link to the right of the content type you wish to modify.**

You will see the same Printer, e-mail and PDF versions menu on this page.

- 3. Choose your settings and click Save content type.**

From now on, anytime you create content of that type, the output options you selected will be visible.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Story' form on the Drupal For Dummies.com website. The 'Printer, e-mail and PDF versions' section is expanded, displaying various output settings. The 'Who's online' sidebar indicates there are 1 user and 0 guests online, with Lynn Beighley listed as an online user. The 'Syndicate' link is also visible in the sidebar.

**Figure 16-5:**  
Printer,  
e-mail,  
and PDF  
versions  
settings in  
story  
content  
creation  
form.

## SEO Checklist

This handy module creates a page that recommends other modules and techniques to make your site more visible to search engines. This means that when someone is searching for a service your site provides or information on your site, it will appear closer to the top of the list in search engines. This makes it more likely that the person searching for information will click on the link to your site. The practice of making your site more search-engine friendly is known as *search engine optimization (SEO)*.

When you activate the SEO check list module, it creates a check list with suggestions for modules you can add to optimize your site for search engines. To get to the check list, choose Administer→Site configuration→SEO Checklist. You see a list of check boxes (see Figure 16-6).

As you check off each one, you click the Save button to keep track of what you have finished from the list. Most involve the installation of additional modules.

The screenshot shows the "SEO" Checklist page in the Drupal For Dummies.com admin interface. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with links like "My account", "Create content", "FAQ", "Administrator", "Content management", "Site building", "Site configuration", "SEO Checklist", "Actions", "Administration theme", "Clean URLs", "Date and time", "Error reporting", "FCKeditor", "File system", "FAQ", "Image toolkit", "Input formats", "Logging and alerts", "Mollom", "Performance", "Printer, e-mail and PDF versions", "Simple Ad Block module settings", "Site information", "Site maintenance", "Site map", "Spread", and "Webform".

The main content area displays the "SEO" Checklist with several sections:

- Check for already Installed Modules**: A section with a checkbox labeled "Check" and a "Save" button.
- Page Titles**: A section with a checkbox labeled "Token (required for other modules to function)" followed by "Download | Enable".
- URL paths**: A section with a checkbox labeled "Clean URLs - Activate (Usually automatic. Please double-check!)" followed by "Pathauto Module Download | Enable | Configure", "Global Redirect Module Download | Enable", and "Path Redirect Module Download | Enable".
- Create Search Engine Accounts**: A section with two checkboxes: "Get a Google Account - You'll need this for several of the steps that follow - <https://www.google.com/accounts/NewAccount>" and "Get a Yahoo Account - You'll need this for steps that follow - <http://www.yahoo.com/r/m7>".

The right sidebar features a profile picture of Lynn Beighley, her name, and a "Recent comments" section showing "I'm in favor" posted 6 days 8 hours ago. It also includes sections for "Who's new" (lynn, Lynn Beighley), "Who's online" (1 user and 0 guests online), "Online users" (Lynn Beighley), and "Syndicate" (RSS icon).

Figure 16-6:  
"SEO"  
checklist.

Chances are it's too time consuming to work through the entire list in one sitting, so you can save the form. The next time you choose Administer→Site configuration→SEO Checklist, the items you have finished will still be checked off.



A few of the modules I mention in this chapter are on this list, so when you finish you can check off Sitemap, both Mollom check boxes, and CAPTCHA.

## Simple Ad Block

This is a simple module that lets you enter text from a third-party advertising service or your own advertising content and posts it for you in the Left or Right sidebar.

To create the advertisement, choose Administer→Site configuration→Simple Ad Block. This opens the Simple Ad Block module settings form, where you can paste or create your ad (see Figure 16-7).

The screenshot shows the 'Simple Ad Block module settings' page in a Drupal administrative interface. The URL is [http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/settings/simplead\\_block](http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/settings/simplead_block). The left sidebar shows a navigation tree with 'Administrator' selected, leading to various site configuration options like 'Content management', 'Actions', and 'SEO Checklist'. The main content area has two fields: 'Number of blocks:' set to 1, and 'Ad Block:' which contains a text area for pasting ad code. Below these are 'Save configuration' and 'Reset to defaults' buttons. The right sidebar displays a profile picture and name for 'The Author' (Lynn Beighley), recent comments ('I'm in favor' posted 6 days 8 hours ago), who's new ('lyn' and 'Lynn Beighley'), who's online ('There are currently 1 user and guests online'), online users ('Lynn Beighley'), and syndication links. The footer includes a 'Done' button.

**Figure 16-7:**  
Simple Ad  
Block con-  
figuration.

To display your ad on your site, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site building→Blocks.** You will see tabs for each enabled theme.
- 2. Click on the current site theme and locate the Simple Ad Block in the list.**
- 3. Use the drop-down menu to select the Left or Right sidebar.**
- 4. Click Save blocks.**



You can change the location of the ad block in your sidebar by dragging it above or below other content in the same sidebar on the Administer→Site building→Blocks settings.

Your ad will now appear on all pages of your site in the designated sidebar. If you want more than one ad block, change the number of blocks in the Simple Ad Block module settings form (refer to Figure 16-7). Click Save configuration and more ad blocks will appear.

## Site Map

As your site grows, it's important that visitors be able to find the information they are seeking. Creating a site map can help, and the Site map module automatically creates one for you. To create one, choose Administer→Site configuration→Site map. This opens the Site map form, shown in Figure 16-8.

The form allows you to enter text to appear at the top of the page. You can specifically include menus and front page content if you wish. Click Save configuration to generate your site map.

You have to activate the site map by changing the Permissions. To do this, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→User management→Permissions.**
- 2. Scroll down to site\_map module and click in the check boxes to the right for the roles you wish to see the site map.**
- 3. Click Save permissions.**

The newly created site map is located on your site under `yourdomain-name.com/sitemap`. For example, mine is at `http://drupalfordummies.com/sitemap`. You can link to the site map as you would any other page by adding a link in one of your menus.

The screenshot shows the 'Site map' configuration page for the 'Drupal For Dummies.com' website. The URL in the browser is <http://drupalfordummies.com/admin/settings/sitemap>. The page title is 'Site map | Drupal For Dummies.com'. On the left, there's a sidebar with user information (Lynn Beighley) and a navigation menu for 'Administrator' settings, including 'Content management', 'Site building', 'Site configuration', 'SEO Checklist', 'Actions', 'Administration theme', 'Clean URLs', 'Date and time', 'Error reporting', 'FCKeditor', 'File system', 'Frequently Asked Questions', 'Image toolkit', 'Input formats', 'Logging and alerts', 'Mailman', 'Performance', 'Printer, e-mail and PDF versions', 'Simple Ad Block module settings', 'Site information', 'Site maintenance', 'Site map', 'Spread', and 'WishList Commerce'. The main content area has several sections: 'Site map message' (a text input field with placeholder 'Define a message to be displayed above the site map.'), 'Site map content' (checkboxes for 'Show front page' and 'Show active blog authors'), 'Books to include in the site map' (checkboxes for 'Navigation', 'Primary links', and 'Secondary links'), 'Menus to include in the site map' (checkboxes for 'Navigation', 'Primary links', and 'Secondary links'), and 'Categories to include in the site map' (checkbox for 'Show FAQ content'). To the right, there's a sidebar titled 'The Author' showing a photo of Lynn Beighley and her recent comments ('I'm in favor' posted 6 days 8 hours ago). Below that is 'Who's new' (list of users: lynn, Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (1 user and 0 guests online), 'Online users' (list of users: Lynn Beighley), and 'Syndicate' (RSS icon).

**Figure 16-8:**  
Site map configura-  
tion.

## Spread

The Spread module creates a small form that allows site visitors to send the URL of a page on your site to a friend. The form shows up in a sidebar.

This form is a bit nicer than the Send to a friend link that the Printer, e-mail, and PDF versions module creates:

- ✓ The visitor never leaves the page he is on when he uses or submits the form.
- ✓ The form is a bit more visible than the link.
- ✓ The form is persistent. Any page on your site can be sent.

The downside is that the form takes up screen real-estate on your site that might be better served with different content.



Use either the Send to a friend link or the Spread module, not both. While behaviors are not quite the same, having both on your site is a bit redundant and clutters things up more than necessary.

To use the Spread module, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose Administer→Site configuration→Spread.** This opens the Spread module settings form (see Figure 16-9).
- 2. Check Enable Mollom integration.** This will be an option if you have added the Mollom module I mention earlier in this chapter.
- 3. Customize the Thank you message, Subject, and Body fields with your own content.**
- 4. Change the number of e-mail fields to 1.** In general, most people will only send the information to one address. Also, it's very easy for users to send the form again and again since it doesn't reload the Web page it's on. Changing e-mail fields to 1 reduces the clutter.
- 5. Click Save configuration.**



Selecting Mollom integration means that anonymous users of the Spread form will have to go through CAPTCHA verification. This prevents your form from being abused. For example, a malicious automated program can't submit the form again and again, which could result in your site being overloaded with traffic and crashing, or e-mails from your site being placed on various spammer lists.

The screenshot shows the Spread module configuration page on a Drupal website. The left sidebar lists various administrative options like Content management, Site building, and Site configuration. The main content area is titled 'Spread' and contains several configuration fields. Under 'Destination:', there are three radio buttons: 'Front page' (selected), 'Current page', and 'Custom'. Below this is a 'Custom destination:' field containing '<front>'. The 'Thank you message:' field contains 'Thank you for spreading the word!', and the 'Subject:' field contains 'The thank you message received after submission of the spread form.' The 'Body:' field is empty. To the right, a sidebar displays 'The Author' (Lynn Beighley with a profile picture), 'Recent comments' (I'm in favor, 6 days 8 hours ago), 'Who's new' (lynn, Lynn Beighley), 'Who's online' (1 user online), 'Online users' (Lynn Beighley), and a 'Syndicate' link.

**Figure 16-9:**  
Spread con-  
figuration.

You still need to make the Spread form visible by placing it in one of the sidebars. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Choose Administer→Site building→Blocks. You will see tabs for each enabled theme.
2. Click on the current site theme and locate the Spread form in the list.
3. Use the drop-down menu to select the Left or Right sidebar.
4. Click Save blocks.

## Webform

Webform lets you create forms and questionnaires for your Web site without having to use HTML code to create the form or any other programming language to gather and send the submitted form data to you.



This section is an introduction to this module. For more information about this robust module, I recommend the documentation at <http://drupal.org/handbook/modules/webform>.

To create a Webform, follow these steps:

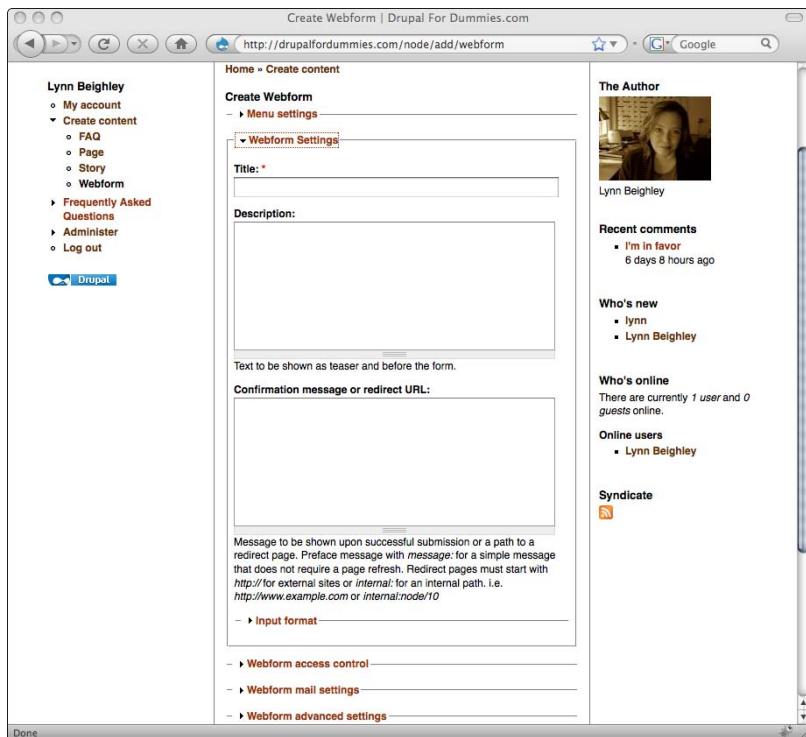
1. Choose Create content→Webform. This opens the Create Webform form (see Figure 16-10). This is the Configuration tab, the first of two tabs you click in order to create your Web form.
2. Fill in a Title for your form. The Description is optional.
3. Enter text in the Confirmation message or redirect URL box. After your visitor fills out the form, this is the text he will see. If you prefer taking him to a Web page, enter the URL here instead of text.
4. Scroll down to Webform mail settings to specify an e-mail where the results of the form submission will be mailed.



You don't have to specify an e-mail here to get the results of your form being submitted. After your form is set up, you can see the collected results of visitors submitting your form.

Choose Administer→Content management→Webforms. Click on the edit link next to the form you are interested in. Finally, click the Results tab to see a table of all the form submissions. Click on one to see the answers that user gave to the form questions.

5. Click Save. You are now on the Form components setup page. This is where you add all the questions to your form. You can create text boxes, radio buttons, drop-down lists, and other standard form elements.



**Figure 16-10:**  
Webform configura-  
tion.

6. Add a text box by typing a name for the field (for example, Last Name). Choose Textfield for type. Click the Add button.
7. Add a drop-down box by typing a name for the field (for example, Favorite Color). Choose Select for Type. Click Add. Enter your choices, one per line, in the Options text box (for example, Red, Blue, Green). Click Submit.
8. Click Publish to create your form.
9. To view your new form, click on the View tab.

You still need to make your form available to people visiting your site. The easiest way to accomplish this is to edit your form and change the settings under the Menu setting. Select the menu where you want your form to appear, give it a title, and click Save.



## **Chapter 17**

---

# **Ten Places to Help You Do More with Drupal**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Getting more help
  - ▶ Changing themes
  - ▶ Meeting other Drupal users
- 

**T**here are many great resources where you can get help, download new themes, and meet other Drupal users. This chapter contains ten great resources to help you get the most from Drupal.

## ***Getting More Help***

The following six resources are great for getting help and advice from experienced Drupal developers.

### ***Drupal.org forum***

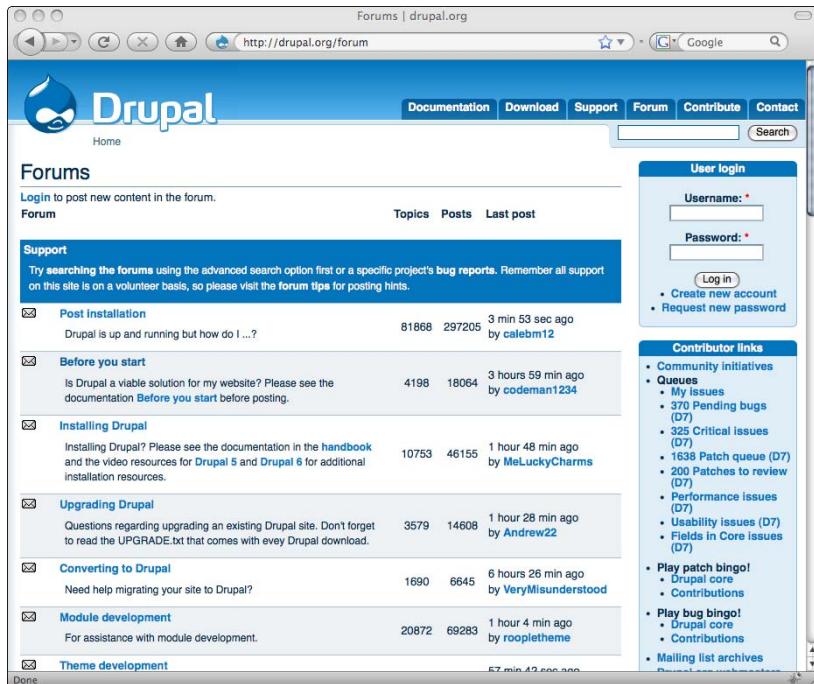
When in doubt, go to the source. The Drupal.org Web site has a great user forum (see Figure 17-1).

To access the forum, browse to

`http://drupal.org/forum`



You don't need an account on the Drupal.org site to read the forum, but if you want to post your own questions, you will. Having an account also enables you to receive notifications when your questions get responses, as well as other news about Drupal.



The screenshot shows the Drupal.org forums page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for Documentation, Download, Support, Forum, Contribute, and Contact. Below the navigation is a search bar. To the right, there's a "User login" form with fields for Username and Password, and links for Log in, Create new account, and Request new password. A sidebar titled "Contributor links" lists various community resources like "Community initiatives", "Queues" (with sub-links for My issues, Pending bugs, Critical issues, Patch queue, Patches to review, Performance issues, Usability issues, and Fields in Core issues), "Play patch bingo!" (with sub-links for Drupal core and Contributions), "Play bug bingo!" (with sub-links for Drupal core and Contributions), and "Mailing list archives". The main content area is titled "Forums" and has a sub-section titled "Support". It lists several topics with their titles, last post times, and counts of topics and posts. Topics include "Post Installation", "Before you start", "Installing Drupal", "Upgrading Drupal", "Converting to Drupal", "Module development", and "Theme development".

**Figure 17-1:**  
Drupal.org  
user forum.

## Twitter

Twitter may seem an unlikely source for Drupal help and information, but it's worth a bit of attention. You can screen for tweets about Drupal topics by typing **#drupal** in the search box located on the right side of the [twitter.com](http://twitter.com) home page (see Figure 17-2).

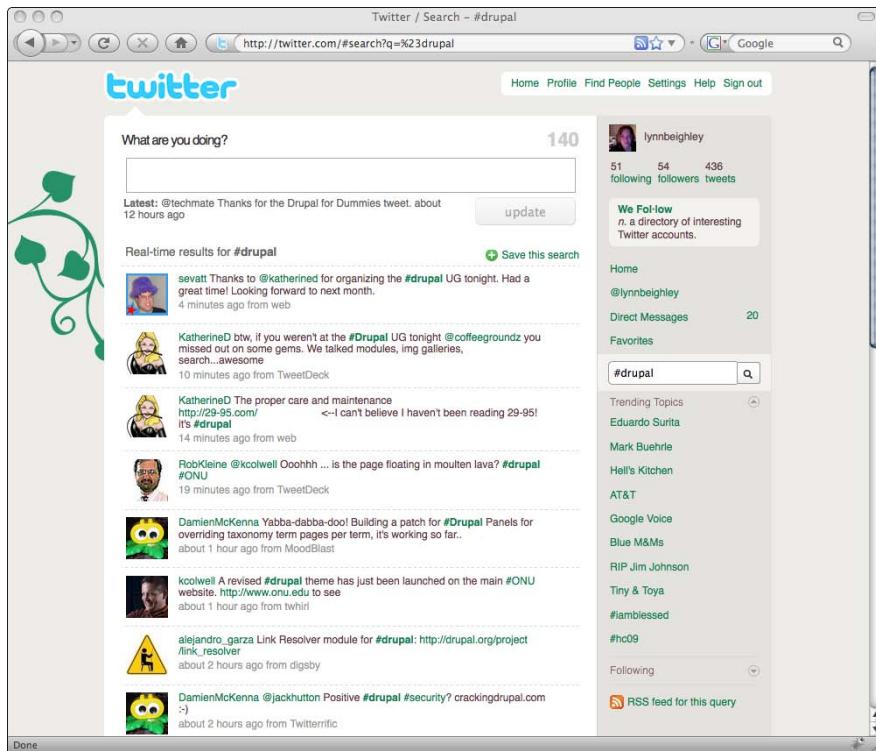
Many of the resulting tweets point you at new themes, Drupal sites, and Drupal developments.

## Facebook

Facebook may seem like another unlikely resource, but the Facebook Drupal group is a great place to get help and ideas (see Figure 17-3).

To join the group, you need a Facebook account (<http://facebook.com>). After you have an account, click the small groups icon on the bottom right of the screen. You can also browse directly to

```
http://www.facebook.com/group.php?gid=2218157342
```



**Figure 17-2:**  
Twitter  
search of  
#drupal.



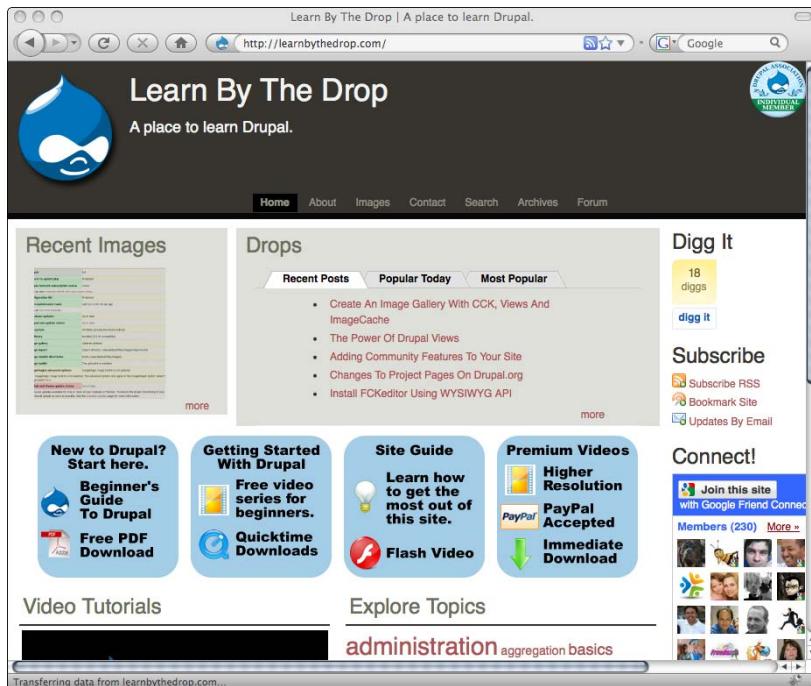
**Figure 17-3:**  
Facebook  
Drupal  
group.

## Learn By The Drop

If you like video demonstrations, a good site to visit is Learn By The Drop (<http://learnbythedrop.com>), shown in Figure 17-4. This site contains a number of video and written tutorials.

## GotDrupal.com

Another tutorial site with videos is GotDrupal.com (see Figure 17-5). The videos are created as the site is being developed, and it's a bit like watching a house being built.



**Figure 17-4:**  
Learn By  
The Drop  
is a Drupal  
tutorial site.

The screenshot shows the homepage of GotDrupal.com. The main content area includes sections like 'About this site' (with a 'Welcome to GotDrupal.com!' message), 'Expert Drupal Development' (listing Multisite, Development using Drupal for educational & non-profit orgs, and www.Swifht.com), 'Drupal Hosting' (Free Drupal installation & tutorial), and a 'Twitter link and video notification' section. The sidebar features a 'Get Video notification by email' button, a 'Drupal Theme Generator' by Artisteer, a search bar, and a 'Be Notified!' section for email subscriptions.

**Figure 17-5:**  
GotDrupal.  
com  
contains  
videos about  
Drupal site  
construction.

## Drupal.org mailing lists

It's a good idea to stay informed of Drupal news. The Drupal.org site offers a number of mailing lists (see Figure 17-6). These are located at



<http://drupal.org/mailing-lists>

I recommend these lists:

- ✓ **Support:** A list for support questions
- ✓ **Development:** A list for Drupal developers
- ✓ **Consulting:** A list for Drupal consultants and Drupal service/hosting providers



**Figure 17-6:**  
Drupal.org  
mailing lists.

## Getting New Themes

New Drupal themes are constantly being developed. Here are two sites to get new ones.

### Drupal.org themes

Once again, the Drupal.org site is a great place to turn and has links to newly developed themes (see Figure 17-7).

You can find them at

```
http://drupal.org/project/themes
```

### Drupal2U.com

Another site with great new themes is Drupal2U.com (see Figure 17-8).

The screenshot shows the Drupal.org themes page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for Documentation, Download, Support, Forum, Contribute, and Contact. On the right, there are search and filter options: 'Sort by' (Title, Creation date, Last release, Recent activity, Usage statistics), 'Search themes' (with a search input and submit button), 'Filter by compatibility' (4.7.x, 5.x, 6.x, 7.x), and a 'User login' section with fields for Username and Password, and links for Log in, Create new account, and Request new password.

**Themes**

Themes allow you to change the look and feel of your Drupal site. These contributed themes are not part of any official release and may not work correctly. Only use matching versions of themes with Drupal. Themes released for Drupal 5.x will not work for Drupal 6.x. Many of these themes can also be previewed on the third party site the [Theme Garden](#)

**007 niGraphic Studio Theme**

By nimazuk on the 14th of August, 2008

007 niGraphic Studio Theme is a very light-weight, CSS-based, tableless template, with 2 columns made by niGraphic Design.

- Try out a demonstration

**Features**

- Fixed width with 2 columns
- Random rotating header images (Using CSS only)
- Standards-compliant XHTML 1.0 Strict and CSS
- Light-weight and fast loading

Tested in IE 6, IE 7, Firefox 2, Firefox 3, Safari 3.1, Opera 9.5, Chrome  
Screen shots will be available soon.

**Now Available:**

[Adobe PSD file for 007 nigraphic studio theme](#)

Version	Date	Links	Status
Done			

**Figure 17-7:**  
Drupal.org  
themes.

The screenshot shows the Drupal2U.com website. At the top, there's a navigation bar with Home, About, Search, and Contact. On the right, there's a sidebar with a 'Google Custom Search' input field and a dropdown menu for 'Drupal themes' containing categories like 1 column, 2 columns, 3 columns, 4.7.x themes, 5.x themes, 6.x themes, aquamarine, beige, black, blue, and brown.

**Free Drupal Templates**

Free themes for your Drupal powered websites. Download stunning Drupal templates for free at [Drupal2U.com](#)

**Pixelgreen Drupal Template**

June 15th, 2009 by admin

Pixelgreen is a light coloured free theme for Drupal with clean and simple design. Being an ideal solution for those who prefer pure tableless CSS design it provides the following features:

- left/right column swapping
- support for all common operating systems and browsers
- W3C XHTML 1.0 Strict, W3C CSS Valid.
- built-in comment styling
- SEO optimization and much more.

A preview image of the Pixelgreen theme is shown, featuring a green landscape background and a clean interface.

**Figure 17-8:**  
Drupal2U.  
com  
contains  
additional  
Drupal  
themes.

## Meeting Other Drupal Users

A great way to extend your knowledge of Drupal is to get to know other Drupal users. Here are two sites where you can find local users of Drupal.

### Drupal.org user groups

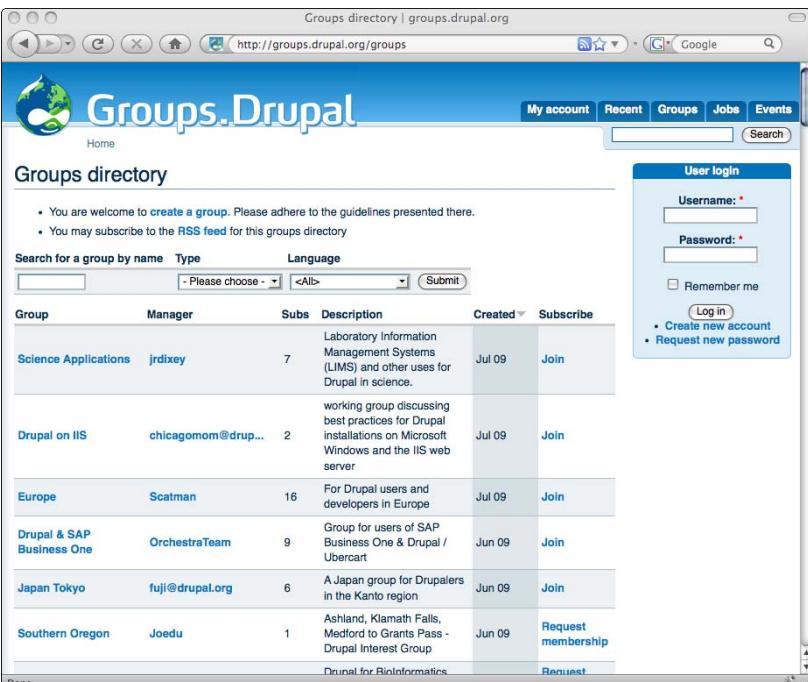
The Drupal.org site keeps a list of local Drupal user groups (see Figure 17-9).

To access the directory of groups, visit

`http://groups.drupal.org/groups`

### Meetup.com

Meetup.com is a great place to find other people in your area who are building Drupal sites (see Figure 17-10).



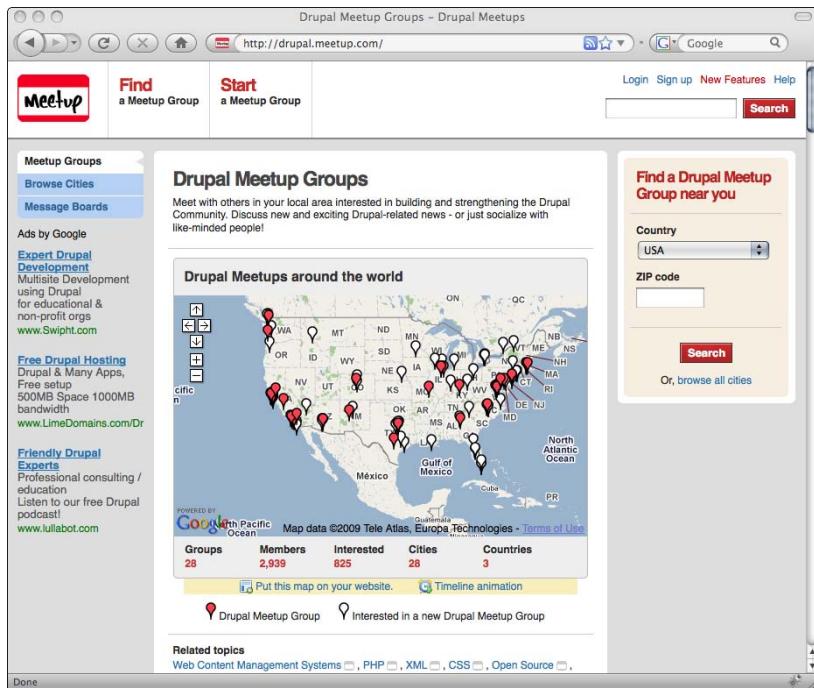
The screenshot shows a web browser displaying the 'Groups directory' page at <http://groups.drupal.org/groups>. The page has a blue header with the 'Groups.Drupal' logo. On the right side, there is a 'User login' form with fields for 'Username' and 'Password', a 'Remember me' checkbox, and 'Log in' and 'Create new account' links. Below the login form, there is a 'Request new password' link. The main content area shows a table of user groups with columns: Group, Manager, Subs, Description, Created, and Subscribe. The table lists several groups, including 'Science Applications', 'Drupal on IIS', 'Europe', 'Drupal & SAP Business One', 'Japan Tokyo', and 'Southern Oregon'. Each group entry includes a 'Join' or 'Request membership' button. At the bottom of the page, there is a 'Done' button.

Group	Manager	Subs	Description	Created	Subscribe
Science Applications	jrdixey	7	Laboratory Information Management Systems (LIMS) and other uses for Drupal in science.	Jul 09	<a href="#">Join</a>
Drupal on IIS	chicagomom@drup...	2	working group discussing best practices for Drupal installations on Microsoft Windows and the IIS web server	Jul 09	<a href="#">Join</a>
Europe	Scatman	16	For Drupal users and developers in Europe	Jul 09	<a href="#">Join</a>
Drupal & SAP Business One	OrchestraTeam	9	Group for users of SAP Business One & Drupal / Ubercart	Jun 09	<a href="#">Join</a>
Japan Tokyo	fuji@drupal.org	6	A Japan group for Drupalers in the Kanto region	Jun 09	<a href="#">Join</a>
Southern Oregon	Joedu	1	Ashland, Klamath Falls, Medford to Grants Pass - Drupal Interest Group	Jun 09	<a href="#">Request membership</a>

**Figure 17-9:**  
Drupal.org  
list of user  
groups.

To find a local Drupal Meetup group, visit

<http://drupal.meetup.com>



**Figure 17-10:**  
Meetup.com  
map of local  
Drupal user  
groups.



# Index

---

## *Symbols and Numerics*

.ico extension, 125  
.site-name, 220  
.site-name a:hover, 217  
.site-name a:link/.site-name a:visited, 217  
.title, 217  
.zip files, 31, 187, 188–189  
#footer color, 218  
#header color, 217  
#main color, 217  
#mission, 220  
#mission color, 217  
#sidebar-left/#sidebar-right color, 217  
2Checkout (Web site), 313  
404 error, 205

## • A •

access control, image galleries, 16–17, 268–272  
accounts  
administrator, 46–49, 57–61  
creating, 61–62  
with ISP, 22  
personal, 47, 48–49  
security, 61  
test user, 62  
users, 57–61, 297  
verification of new, 64  
Actions  
about, 156  
creating, 54  
triggering, 202–204  
Activity Stream module  
about, 273–274  
enabling, 276

anonymous users  
about, 67–68  
Activity Stream visibility, 279  
authenticated, 59  
comment permissions, 104, 106  
shopping cart duration, 307

Apache Web server  
installation, 40–42  
versions of, 22–23, 24  
apache.org (Web site), 41  
Apple Macintosh  
OS X operating system, 41, 42  
text editors for, 211  
users, 3  
Web server software for, 23

Apture  
about, 282–283  
enabling, 283–284  
installation, 283  
links, 285–288  
setting up, 284–285  
audience, 231–232  
authenticated users  
about, 67–68  
activity streams for, 274  
anonymous, 59  
blogs for, 164  
comments, 104, 106, 158, 180  
forums, 180  
HTML content, 289  
multiple-site registration, 235  
profiles of, 139, 239  
shopping cart duration, 307  
theme changes, 121  
visibility settings, 143  
author, credit as, 59  
authoring information, 106–108, 162  
Authorize.net (Web site), 313  
a:visited, 217

## • B •

background color, 217, 326  
backing up databases, 194–196, 198, 201  
black (color), 214  
blocked users, 49, 59, 70

blocks  
content of, 209  
definition, 127–128  
module, 153  
themes, 136–144  
block.tpl.php files, 209  
Blog API, 157  
Blogger (Web site), 274  
blogs  
about, 14, 15, 229  
features of, 232  
installation, 159–169  
module, 157  
Bluemarine (theme)  
regions of, 130  
as sample, 207, 208–212, 213  
bluemarine.info files, 209  
body  
color, 216, 217, 219  
text, 219  
boilerplate content  
about, 53, 55, 156  
advertising as, 333  
display settings for, 124  
primary menus as, 94  
bold font, 218, 220  
book comparison notes, 274  
Book module, 157  
box.tpl.php files, 209  
brochure sites, 230, 233  
browsers (Firefox), 225  
browsing  
to blogs, 164  
to Drupal sites, 35–36  
built-in blocks, 136

## • C •

CAPTCHA, 323–324  
Cart settings, 307  
Cascading Style Sheet (CSS), 154, 208  
catalogs, 297, 310–313  
CCK module, 298  
cell phone videos, 273  
Chameleon (theme), 130  
Checkout, Google (Web site), 313–315

- Checkout settings, 307  
 Cirtex (Web site), 23  
 Clean URLs option, 39, 44, 54, 205  
 CMS (Content Management System), 11–12  
 coding  
   Apture, 288  
   backing up, 198  
   chunks, 127–128, 153  
   for color, 214–218  
   fonts, 218–220  
   HTML  
     for blogs, 162  
     content, 98–101  
     editor, 326–327  
     in PHP files, 208  
       text formatting, 326  
   images, 113, 115  
   PHP files, 208  
   potentially harmful, 101, 153, 154  
   for running Drupal, 155  
   themes, 208–210, 213–216  
 Color module, 158  
 colors, 214–218, 219  
 colorschemer.com (Web site), 214  
 comments  
   about polls, 238  
   adding, 80  
   allowing, 104–105  
   in blogs, 14, 162  
   disabling, 105  
   in forums, 16  
   module, 158, 180–181  
   module for, 67  
   on news articles, 52, 81  
   photos in, 124  
   read/write, 106  
   recent, 138  
   record of, 69  
   registered/unregistered users, 59, 67, 104  
   settings, 103–106  
   in stories, 49, 51  
   template for, 209  
   turning off, 87  
 comment.tpl.php files, 209  
 commercial versions, software, 42  
 community sites  
   about, 230, 233  
   polls on, 236  
   user profiles on, 239  
 company information in footers, 133  
 compressed files, 31, 187, 188–189  
 computer limitations, 231  
 configuring  
   blogs, 162  
   contact forms, 15  
   databases, 12, 44  
   Drupal, 12, 44  
   files, 36–37, 43–44  
   forums/Forum module, 16, 171–174  
   image galleries, 256  
   permissions, 153, 156  
   regions, 133–136  
   settings, 56  
   site form, 38–40  
 storefronts  
   settings, 307–309  
   shopping cart, 306–307  
 themes, 60, 123–126  
 time zones, 60  
 Web sites, 38–40, 44, 54–56, 202–206  
 confirmation, user registration, 62, 64  
 connection speed limitations, 231  
 consultant lists, 343  
 contacts  
   Contact Us pages, 52  
   forms, 15, 246–249  
   module, 158  
   settings, 308  
 containers (forums), 170, 171–172, 174, 176, 177  
 content  
   Activity Stream in, 280  
   creation  
     about, 49–51  
     access for, 47, 80–81  
     menu options, 93–95  
     nodes, 68, 79–87  
       stories, 87–93  
     defaults, 149  
     e-mail versions of, 329  
     filtering, 154–155  
     formatting, 326  
     hiding, 11, 61  
     management  
       about, 97–98  
       authoring information, 106–108  
       comment settings, 103–106  
       editing, 52, 97–98

- content (*continued*)
    - HTML, 98–101
    - images, 113–115
    - Node module, 155
    - publishing options, 109–113
    - revision control, 101–103
    - newest, 158
    - nodes, 68, 79–87
    - ordering, 89–90, 111, 141, 178
    - PDF versions of, 329
    - print versions of, 329
    - regions, 129, 131–132
    - with RSS feeds, 289–294
    - from social media, 276–278
    - structure of, 210
    - syndicated, 139
    - types of, 52
  - Content Management System (CMS), 11–12
  - Content translation and Locale module, 158
  - contributed elements
    - images, 253, 267–268
    - themes/modules, 185–186, 192–193
  - copyright statements, 132
  - Core modules
    - about, 151–152
    - restrictions, 156
    - updating, 192
  - Country settings, 308
  - Create Poll form, 238
  - Creative Commons License, 17
  - credit card transactions, 313
  - cron (program)
    - about, 191–192
    - lag time improvements with, 279, 291
    - updating, 190
  - CSS (Cascading Style Sheet), 154, 208
  - currency (money), 309
  - cursor hover movements, 217, 220
  - Customer reports, 319
  - customization
    - date format, 107–108
    - e-mail, 65–66
    - site titles, 55
  - themes
    - about, 127–128
    - blocks, 127–128, 136–144
    - coding, 213–216
    - creation, 210–212
  - dissection, 207–210
  - graphics, 221–222
  - installation, 212–213
  - menus, 127, 144–150
  - regions, 128–136
  - screen shots, 225
  - style.css files, 216–220
  - templates, 222–225
  - Web pages, 11, 149
- D •
- daily sales reports, 319
  - dangerous tags, 101
  - databases
    - backing up, 194–196, 198, 201
    - configuration of, 44
    - logging, 158
    - problems with, 24
    - protecting, 193–196
    - restoring, 196
    - security, 34, 35, 37–38
    - setup, 33–35
    - versions of, 23
  - dates, appearance of, 54, 107–108, 156
  - defaults
    - Activity Stream, 279–280
    - Apture, 289
    - authoring information, 106
    - comments, 51, 105, 158, 238
    - content, 89–90, 111, 149
    - currency (money), 309
    - disabled blocks, 138–139
    - display settings, 124–125
    - e-mail, 67
    - forums, 177
    - home page, 110
    - HTML, 100, 289
    - images, 253, 268
    - pages, 205, 329
    - product listings, 301
    - publishing, 109
    - resetting back to, 126
    - search module, 245
    - stories, 93, 106, 329
    - themes, 117, 118, 119, 126
    - time zones, 39, 44, 54, 60

- topic ordering (forums), 178  
 users  
   profiles of, 241  
   registration, 64  
   types of, 59  
 deleting  
   links, 148–149  
   pages, 85–86  
   story content, 89  
   users, 53  
   Web pages, 85–86  
 demographics, audience, 231  
 descriptions, product, 312  
 developer lists, 343  
 disabling  
   blocks, 138–139  
   comments, 105  
   by default, 138–139  
   themes/modules, 190  
 display setting toggles, 124–125  
 distortion as foil, 324  
 domain names, 39, 44  
*Don't Make Me Think* (Krug), 231  
 downloading  
   Drupal, 28, 43  
   themes/modules, 187, 253–255, 297–298  
 dragging content, 136  
 Drupal. *See also specific topics*  
   database setup, 33–35  
   downloading, 28, 43  
   extracting, 29, 31–32  
   features, 10–12  
   help sources  
    Drupal.org forum, 339–340  
    Facebook, 340, 341  
    GotDrupal.com, 342–343  
    Learn By The Drop, 342  
    mailing lists, 343–344  
    themes, 344–345  
    Twitter, 340, 341  
    user groups, 346–347  
   installation  
    on a local machine, 40–44  
    on a Web host, 35–40  
   limitations, 12  
   logos, 10, 124  
   must-have modules  
    CAPTCHA, 323–324  
    e-mail versions of, 329–330  
   FAQ, 325–326  
   FCKeditor, 326–327  
   Mollom, 328–329  
   PDF versions, 329–330  
   print versions of, 329–330  
   search engine optimization checklist, 331–332  
   Simple Ad Block, 332–333  
   Site Map, 333–334  
   Spread module, 334–336  
   Webform, 336–337  
   site options, 13–19  
   terminology, 52  
   updating, 190–193, 200–202  
   uploading, 29–31  
   Web site visibility, 33  
 Drupal2U.com (Web site), 344, 345  
 drupalfordummies (Web site), 23, 38, 45–46. *See also specific topics*  
 Drupalmuseum.com (Web site), 19  
 Drupal.org (Web site). *See also specific project examples throughout text*  
   forum, 339–340  
   mailing lists, 343  
   as official site, 10, 18, 346  
   themes, 344–345  
   user groups, 346  
 Drupsites.net (Web site), 19

• **E** •

- editing  
   content, 52, 97–98  
   links, 148–149  
   pages, 84–85  
   pre-built blocks, 143–144  
   story content, 89  
   templates, 222–225  
   text, 211  
   text editors, 211, 236  
   users, 53  
   Web pages, 84–85  
 e-mail  
   addresses  
    of administrators, 39, 59  
    of senders, 39  
    setting, 49  
    as user identity, 62  
    of Web sites, 44

e-mail (*continued*)  
 content, 329  
 customization, 65–66  
 notification by, 69  
 verification by, 64  
 embedding, content, 283, 288–289  
 enabling  
   Activity Stream, 276  
   Apture, 283–284  
   blogs, 159–160  
   checkout, 307  
   forums, 169–170  
   images, 255  
   postings, 49  
   themes/modules, 118–122, 130, 189–190  
   Ubercart, 299  
 entertainment information, 274  
 error reporting, 55, 205–206  
 extracting  
   Bluemarine, 211  
   Drupal, 31–32  
   themes/modules, 188–189  
 timing of, 29

## • F •

Facebook (Web site)  
 about, 273  
 for Drupal help, 340, 341  
 feed activation, 278–279  
 information integration, 11  
 modules for, 275  
 Fantastico, 23, 24–28, 34, 200–201  
 FAQs (frequently asked questions), 325–326  
 favicons, 124, 125  
 FCKeditor, 326–327  
 feature choices, 232–235  
 Feed aggregator link, 291–292, 293  
 fees, credit card transactions, 313  
 ffmpeg video hosting, 23  
 file compression, 31  
 file manager programs  
   about, 29  
   Drupal extraction, 31, 32  
   navigating out, 30  
 file systems, 55  
 File Transfer Protocol (FTP) programs,  
   29, 187  
 file types, 208

FileField module, 298  
 Fileman, 29, 187  
 Filter module, 153, 154–155  
 filtered HTML, 99–101, 162  
 filtering users, 70  
 Firebug (Web site), 225  
 Firefox (Web site), 225  
 Flash movies/videos, 23, 231, 326  
 flexibility, 10  
 Flickr.com (Web site), 16–17, 234  
 fonts  
   about, 218–220  
   limitations, 326  
 Footer message for online store, 308  
 footers  
   color of, 218  
   region, 129, 132–133  
   on sites, 55, 56  
 formatting  
   content, 326  
   settings, 309  
 forms, 336  
 forums  
   about, 15–16, 158  
   community sites as, 233  
   Drupal users, 339  
   module, 169–180  
 free versions, software, 42  
 frequently asked questions (FAQs), 325–326  
 FTP programs, 29, 187  
 fulfillment modules, 317  
 full HTML, 101, 113, 162, 289

## • G •

Gallery2, 17  
 Garland (theme)  
   as default, 117, 118  
   regions of, 128–129, 130  
 GIF files, 253  
 global settings, 123–124, 126  
 GoDaddy (Web site), 22, 23  
 Goodreads (Web site), 274  
 Google, OpenID for, 235–236  
 Google Analytics (Web site), 298  
 Google Checkout (Web site), 313–315  
 Google News (Web site), 234  
 Google Reader (Web site), 289–291  
 GotDrupal.com (Web site), 342–343

graphics themes, 221–222  
 GreenGeeks (Web site), 22, 23  
 guidelines, user registration, 63–64

## • H •

hackers  
 CAPTCHAS for, 324  
 coding and, 153

headers  
 color of, 217  
 region of, 128, 131  
 help sources  
 Facebook, 341  
 GotDrupal.com, 342–343  
 Learn By The Drop, 342  
 mailing lists, 343–344  
 Online Help, 53, 158  
 themes, 344–345  
 user groups, 346–347

home page  
 blog entries, 162–163  
 defaults, 110

Hot topic threshold:, 178  
 HTML. *See also* coding  
 for blogs, 162  
 content, 98–101  
 editor, 326–327  
 in PHP files, 208  
 text formatting, 326

HTML corrector, 154

HTML filter, 154

htmlhelp.com (Web site), 214

hyperlinks. *See* links

hypertext markup language. *See* HTML

## • I •

icons (favicons), 124, 125

Identica (Web site), 273

IIS (Internet Information Server), 22, 23

image galleries

- about, 230, 234, 251–253
- access control, 16–17, 268–271
- contributed images, 267–268
- moderators, 271–272
- modules
  - adding to, 256–257
  - configuration of, 256

downloading, 253–255  
 enabling, 255  
 Image Attach, 261–263  
 Image Import, 264–266  
 linking, 258  
 options for, 259–260

images. *See also* image galleries  
 adding, 113–115, 256–257  
 background, 221–222  
 CAPTCHA, 324  
 with FCKeditor, 326  
 finding, 266  
 loading time, 231  
 as logos, 222  
 modules
 

- ImageAPI, 298
- ImageCache, 298
- ImageField, 298

 options for, 260–261  
 PNG files, 208  
 in product listings, 309–310  
 in profiles, 243–244  
 retrieving, 253–255  
 shortcut icons, 125  
 tags, 115  
 themes, 210  
 toolkit, 55

IMDB (Web site), 274

Info files, 208

information sites, 230, 233, 234

input format, 99–100, 162

installation. *See also* preinstalled elements  
 Activity Stream, 274–275  
 Apture, 283  
 blogs, 159–169  
 challenges, 12, 21  
 Drupal
 

- on a local machine, 40–44
- on a Web host, 35–40

 images, 253–255  
 Linux, 41
 

- on a local machine, 40–44
- Microsoft Windows, 41–42
- MySQL program, 40–42
- PHP scripting language, 40–42
- themes, 212–213
- Ubercart, 298–299
- on a Web host, 35–40

 INSTALL.txt files, 189

interface confusion, 12  
 Internet Information Server (IIS), 22, 23  
 ISPs (Internet service providers)  
   accounts with, 22  
   Drupal installations, 21, 23, 24–28  
 italic font, 218, 220



JavaScript  
   events, 154  
   PHP tags, 101  
   URLs, 154  
 JPG files, 253



Krug, Steve (author)  
*Don't Make Me Think*, 231



lag times, RSS feeds, 291  
 Learn By The Drop (Web site), 342  
 left sidebar, 128, 133  
 length management, 90–93, 111  
 limitations, 12  
 line breaks  
   conversion for, 154–155  
   tags for, 99  
 links  
   to blogs, 165  
   color of, 217  
   creating, 282–283, 285–288  
   editing/deleting, 148–149  
   to FAQs, 325  
   Feed aggregator, 291–292, 293  
   to Forum module, 178  
   to image galleries, 258  
   menus as, 127  
   options for, 94–95  
   Post new blog entry, 166  
   primary/secondary, 125, 138–139, 145, 149  
   Send to a friend, 334  
   Switch to plain/rich text editor, 326  
   Web page addresses as, 153

Linux  
   application installation, 41  
   file compression, 31  
 local machines, Web sites on, 40–44  
 locale settings, 60  
 login information  
   about, 34  
   administrator, 39, 57–61  
 logo.png, 210  
 logos  
   changing, 222  
   choices, 124, 125  
   Drupal, 124, 210  
   in footers, 132  
   RSS feeds, 293, 294  
 logout information, 47



Macintosh  
   OS X operating system, 41, 42  
   text editors for, 211  
   users, 3  
   Web server software for, 23  
 mailing lists, 343–344  
 mailto links, 15, 155  
 maintenance  
   mode, 198  
   offline, 55  
 MAMP, 42  
 mamp.info (Web site), 42  
 marketing  
   Activity Stream content in, 280  
   advertising  
    creating, 332  
    Web sites as, 230, 232, 233  
 markup language validation tools, 154  
 Marvin (theme), 130  
 math CAPTCHA, 324  
 Meetup.com (Web site), 346–347  
 menu  
   Administer, 52–54  
 Menu link title field, 94  
 menus  
   for blogs, 162  
   confusion of, 12

- definition, 52, 127  
 module, 158  
 for page nodes, 93–95  
 primary elements  
   about, 94, 144–145  
   activating, 207  
   FAQ link on, 325  
   location of, 131  
   ordering on, 147  
 secondary elements, 144–145  
 themes, 127, 144–150  
 Microsoft Windows  
   application installation, 41–42  
   text editors for, 211  
   users, 3  
   Web server software for, 23  
 minimum orders, 307  
 Minnelli (theme), 130, 131  
 mission statements, 124, 217, 220  
 mobile phone videos, 273  
 moderating comments, 180–181  
 moderators  
   comments, 323  
   image galleries, 271–272  
 modules  
   about, 151–158  
   adding, 185–190  
   blogs, 159–169  
   choices of, 235–246  
   disabling, 190  
   forums, 169–180  
   image galleries  
     additional, 261–267  
     retrieving, 253–261  
   images, 113  
   module-specific information, 208  
   must-have  
     CAPTCHA, 323–324  
     e-mail versions of, 329–330  
     FAQ, 325–326  
     FCKeditor, 326–327  
     Mollom, 328–329  
     PDF versions of, 329–330  
     print versions of, 329–330  
     search engine optimization checklist, 331–332  
     Simple Ad Block, 332–333  
     Site Map, 333–334  
   Spread module, 334–336  
   Webform, 336–337  
   types of, 68–69  
   updating, 197–202  
 Mollom, 328–329, 335  
 Mollom.com (Web site), 328  
 monthly sales reports, 319  
 movie information, 274  
 multiple blogs, 167–169  
 multiple-site registration, 235  
 my.smithmicro.com (Web site), 211  
 MySQL (Web site), 23, 41  
 MySQL program  
   installation, 40–42  
   location of, 34  
   versions of, 23, 24
- N •
- names (Web sites), 124  
 navigation  
   block, 137  
   links  
     about, 52  
     administrative, 133  
     for themes, 118  
     menu, 144  
 News, Google (Web site), 234  
 news articles/sites, 49–51, 230, 234  
 Nexcess (Web site), 23  
 nodes  
   about, 153  
   content, 68, 79–87  
   module, 68, 155  
   page, 93–95  
 node.tpl.php files, 210  
 noise as foil, 324  
 NotePad, 211
- O •
- OCR (optical character recognition), 324  
 Online Help, 53, 158  
 online shopping sites, 11, 18, 230, 234. *See also* storefronts  
 open source software, 10, 12  
 OpenID module, 158, 235–236

openid.net (Web site), 158, 235  
operating systems, 22  
optical character recognition (OCR), 324  
optional modules, 152, 156–158, 202  
options, Clean URLs, 39, 44, 54, 205  
ordering  
  content, 89–90, 111, 141  
  topic ordering (forums), 178  
ordering processes  
  sticky setting (content ordering), 89–90  
  testing, 302–304  
orders  
  creating, 302–306  
  forms for, 295  
  minimum, 307  
  settings, 308  
  tracking, 297  
organization, forums, 170, 174  
overriding defaults, 126

• *p* •

Page Not Found, 205  
pages  
  about, 49  
  accessing, 86–87  
  adding, 81–84  
  administrative, 60  
  book as, 157  
  content types, 52  
  creating, 80  
  customization, 11, 149  
  defaults, 329  
  definition, 49  
  deleting, 85–86  
  editing, 84–85  
  flexibility, 10–11  
  hiding sections of, 61  
  layout modification, 10, 11, 52  
  links to, 127  
  menu options for, 93–95  
  regions of, 129, 131  
  site location, 110  
  stories compared with, 81, 106  
  templates for, 210  
  visibility settings, 143  
  Web pages compared with, 79  
page.tpl.php files, 210

paragraph breaks, 99  
Parent Directory links, 30  
parent items, 94  
passwords. *See also* login information  
  administrators, 39, 44, 59  
  changing, 49, 61  
  creating, 34, 35, 37–38  
  database, 44  
Path module, 158  
payment, 313–316  
PayPal (Web site), 313  
PDF documents, 329  
permissions  
  with Apture, 289  
  assigning, 67–69  
  authenticated/anonymous users, 271  
  configuration of, 153, 156  
  for FCKeditor, 327  
  for forums, 179–180  
  for photo editors, 267–268  
  for site maps, 333  
  for user roles, 74  
personal computers, Web sites on, 40–44  
photos  
  in comments/postings, 124, 209  
  editors, 267–268  
  galleries, 11  
PHP scripting language  
  Drupal filtering of, 154  
  files, 208  
  filter module, 158  
  installation, 40–42  
  versions of, 23, 24  
PHP.net (Web site), 23, 41  
Ping module, 158  
pitfalls  
  administrative site lockout, 59  
  Apture, 289  
  coding tag hazards, 101  
  content rejoining, 113  
planning Web sites, 229–235  
PNG files, 208, 210, 253  
polls  
  about, 13  
  modules, 158, 236–239  
Poormanscron, 191–192  
popular modules/themes, 187  
Post new blog entry link, 166

Post settings form, 93  
 postings  
   Active/Blocked, 49  
   photos in, 124  
 Powered by Drupal, 138, 143  
 pre-built blocks, editing, 143–144  
 preinstalled elements  
   modules, 152, 235–246  
   themes  
    about, 117  
    built-in blocks, 136  
    enabling, 118–119  
    list of, 134  
    mission statements, 124  
    regions of, 130  
 previewing stories, 50  
 pricing, 10  
 primary elements  
   links, 125, 138, 145, 149  
   menus  
    about, 94, 144–145  
    activating, 207  
    FAQ link on, 325  
    location of, 131  
    ordering on, 147  
 print content, 329  
 products  
   listings  
    about, 295  
    catalogs, 297, 310–313  
    creating, 300–302  
    images, 309–310  
   reports, 319  
   settings, 308  
 Profile module, 158, 239–244  
 projected sales reports, 319  
 public registrations, 61–69  
 publishing options  
   about, 109–113  
   blogs, 162  
   polls, 238  
 punctuation, coding, 220  
 Pushbutton (theme), 130

**• Q •**

Qik (Web site), 273  
 questionnaires, 336

**• R •**

Read only setting, 105  
 Reader, Google (Web site), 289–291  
 reader communities, 46  
 README.txt, 189  
 read/write comments, 106  
 Really Simple Syndication. *See RSS feeds*  
 recent comments, 138  
 red-green-blue (RGB) value, 214  
 regions, themes, 128–136  
 registered users, 51, 61–69. *See also*  
   authenticated users  
 rejoining content, 113  
 reports  
   module for, 319  
   Web site activity, 53  
 required modules, 152–156  
 requirements, verification, 37, 44  
 researchers, 231  
 Reset to defaults button, 126, 163  
 restoring databases, 196  
 revision control, 101–103, 162  
 RGB (red-green-blue) value, 214  
 right sidebar, 128, 133  
 right-to-left running languages, 208  
 role-specific visibility settings, 143  
 RSS feeds  
   Aggregator module with, 291–292  
   creating, 293–294  
   finding, 289–291  
   logos, 132  
   syndicated, 191

**• S •**

sales/sales tax reports, 319  
 screen shots, 225  
 screenshot.png, 210  
 search boxes, 124, 235  
 search engine optimization (SEO)  
   about, 231  
   checklists, 331–332  
 Search module, 158, 244–246  
 secondary elements  
   links, 125, 139, 145, 149  
   menus, 144–145

- security. *See also* login information  
account changes, 61  
database, 34, 35, 37–38, 44  
login information, 34, 39, 57–61  
passwords  
  administrators, 39, 44, 59  
  changing, 49, 61  
  creating, 34, 35, 37–38  
  database, 44  
Web sites, 306, 327
- Send to a friend links, 334
- sender e-mail addresses, 39
- SEO (search engine optimization)  
  about, 231  
  checklists, 331–332
- servers, database, 34–35
- settings  
  block visibility, 142–143  
  blog menus, 162  
  color, 216–218  
  configuration of, 307–309  
  display elements, 124–125  
  global, 123–124, 126  
  ill-advised changes to, 149, 162  
  site configuration, 153  
  theme-specific, 126  
  visibility controls (user profiles), 241
- shipping cost calculations, 317–318
- shopping cart  
  about, 295  
  adding, 306–307
- shortcut icons, 124, 125
- sidebars  
  advertising in, 232, 233  
  color of, 217  
  right/left, 128, 133
- signature block files, 209
- Simple Ad Block, 332–333
- Site Map, 333–334
- Site5 (Web site), 23
- slogans, 124
- smashingmagazine.com (Web site), 232
- social media  
  content from, 276–278
- Facebook  
  about, 273  
  for Drupal help, 340, 341
- feed activation, 278–279
- information integration, 11
- modules for, 275
- Twitter  
  information integration, 11  
  search feeds, 275  
  status updates, 273
- wars, 273
- YouTube  
  about, 273  
  modules for, 275  
  videos, 281–282
- software, commercial compared to free versions, 42
- sources, primary/secondary links, 149
- spam  
  advertising as, 68  
  control of, 64, 104, 323, 328
- Split summary, 111–112
- Spread module, 334–336
- stand-in words, 65–66
- Statistics module, 158
- status  
  active/blocked, 49, 59  
  messages, 83  
  not published, 84
- sticky setting (content ordering), 89–90, 111
- Store settings, 308–309
- storefronts  
  about, 230, 234, 295–297  
  configuration of  
    settings, 307–309  
    shopping cart, 306–307
- creating  
  orders, 302–306  
  product listings, 300–302
- enhancement  
  fulfillment modules, 317  
  product listings, 309–313  
  tax collection, 318–319
- payment processes  
  Google Checkout, 313–315  
  transactions, 315–316
- Ubercart  
  enabling, 299  
  installation, 298–299  
  options, 297–298

stories  
content  
creating, 49–51, 87–89  
editing/deleting, 89  
ordering, 89–90, 111  
types of, 52  
defaults, 329  
length management, 90–93, 111  
menu settings, 95  
pages compared with, 81, 106  
regions of, 129, 131  
site location, 110  
strategy setting, 45–46  
StuffIt expander, 211  
style.css files  
about, 209  
themes, 216–220  
style-rtl.css files, 208–209  
summary blurb, 113  
support sources  
Facebook, 341  
GotDrupal.com, 342–343  
Learn By The Drop, 342  
mailing lists, 343–344  
Online Help, 53, 158  
themes, 344–345  
user groups, 346–347  
Switch to plain/rich text editor link, 326  
syndicated content, 139, 191  
syntax, image tags, 115  
System module, 153, 155–156

## • T •

tar.gz files, 29, 31–32, 187, 188–189  
tax collection, 318–319  
technology limitations, 231  
templates  
comments, 209  
editing, 222–225  
for pages/sites, 208–210  
for themes, 222–225  
for Web pages, 210  
terminology, 52  
test user accounts, 62  
testing  
on local computers, 27  
ordering processes, 302–304

text  
CAPTCHA, 324  
color of, 326  
editing, 211  
formatting, 326  
link underlining, 219, 220  
text editors, 211, 236  
TextEdit, 211  
themes  
about, 117  
adding, 185–190  
administrative pages, 54, 60, 156  
changing, 117–122  
configuring, 123–126  
customization  
about, 127–128  
blocks, 127–128, 136–144  
coding, 213–216  
creation, 210–212  
dissection, 207–210  
graphics, 221–222  
installation, 212–213  
menus, 127, 144–150  
regions, 128–136  
screen shots, 225  
style.css files, 216–220  
templates, 222–225  
definition, 52  
disabling, 190  
site pages, 156  
updating, 197–202, 344–345  
Thickbox module, 298  
third-party elements  
content, 283  
merchant services, 313  
modules  
for Drupal, 11  
image galleries, 17  
member-provided, 233  
thumbnail views, 251–252, 259  
time  
appearance of, 54, 156  
overriding, 60  
zones, 39, 44, 49, 54  
titles  
color of, 217  
as links, 94  
of pre-built blocks, 143  
of sites, 55, 56

tizag.com (Web site), 108  
 Token module, 298  
 topics (forums), 178–179  
 Tracker module, 158  
 transactions, 315–316  
 Trigger module, 202–204  
 Twitter (Web site)  
   information integration, 11  
   search feeds, 275  
   status updates, 273  
 2Checkout.com (Web site), 313

## • U •

Ubercart  
   about, 295  
   downloading, 297–298  
   enabling, 299  
   installation, 298–299  
   options, 297–298  
 underlined text, 219, 220  
 UNIX systems  
   with cron, 191  
   file compression, 31  
 unpublished content, 110  
 Update status module, 158  
 update.php file, 198–199  
 updates, automatic, 39, 44  
 upgrading, challenges, 24  
 uploading  
   compressed files, 187–188  
   Drupal, 29–30  
   forms, 31  
   logos, 125  
   themes/modules, 186  
 URLs  
   clean, 54, 205  
   filtering, 155  
   JavaScript, 154  
   shortening, 158  
 User module, 69, 153, 156  
 usernames. *See also* login information  
   administrators, 39, 44, 59  
   changing, 49, 61  
   creating, 34, 35, 37–38  
   database, 44  
   login information, 34, 39, 57–61

users  
   accounts, 57–61, 297  
   activity streams for, 276  
   anonymous (unregistered)  
     about, 67–68  
     Activity Stream visibility, 279  
     authenticated, 59  
     comment permissions, 104, 106  
     shopping cart duration, 307  
   authenticated  
     about, 67–68  
     activity streams for, 274  
     anonymous, 59  
     blogs for, 164  
     comments, 104, 106, 158, 180  
     forums, 180  
     HTML content, 289  
     multiple-site registration, 235  
     profiles of, 139, 239  
     shopping cart duration, 307  
     theme changes, 121  
     visibility settings, 143  
   authenticated/anonymous, 59  
   blocked, 49, 59, 70  
   blogs associated with, 167  
   computer limitations, 231  
   defaults  
     profiles of, 241  
     registration, 64  
     types of, 59  
   defaults, overriding, 126  
   Facebook visibility lag time, 279  
   file uploading, 55  
   filtering, 70  
   forums, 169  
   login, 138  
   Macintosh, 3  
   management  
     adding/editing/deleting users, 53, 69–71  
     administrator accounts, 57–61  
     public registrations, 51, 61–69  
     user roles, 73–75  
   photos/signatures of, 209  
   profiles of, 69, 158, 239–244  
   registered, 51, 61–69. *See also*  
     authenticated users  
   registered/unregistered, 59, 67, 104

statistics, 187  
theme changes, 120–121  
types of, 231  
user groups, 339, 346–347  
visibility settings, 143  
Windows, 3

## • V •

validation tools, 154  
verification  
of new accounts, 64  
of requirements, 37, 44  
video streaming  
hosting recommendations, 23  
YouTube, 273, 281–282  
viewing, forums, 175–177  
visibility settings (user profiles), 241  
visitors, Web site, 231

## • W •

WAMP, 42  
wampserver.com (Web site), 42  
Web pages  
about, 49  
accessing, 86–87  
adding, 81–84  
administrative, 60  
book as, 157  
content types, 52  
creating, 80  
customization, 11, 149  
defaults, 329  
definition, 49  
deleting, 85–86  
editing, 84–85  
flexibility, 10–11  
hiding sections of, 61  
layout modification, 10, 11, 52  
links to, 127  
menu options for, 93–95  
regions of, 129, 131  
site location, 110  
stories compared with, 81, 106  
templates for, 210  
visibility settings, 143  
Web pages compared with, 79

Web sites  
activity reports, 53  
Activity Stream visibility, 280  
address links, 153  
administration, essential sites for, 45–46, 54–56  
as advertising, 230, 232, 233  
Alamo, 230  
Amazon, 234, 296–297  
Analytics, Google, 298  
apache.org, 41  
appearance changes, 52  
Authorize, 313  
Blogger, 274  
boilerplate content on, 53, 55, 94, 124, 156, 333  
Checkout, Google, 313–315  
Cirtex, 23  
for color, 214  
colorschemer, 214  
configuration, 38–40, 44, 54–56, 202–206  
date formatting, 107–108  
Drupal2U, 344, 345  
drupalfordummies, 23, 38, 45–46  
Drupalmuseum, 19  
Drupal.org, 10, 18, 343, 344–345, 346  
Drupsites, 19  
e-mail addresses of, 44  
examples of, 18–19  
Facebook, 11, 273, 275, 278–279, 340, 341  
Firebug, 225  
Firefox, 225  
Flickr, 16–17, 234  
GNU Project, 10  
GoDaddy, 22, 23  
Goodreads, 274  
Google Analytics, 298  
Google Checkout, 313–315  
Google News, 234  
Google Reader, 289–291  
GotDrupal, 342–343  
GreenGeeks, 22, 23  
hosting, 35–40  
htmlhelp, 214  
Identica, 273  
image uploading to, 113  
IMDB, 274  
information settings, 55

Web sites (*continued*)  
interaction among  
Activity Stream, 273–280  
Apture, 282–289  
RSS feeds, 289–294  
YouTube videos, 281–282  
Internet service providers (ISPs), 22, 23  
Learn By The Drop, 342  
on local machines, 40–44  
maintenance, 55, 156  
mamp.info, 42  
Meetup, 346–347  
Mollom, 328  
my.smithmicro, 211  
MySQL, 23, 41  
names of, 124  
News, Google, 234  
Nexcess, 23  
openid, 158, 235  
PayPal, 313  
on personal computers, 40–44  
PHP, 23, 41  
planning, 229–235  
postings, 49  
purpose of, 45–46  
Qik, 273  
Reader, Google, 289–291  
security, 306, 327  
server software, 22–23  
Site5, 23  
slogans, 124  
smashingmagazine, 232  
on steroids  
    contact forms for, 246–249  
    module choices, 235–246  
    planning for, 229–235  
themes, 156  
tizag, 108  
Twitter, 11, 273, 275  
2Checkout, 313

Ubercart, 295–299  
visitors to, 231  
wampserver, 42  
Yahoo, 282  
yellowpipe, 214  
yourdrupalsitehere, 312  
YouTube, 273, 275, 281–282  
Zappos, 18  
Webform, 336–337  
weighting, FAQ questions, 326  
white (color), 214  
Who's new, 139, 144  
Who's online, 139, 144  
Windows  
    application installation, 41–42  
    text editors for, 211  
    users, 3  
    Web server software for, 23  
wish lists, 297  
word processors, 326

• X •

XAMPP, 41–42

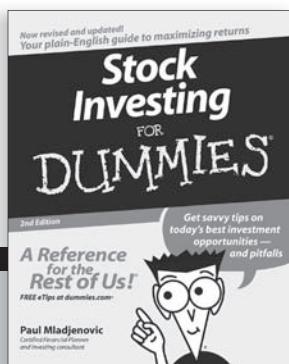
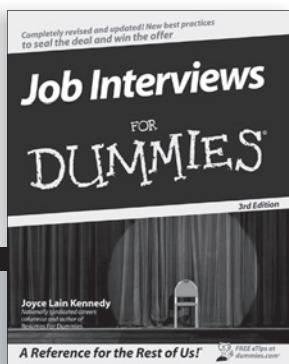
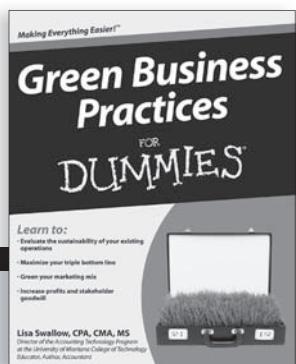
• Y •

Yahoo.com (Web site), 282  
yellowpipe.com (Web site), 214  
yourdrupalsitehere.com (Web site), 312  
YouTube (Web site)  
    about, 273  
    modules for, 275  
    videos, 281–282

• Z •

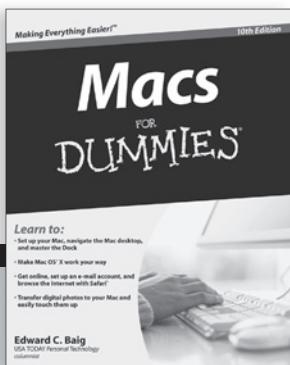
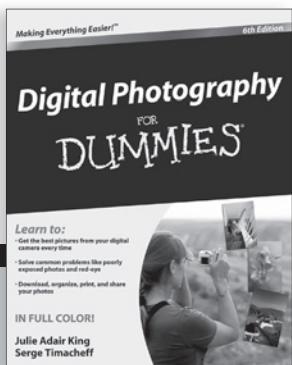
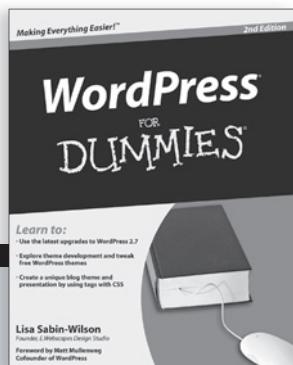
Zappos.com (Web site), 18  
zip files, 31, 187, 188–189

<b><u>Business/Accounting &amp; Bookkeeping</u></b>	Laptops For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-27759-1	<b><u>Gardening</u></b>	<b><u>Hobbies/General</u></b>
Bookkeeping For Dummies 978-0-7645-9848-7	Macs For Dummies, 10th Edition 978-0-470-27817-8	Gardening Basics For Dummies 978-0-470-03749-2	Chess For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-8404-6
eBay Business All-in-One For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-38536-4		Organic Gardening For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-43067-5	Drawing For Dummies 978-0-7645-5476-6
Job Interviews For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-17748-8	<b><u>Cooking &amp; Entertaining</u></b>		Knitting For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-28747-7
Resumes For Dummies, 5th Edition 978-0-470-08037-5	Cooking Basics For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-7645-7206-7	<b><u>Green/Sustainable</u></b>	Organizing For Dummies 978-0-7645-5300-4
Stock Investing For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-40114-9	Wine For Dummies, 4th Edition 978-0-470-04579-4	Green Building & Remodeling For Dummies 978-0-470-17559-0	SuDoku For Dummies 978-0-470-01892-7
Successful Time Management For Dummies 978-0-470-29034-7	<b><u>Diet &amp; Nutrition</u></b>	Green Cleaning For Dummies 978-0-470-39106-8	<b><u>Home Improvement</u></b>
<b><u>Computer Hardware</u></b>	Dieting For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-4149-0	Green IT For Dummies 978-0-470-38688-0	Energy Efficient Homes For Dummies 978-0-470-37602-7
BlackBerry For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-45762-7	Nutrition For Dummies, 4th Edition 978-0-471-79868-2	<b><u>Health</u></b>	Home Theater For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-41189-6
Computers For Seniors For Dummies 978-0-470-24055-7	Weight Training For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-471-76845-6	Diabetes For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-470-27086-8	Living the Country Lifestyle All-in-One For Dummies 978-0-470-43061-3
iPhone For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-42342-4	<b><u>Digital Photography</u></b>	Food Allergies For Dummies 978-0-470-09584-3	Solar Power Your Home For Dummies 978-0-470-17569-9
	Digital Photography For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-0-470-25074-7	Living Gluten-Free For Dummies 978-0-471-77383-2	
	Photoshop Elements 7 For Dummies 978-0-470-39700-8		



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct: U.S. customers visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) or call 1-877-762-2974. U.K. customers visit [www.wileyeurope.com](http://www.wileyeurope.com) or call (0) 1243 843291. Canadian customers visit [www.wiley.ca](http://www.wiley.ca) or call 1-800-567-4797.

<b>Internet</b>	<b>Macintosh</b>	<b>Parenting &amp; Education</b>	<b>Self-Help &amp; Relationship</b>
Blogging For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-23017-6	Mac OS X Snow Leopard For Dummies 978-0-470-43543-4	Parenting For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-5418-6	Anger Management For Dummies 978-0-470-03715-7
eBay For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-0-470-49741-8	<b>Math &amp; Science</b>	Type 1 Diabetes For Dummies 978-0-470-17811-9	Overcoming Anxiety For Dummies 978-0-7645-5447-6
Facebook For Dummies 978-0-470-26273-3	Biology For Dummies 978-0-7645-5326-4	<b>Pets</b>	<b>Sports</b>
Google Blogger For Dummies 978-0-470-40742-4	Calculus For Dummies 978-0-7645-2498-1	Cats For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-5275-5	Baseball For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-7645-7537-2
Web Marketing For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-37181-7	Chemistry For Dummies 978-0-7645-5430-8	Dog Training For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-8418-3	Basketball For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-5248-9
WordPress For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-40296-2	<b>Microsoft Office</b>	Puppies For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-470-03717-1	Golf For Dummies, 3rd Edition 978-0-471-76871-5
<b>Language &amp; Foreign Language</b>	Excel 2007 For Dummies 978-0-470-03737-9	<b>Religion &amp; Inspiration</b>	<b>Web Development</b>
French For Dummies 978-0-7645-5193-2	Office 2007 All-in-One Desk Reference For Dummies 978-0-471-78279-7	The Bible For Dummies 978-0-7645-5296-0	Web Design All-in-One For Dummies 978-0-470-41796-6
Italian Phrases For Dummies 978-0-7645-7203-6	<b>Music</b>	Catholicism For Dummies 978-0-7645-5391-2	<b>Windows Vista</b>
Spanish For Dummies 978-0-7645-5194-9	Guitar For Dummies, 2nd Edition 978-0-7645-9904-0	Women in the Bible For Dummies 978-0-7645-8475-6	Windows Vista For Dummies 978-0-471-75421-3
Spanish For Dummies, Audio Set 978-0-470-09585-0	iPod & iTunes For Dummies, 6th Edition 978-0-470-39062-7		
	Piano Exercises For Dummies 978-0-470-38765-8		



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct: U.S. customers visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) or call 1-877-762-2974. U.K. customers visit [www.wileyeurope.com](http://www.wileyeurope.com) or call [0] 1243 843291. Canadian customers visit [www.wiley.ca](http://www.wiley.ca) or call 1-800-567-4797.



# How-to? How Easy.

The screenshot shows the Dummies.com homepage. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links like "Business & Careers", "Health & Fitness", "Photography & Video", and "Travel". Below the navigation is a search bar with the placeholder "Live Search" and a "Search" button. To the left, there's a "Featured Video" section with a thumbnail for "Creating a Morning Stretch Routine" and a "Watch Video" button. To the right, there's a "Live Search" section for finding gas prices. The main content area has sections for "Featured Step by Step" (with a thumbnail for "Trimming and Slicing Mushrooms") and "Most Popular Topics" (including "Gardening", "Grocery Shopping", "Fitness", etc.). At the bottom, there's a "Most Popular How-Tos" section with links to "How to Use Microsoft Word", "Parking Tickets with Ease", and "Meeting Your Energy-Efficiency Requirements". A sidebar on the left includes a "Featured Help" blog post from "Dr. Mac" and a "Most Popular" section. A footer at the bottom has a "Go to www.Dummies.com" call to action.



From hooking up a modem to cooking up a casserole, knitting a scarf to navigating an iPod, you can trust Dummies.com to show you how to get things done the easy way.

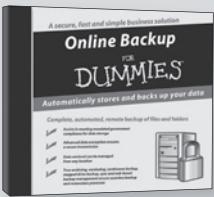
Visit us at [Dummies.com](http://www.Dummies.com)



# Dummies products make life easier!

DVDs • Music • Games •  
DIY • Consumer Electronics •  
Software • Crafts • Hobbies •  
Cookware • and more!

For more information, go to  
**Dummies.com®** and search  
the store by category.



# Drop in and check out Drupal, the free, flexible framework for building and managing Web sites

Even if you've never built a Web site and the only thing you've programmed is your DVR, you really can set up a site with Drupal. This book shows you how to find and install the right version of Drupal, how to plan your site, and how to manage it. You can even beef it up with data from other sites, a storefront, an image gallery, and much more!

- **Start here** — *find the free software and get simple solutions on things like setting up a database and installing Drupal on a Web host*
- **Who's in charge** — *manage an administrator account, establish rules, and control site users*
- **What's on your site** — *create, manage, and edit your content, and decide whether to allow comments*
- **Where's your region?** — *work with themes and regions and manage menus*
- **Open forum** — *create a site with a blog and forum and set up appropriate security*
- **Stay current** — *keep Drupal up to date, monitor activity on your site, and locate new modules and themes to use*
- **Cover your bases** — *maintain your database, back it up, and know how to restore it*
- **Move up** — *see how Drupal can build a robust site that interacts with other sites and how to set up an online store*



## Open the book and find:

- What Drupal is and what it's not
- Tools you need to install Drupal
- How to decide on rules and settings for your site
- Tips for telling your story quickly
- Advice on choosing, changing, and configuring themes
- All about modules
- How to use reports
- Secrets of good site security

**Go to [Dummies.com®](http://Dummies.com)**  
for videos, step-by-step examples,  
how-to articles, or to shop!

For Dummies®  
A Branded Imprint of  


\$29.99 US / \$35.99 CN / £21.99 UK

ISBN 978-0-470-55611-5



**Lynn Beighley** is a Web designer, Web developer, and the author of several books and training courses. She creates Web applications of every imaginable type and has used Drupal for several years, valuing its capacity for quickly publishing robust, manageable, multi-user sites.